

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Educ T 918.54.250

REV. R. BULLIONS' GRAMMARS AND CLASSICS.

Harvard College Library

FROM

Tufts College

pri … e
wc … e … of
the … n
im … y
ing … e
is …
sh … d

… o
the English Department of … College … … … d
Latin." A. S. DEAN.

A very large number of similar testimonials from all parts of the country are in the hands of the publishers.

3 2044 097 062 731

Farmer, Brace &

MATHEMATICAL SERIES.

1. Schell's Introductory Lessons in Arithmetic.
2. Enos' Intellectual and Practical Arithmetic.
3. Dodd's Elementary and Practical Arithmetic.
4. Dodd's High School Arithmetic.
5. Dodd's Elementary Algebra.
6. Dodd's High School Algebra.
7. Dodd's Key to Algebra.
8. Dodd's Geometry, (in press).
9. Whitlock's Geometry and Surveying

The steps taken in Schell's Arithmetic are as easy as possible, but at every step the child gets on. In Enos' work the mental exercises are so varied as to prepare the pupil for almost every contingency in after life The books prepared by Prof J. B. Dodd, of Transylvania University, not only give great satisfaction in the school-room, but they have a marked influence upon other text books. No slight indication this of originality and well directed genius. The following gentlemen express in brief the opinions of those who use these books:

"I wish to introduce Schell's little Arithmetic. It is just the thing for beginners."
J. Markham, Ohio.

"Having used Enos' Arithmetic in my school, I believe it to be superior to all other works of the kind."
W. Bailey, N. Y.

"Having used Dodd's High School Arithmetic for more than a year, I am free to say that I have no wish to change it for any other. Its divisions and general arrangement peculiarly adapt it to my wants."
J. W. P. Jenks, Principal Pierce Academy, Mass.

"I am delighted with Dodd's Algebra, and think it the best extant."
A. Lister.

"I consider Dodd's Algebra the very best work I have ever seen. We are using it."
B. F. Stern.

Dr. J. L. Comstock's Series on the Sciences, viz: Philosophy, Chemistry, Botany Geology, Mineralogy, Physiology and Natural History.
Olney's Geographical Series and Outline Maps,
Griffin's Southern Reader, 1, 2, 3, 4.
Brocklesby's Meteorology and Views of the Microscopic World.
The Students' Series, including Primer, Spelling Book, Readers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and Juvenile Speaker. By J. S. Denman.
Kirkham's Elocution.
Palmer's Bookkeeping for Common Schools.
Greenleaf's Grammar simplified.
Gallaudet & Hooker's School and Family Dictionary.
Bentley's Pictorial Spelling Book.
Goldsmith's Geographical View of the World.
Robinson's History of England.
Prof. Worthington Hooker's Physiology for High School
Prof. Peissner's German Grammar.

K
5
CELLED
LIBRARY
OF
TUFTS COLLEGE.
The Gift of Pratt, Woodford, Farmer, & Brace, Publishers, New York. 240 Nov. 1854.

THE

PRINCIPLES

OF

LATIN GRAMMAR;

COMPRISING THE SUBSTANCE OF THE MOST APPROVED GRAMMARS EXTANT, WITH AN

APPENDIX.

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

By Rev. PETER BULLIONS, D. D.

LATE PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY; AUTHOR OF THE SERIES OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN, AND ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN, ETC. ETC.

FIFTY - SIXTH EDITION—REVISED AND IMPROVED.

NEW YORK:
PRATT, WOODFORD, FARMER & BRACE,
NO. 4 CORTLANDT STREET.
1854.

Educ T 918.54.250

HARVARD COLLEGE
Oct 19 '37
LIBRARY

Tufts College

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the Year One Thousand Eight Hundred and Fifty-three, by PETER BULLIONS, D. D., in the Clerk's Office of the Northern District of New York.

PREFACE.

In the study of any language, the foundation of success must be laid in a thorough acquaintance with its principles. This being once attained, future progress becomes easy and rapid. To the student of language, therefore, a good Grammar, which must be his constant companion, is of all his books the most important. Such a work, to be really valuable, ought to be *simple* in its arrangement and style, so as to be adapted to the capacity of youth, for whose use it is designed; *comprehensive*, and *accurate*, so as to be a sufficient and certain guide in the most difficult as well as in easy cases; and its principles and rules should be rendered familiar by numerous examples and exercises.

The fundamental principles are nearly the same in all languages. So far as Grammar is concerned, the difference lies chiefly in the minor details—in the forms and inflections of their words, and in the modes of expression peculiar to each, usually denominated *idioms*. It would seem, therefore, to be proper, in constructing Grammars for different languages, that the principles, so far as they are the same, should be arranged in the same order, and expressed as nearly as possible in the same words. Where this is carefully done, the study of the Grammar of one language becomes an important aid in the study of another;—an opportunity is afforded of seeing wherein they agree, and wherein they differ, and a profitable exercise is furnished in comparative or general grammar. But when a Latin Grammar is put into the hands of the student, differing widely in its arrangement or phraseology from the English Grammar which he had previously studied, and afterwards a Greek Grammar different from both, not only is the benefit derived from the analogy of the different languages in a great measure lost, but the whole subject is made to appear intolerably intricate and mysterious. By the publication of this series of Grammars, English, Latin, and Greek, on the same plan, this evil is now remedied probably as far as it can be done.

The work here presented to the public, is upon the foundation of ADAM'S LATIN GRAMMAR, so long and so well known as a text book in this country. The object of the present undertaking was, to combine with all that is excellent in the work of Adam, the many important results of subsequent

labors in this field; to supply its defects; to bring the whole up to that point which the present state of classical learning requires, and to give it such a form as to render it a suitable part of the series formerly projected. In accomplishing this object, the author has availed himself of every aid within his reach, and no pains have been spared to render this work as complete as possible in every part. His acknowledgments are due for the assistance derived from the excellent works of Scheller, Crombie, Zumpt, Andrews & Stoddard, and many others, on the whole or on separate parts of this undertaking; and also for many hints kindly furnished by distinguished teachers in this country. As in the other grammars, so here, the rules and leading parts which should be first studied, are printed in larger type; and the filling up of this outline is comprised in observations and notes under them, made easy of reference by the sections and numbers prefixed. The whole is now committed to the judgment of an intelligent public, in the hope that something has been done to smooth the path of the learner in the successful prosecution of his studies, and to subserve the interests of both English and Classical literature in this country.

REVISED EDITION.

New plates having become necessary for this work, the opportunity has been embraced of thoroughly revising and improving it. The rules, definitions, and leading parts, with very few exceptions, remain just as they were; but still, some things deemed important have been added in many places in the form of new Observations, or of additions to the former ones. On this account, the pages of this edition do not correspond to those of former editions; but this will occasion no difficulty, as the Sections, Observations, &c., are arranged and numbered as they were before. Besides this mode of reference which is still retained, the simpler method, by a running series of numbers, from first to last, as in the English Grammars, has been added. A leading object kept constantly in view, in the revision of this work, as well as of the Greek Grammar just completed, has been, to bring about a still greater uniformity in the works composing this series, and to indicate more fully and distinctly wherein the languages agree, and wherein they differ. The additions that have been made to this work, amount in all to about twenty-eight pages, and no labor or expense has been spared to render the work in all respects more worthy of that favor with which it has already been received.

New York, June, 1853.

INDEX.

A.

PAGE

Ablative, meaning of,..... 13
construction of,..... 243
governed by nouns,... 243
by adjectives,..... 244
by comp. degree,... 244
by verbs,..... 246
by passive verbs,... 252
variously,..... 247
Accidents of the noun,..... 10
Accusative, meaning of,..... 12
construction of,..... 240
governed by verbs,.... 240
by passive verbs,... 252
by prepositions,.. 263, 264
variously,..... 242
and genitive..... 247, 248
and dative,..... 249
and accusative,..... 250
and ablative,..... 251
Adjectives,..... 48
Root of,..... 13
of first and second decl. 49
of third,..... 51
irregular,..... 54
exercises on,..... 56
numeral,..... 57
cardinal,..... 57
ordinal,..... 60
comparison of,..... 63
Rules for,..... 63, 64
irregular, &c..... 65
derivation of,..... 67
distributive,..... 60
Multiplicative,..... 62
construction of,..... 209
Adverbs, signification of,..... 196
derivation of,..... 197
comparison of,..... 198
construction of,..... 261
cases governed by,.... 262

PAGE

Analysis of sentences,..... 294
examples of,..... 297
Apposition, substantives in,.. 207
Archaism,..... 291
Arrangement, Latin,..... 291
General principles of, 292
B.
Beginners, directions for,..... 299
C.
Case,..... 12
Cases, government of,..... 205
Cæsural pause,..... 321
Cause, manner, and instrument, 255
Circumstances, construction of, 254
of limitation, ... 254
of cause, manner, &c.. 255
of place, ... 256
of time,..... 258
of measure,..... 259
of price, ... 260
Concord, of,..... 207
Conjugations, of,..... 109
General remarks on,... 162
First,..... 119
irregular,..... 167
Second,..... 128
irregular,..... 168
Third,..... 136
irregular,..... 171
Fourth,..... 146
irregular,..... 179
1st Periphrastic,..... 163
2d do. 164
Conjunctions,..... 208
construction of,..... 288
Consonants,..... 2
Construing, Rules for,..... 300
D.
Dative, meaning of,..... 12
construction of,..... 230
governed by nouns,... 231

	PAGE
Dative, governed	
by adjectives,	231
by verbs,	233
by impersonals,	236
by the pass. voice,	253
variously,	239
Datives two, gov'd by verbs,	238
Declension, Rules for,	13, 14
First,	15
Exceptions in,	16
Greek nouns in,	16
Exercises on,	17
Second,	17
Exceptions in,	19, 20
Greek nouns in,	21
Exercises on,	21
Third,	22
Observations on,	22
Examples of,	23–25
Exercises on,	26
Genders in,	27
Exceptions in,	30
Greek nouns in,	33
Fourth,	33
Exceptions in,	34
Observations on,	35
Exercises on,	36
Fifth,	36
Exercises on,	37
Deponent verbs,	154
irregular,	180
Derivatives and compounds,	
quantity of,	315
special rules for,	316
Diphthongs,	1
E.	
Ellipsis,	290
Enallage,	290
Etymology,	8
F.	
Feet, simple,	317
compound,	318
isochronous,	318
G.	
Gender, of,	10
Observations on,	11
Genitive, meaning of,	12
construction of,	222
gov'd by nouns,	222
by adjectives,	225
by verbs,	228
by passives,	252
Genitive, governed	
by adverbs,	262
variously,	230
Gerunds,	108
construction of,	284
Gerundives,	107
construction of,	286
Government, of	221
Grammar, definition of,	1
division of,	1
H.	
Hellenism,	291
Hyperbaton,	291
I.	
Increment of nouns,	306
of the 2d decl.	307
of the 3d decl.	307
of the plural,	308
of the verb,	309
Interjections,	202
construction of,	242
Irregular nouns,	38
adjectives,	54
comparison,	65
Verbs,	181
L.	
Letters,	1
Limitation, circumstances of,	254
M.	
Marks and characters,	3
Measure, circumstances of,	251
Metre,	319
different kinds of,	321
Iambic,	321
Trochaic,	322
Anapæstic,	323
Dactylic,	323
Choriambic,	325
Ionic,	326
Metres, compound,	326
Metres, combination of, in Horace,	328
Metrical key to Odes of Horace	329
Moods,	88
Indic., tenses of,	92
construction of,	266
Subjunctive, tenses of,	96
construction of,	267
with conjunctions,	268
with relative,	270
used for imperative,	90

	PAGE
Moods, Imperative, tenses of,..	100
construction of,....	275
Infinitive, tenses of,...	100
construction of,....	275
without a subject,	276
with a subject,...	278
N.	
Negatives, construction of,...	261
Nominative, meaning of,.....	12
construction of,.....	217
after the verb,.....	220
Notation of numbers,.....	59
Nouns,.....	9
Accidents of, ...	10
Root of,.....	13
Irregular, ...	38
defective, ...	40
Nouns, redundant,.....	46
Syntax of..... 207,	222
increment of,.....	306
Number, ...	12
Numbers, notation of,.....	59
Numeral adjectives,.....	57
O.	
Orthography,.....	1
P.	
Parsing, directions for,.....	301
examples of,.....	302
Participles, of,.....	106
construction of,.....	282
case absolute,.....	283
Parts of speech,.....	9
Person, ...	10
Person, and number of verbs,	104
Place, circumstances of,.....	256
Pleonasm, ...	290
Prepositions, of, ...	199
Observations on,.....	200
in composition,.....	201
inseparable,.....	202
governing the accusative,.....	263
the ablative,	263
the acc. and ablative,..	264
in composition,....	264
Price, circumstances of,.....	260
Pronouns, Personal,.....	68
Observations on,.....	69
Adjective,.....	72

	PAGE
Pronouns,	
Possessive, ...	73
Demonstrative,.....	74
Observations on,..	76
Definite, ...	77
Relative,.....	77
construction of,.....	213
case of,.....	216
Interrogative,.....	78
Observations on,..	79
Indefinite, ...	80
Patrial, ...	80
compound,.....	80
Pronunciation, ...	4
English method of,....	341
Prosody, ...	304
Figures of,.....	327
Punctuation, ...	8
Q.	
Quantity, of,..... 6,	304
General rules for,... 6,	304
Special rules for,.....	306
of penult syllables,...	310
of final syllables,.....	312
of derivatives and compounds,.....	315
R.	
Resolution or analysis,.....	294
Examples of,.....	300
S.	
Scanning, ...	327
Stanza, ...	328
Supines, of,.....	108
construction of,.....	287
Syllables, ...	5
Syntax,.....	204
General principles of,	205
of cases, Synopsis of,	205
Parts of,.....	207
of the noun, ...	222
of the verb,.....	265
Figures of,.....	290
T.	
Tenses, of,.....	91
of the indicative,.....	92
subjunctive,....	96
imperative,....	100
infinitive,.....	100
participles, ...	106
Active, how formed,...	110
Passive, how formed,..	113
Connection of.....	265

	PAGE
Terminations, table of,	14
Time, circumstances of,	258
V.	
Verb,	83
Different kinds of,	85
Inflection of,	86
Voices of,	86
Observations on,	87
Moods of,	88
Tenses of,	91
of the Indicative,	92
of the Subjunctive,	96
of the Imperative,	100
of the Infinitive,	100
Number and person of,	104
how formed,	110
Regular, conjugation of,	109
1st conj. Active,	119
Exercises on,	122
1st conj. Passive,	124
Exercises on,	127
2d conj. Active,	128
Exercises on,	131
2d conj. Passive,	132
Exercises on,	135
3d conj. Active,	136
Exercises on,	141
3d conj. Passive,	141
Exercises on,	145
4th conj. Active,	146
Exercises on,	149
4th conj. Passive,	150
Exercises on,	153
Deponent verbs,	154
Verb,	PAGE
Deponent, 1st conj.	155
2d do.	156
3d do.	157
Verb, deponent, 4th do.	158
Exercises on,	159
Verbs, Neuter-passives,	160
compound,	165
irregular in perf. and Sup.	166–179
Irregular,	181
Sum,	114
Exercises on,	117
Defective,	188
Impersonal,	190
Exercises on,	193
Redundant,	194
Derivatives,	194
Frequentatives,	195
Inceptives,	195
Desideratives,	196
Diminutives,	196
construction of, with Nom.	217
Special rules for,	218
Syntax of,	265
Increment of,	309
Versification,	317
Vocative, meaning of,	13
construction of,	242
Voice,	86
Vowels,	1
Vowel sounds, table of,	4
W.	
Words,	8

CONTENTS OF THE APPENDIX.

I. Roman computation of time, 331
II. Roman names, 334
III. Divisions of the Roman People, 335
IV. Divisions of the Roman civil officers, 336
V. The Roman Army, 336
VI. Roman Money, Weights, and Measures, 337
VII. Different ages of Roman Literature, 340
VIII. English pronunciation of Latin, 341

LATIN GRAMMAR.

1.—LATIN GRAMMAR is the art of speaking or writing the Latin language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts; namely, *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax*, and *Prosody*.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

2.—ORTHOGRAPHY treats of letters, and the mode of combining them into syllables and words.

§ 1. LETTERS.

3.—A LETTER is a mark or character used to represent an elementary sound of the human voice.

The Latin Alphabet consists of twenty-five letters, the same in name and form as those of the English Alphabet, but without the *w*.

Letters are either *Vowels* or *Consonants*.

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

4.—A VOWEL is a letter which represents a simple *inarticulate* sound; and, in a word or syllable, may be sounded alone.

The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*. In Latin, *y* is never a consonant as in English.

5.—The union of two vowels in one sound, is called a *Diphthong*. Diphthongs are of two kinds, proper and improper.

6.—A *Proper Diphthong* is one in which both the vowels are sounded. The Proper Diphthongs in Latin are three, viz: *au, eu, ei;* as, *aurum, euge, hei.*

7.—An *Improper Diphthong* is one in which only one of the vowels is sounded. The Improper Diphthongs in Latin are *ae* and *oe*, often written together, *æ, œ*; as, *tæda, pœna.*

8.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Ai* and *oi* are found as diphthongs in proper names from the Greek; as *Maia, Troia.*

2. After *g* and *q*, and sometimes after *s*, *u* before another vowel in the same syllable, does not form a diphthong with it, but is to be regarded as an appendage of the preceding consonant, having nearly the force of *w*, as in the English words, *linguist, quick, persuade;* thus, *lingua, sanguis, qui, quæ, quod, quum, suadeo,* are pronounced as if written *lingwa, sangwis, kwi, kwæ, kwod, kwum, swadeo.* So also after *c* and *h* in *cui* and *huic*, pronounced in one syllable, as if written *cwi* or *kwi*, and *hwic;* also *ui* after a consonant, in such words from the Greek as *Harpuia.*

3. Two vowels standing together in different syllables, pronounced in quick succession, resemble the diphthong in sound, and, among the poets, are often run together into one syllable; thus *de-in, de-inde, pro-inde,* &c., in two and three syllables, are pronounced in one and two, *dein, deinde, proinde,* &c.

CONSONANTS.

9.—A Consonant is a letter which represents an *articulate* sound, and, in a word or syllable, is never sounded alone, but always in connection with a vowel or diphthong.

10.—The consonants in Latin are *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.* Of these, eight, viz, *p, b, t, d, c, k, q,* and *g,* are called mutes, because they interrupt or stop the sound of the voice, as *b* in *sub;*—four, viz, *l, m, n, r,* are called *liquids,* because of their fluency, or the ease with which they *flow* into other sounds, or, in combining with other consonants, are changed one for another;—two are called double consonants, viz, *x* and *z,* because they are each equivalent to two other consonants; namely, *x* to *cs* or *gs,* and *z* to *ds.* The letter *j,* likewise, is sounded by us as a double consonant, equivalent to *dg,* and in prosody is so considered, because, except in compounds of *jŭgum,* it uniformly makes the vowel before it long. The letter *s* represents a sibilant or hissing sound. The *h* is only an aspirate, and denotes a rough breathing: in prosody, it is not regarded as

a consonant. The letters *k*, *y*, and *z*, are used only in words derived from the Greek.

11.—*Note.* Anciently, the letter *j* seems to have been more nearly allied to a vowel than to a consonant, and was represented by *i*; thus, *ejus*, *pejus*, &c., were written *eius*, *peius*, &c.; and the *j* thus forming a sort of diphthong with the preceding vowel, of course made the syllable long; as, *ei-us*, *pei-us*, &c. In like manner, *u* and *v* were represented by the same letter, namely, *v*.

MARKS AND CHARACTERS.

12.—The marks and characters used in Latin Grammar, or in writing Latin, are the following:

˘ Placed over a vowel shows it to be short.

¯ Placed over a vowel shows it to be long.

˘¯ Placed over a vowel shows it to be short or long.

¨ Is called *Diæresis*, and shows that the vowel over which it is placed does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel, but belongs to a different syllable; as, *aër*, pronounced *a-er*.

^ The *circumflex* shows that the syllable over which it stands has been contracted, and is consequently long, as *nuntiârunt* for *nuntiavērunt*, *dimicâssent* for *dimicavissent*; or that the vowel over which it is placed, has its long open sound; as, *pennâ*.

` The grave accent is sometimes placed over particles and adverbs, to distinguish them from other words consisting of the same letters; as, *quòd*, a conjunction, "that," to distinguish it from *quod*, a relative, "which."

´ The acute accent is used to mark the accented syllable of a word; as, *túba*, *dom'inus*.

' *Apostrophe* is written over the place of a vowel cut off from the end of a word; as, *men'* for *mene*.

PUNCTUATION.

13.—The different divisions of a sentence are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The modern punctuation in Latin is the same as in English. The marks employed are the *Comma* (,); *Semicolon* (;); *Colon* (:); *Period* (.); *Interrogation* (?); *Exclamation* (!).

14.—The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients, was a point (.), which denoted pauses of a different length, according as it stood at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line—that at the top denoting the shortest, and that at the bottom the longest pause.

§ 2. PRONUNCIATION.*

15.—The pronunciation of the Latin language prevalent among the nations of continental Europe, is greatly preferable to the English, both because it harmonizes better with the quantity of the language, as settled by the rules of Prosody, and because, by giving one simple sound to each vowel, distinguishing the short and the long only by the duration of sounds, it is much more simple. The sound of the vowels, as pronounced alone or at the end of a syllable, is exhibited in the following—

16.—TABLE OF VOWEL AND DIPHTHONGAL SOUNDS.

Short ă sounds	like	a	in Jehovah,	as	ămăt.
Long ā	like	a	in father,	as	fāma.
Short ĕ	like	e	in met,	as	pĕtĕrĕ.
Long ē	like	ey	in they,	as	docēre.
Short ĭ	like	i	in uniform,	as	unĭtas.
Long ī	like	i	in machine,	as	pīnus.
Short ŏ	like	o	in polite,	as	indŏles.
Long ō	like	o	in go,	as	pōno.
Short ŭ	like	u	in popular,	as	popŭlus.
Long ū	like	u	in rule, or pure,	as	tūba, ūsu.
ae or æ / oe or œ	like	ey	in they,	as	Pæan. / Phœbus.
au	like	ou	in our,	as	aurum.
eu	like	eu	in feud,	as	eŭrus.
ei	like	i	in ice,	as	hei.

17.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. The sound of the vowels *a* and *e* remains unchanged in all situations.

2. The sound of *i*, *o*, and *u*, is slightly modified when fol-

* The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language, cannot now be certainly ascertained. The variety of pronunciation in different nations, arises from a tendency in all to assimilate it in some measure to their own. But of all varieties, that of the English—certainly the farthest of any from the original—is, in our opinion, decidedly the worst; not only from its intricacy and want of simplicity, but especially from its conflicting constantly with the settled quantity of the language. In English, every accented syllable is long, and every unaccented one is short. When, therefore, according to the rules of English accentuation, the accent falls on a short syllable in a Latin word, or does not fall on a long one, in either case, its tendency is, to lead to false quantity.—For the English orthoëpy of the Latin language, see p. 341.

lowed by a consonant in the same syllable, and is the same, whether the syllable is long or short. Thus modified,

i	sounds like	i	in sit,	as mītīt.
o	like	o	in not,	as pŏterat, fŏrma.
u	like	u	in tub,	as frūctŭs.

Note. For the sound of *u*, before another vowel, after *g*, *q*, and sometimes *s*, &c., See 8–2.

3. The consonants are pronounced generally as in the English language. *C* and *g* are hard, as in the words *cat*, and *got*, before *a*, *o*, and *u*; and *c* is soft like *s*; and *g*, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *œ*.

4. *T* and *c*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* short, followed by a vowel, usually has the sound of *sh*; as in *nuntius* or *nuncius*, *patientia*, *socius*; pronounced *nunshius*, *pashienshea*, *soshius*. But *t* has not the sound of *sh* before ĭ long, as *totius*; nor before such Greek words as *Miltiades*, *Bœotia*, *Ægyptius*; nor when it is preceded by another *t*, or *s*, or *x*; as, *Bruttii*, *ostium*, *mixtio*, &c.; nor, lastly, when *ti* is followed by the termination of the infinitive passive in *er*, as in *nitier*, *quatier*.

Note. The soft sound of *c* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *œ* adopted by all European nations, is evidently a deviation from the ancient pronunciation, according to which *c* was sounded hard, like *k*, or the Greek κ, in all situations. *Ti* sounding *shi* is a similar corruption, chiefly English, which it might perhaps be well to change by giving *ti* the same sound in all situations; as, *arti*, *arti-um*, *arti-bus*.

5. *S* has always the sharp sound like *ss*, and never the soft sound like *z*; or like *s* in *as*, *peās*, *dose*, &c.; thus, *nos*, *domĭnos*, *rūpes*, are pronounced as if written *noss*, *domĭnoss*, *rūpess*, not *nose*, *domĭnose*, *rūpese*.

---

§ 3. SYLLABLES.

18.—A Syllable is a distinct sound forming the whole of a word, or so much of it as can be sounded at once.

Every word has as many syllables as it has distinct vowel sounds.

A word of one syllable is called a *Monosyllable*.

A word of two syllables is called a *Dissyllable*.

A word of three syllables is called a *Trissyllable*.

A word of many syllables is called a *Polysyllable*.

19.—In a word of many syllables, the last is called the *final* syllable; the one next the last is called the *penult*, and the syllable preceding that is called the *antepenult*.

20.—The Figures which affect the orthography of words, are as follows:

1st. *Prosthesis* prefixes a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnātus* for *nātus*, *tetŭlit* for *tŭlit*.

2d. *Epenthesis* inserts a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *navĭta* for *nauta*, *Timōlus* for *Tmōlus*.

3d. *Paragoge* adds a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *amarier* for *amāri*, &c.

4th. *Aphæresis* cuts off a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *brĕvis't* or *brĕvist* for *brĕvis est*; *rhăbo* for *arrhăbo*.

5th. *Syncope* takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word; as, *oraclum* for *oracŭlum*; *amârim*, for *amavĕrim*; *deûm* for *deōrum*.

6th. *Apocope* takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word; as, *Antōni* for *Antonii*, *men'* for *mēne*, *dic* for *dīce*.

7th. *Anŭthesis* substitutes one letter for another: as, *olli* for *illi*; *vult*, *vultis*, for *volt*, *voltis*, contractions for *vŏlit*, *volĭtis*.

8th. *Metathesis* changes the order of letters in a word; as, *pistris* for *pristis*.

9th. *Tmesis* separates the parts of a compound word by inserting another word between them; as, *quæ me cunquĕ vocant terræ*, for *quæcumque me*, &c.

10th. *Anastrophe* inverts the order of words; as, *dăre circum* for *circumdăre*.

QUANTITY AND ACCENT.

21.—Quantity is the measure of a syllable in respect of the time required in pronouncing it.

In respect of quantity, a syllable is either *long* or *short*; and a long syllable is considered equal to two short ones.

22.—General Rules.

1. A diphthong is always long; as, *aūrum*, *pœ-na*.

2. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *vĭ-a*, *dĕ-us*.

3. A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant is long; as, *cônsul*, *pēnna*, *trāxit*.

4. A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short; as, *cerēbrum*, or *cerĕbrum*.

[For special rules on this subject, see Prosody.]

23.—Accent is a special stress or force of voice on a particular syllable of a word, by which that syllable is distinguished from the rest.

Every word of more than one syllable has an accent; as *Déus*, *hómo*, *dom'ĭnus*, *tolerā́bĭlis*.

The last syllable of a word never has the accent. In a word of two syllables, the accent is always on the first. In a word of three or more syllables, if the penult is long, the accent is on the penult; as, *sermō'nis*, *amarḗmus*; but if the penult is short, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *fácĭlis*, *dúcĕre*, *péctŏris*, *pectŏ́rĭbus*.

24.—An enclitic syllable (*que*, *ve*, *ne*, &c.), being considered, in pronunciation, part of the word to which it is annexed, generally changes the place of the accent by increasing the number of syllables; as, *vírum*, *virúmque*; *dom'ĭnus*, *dominúsve*.

25.—A word of one syllable is properly without an accent; but if an enclitic is annexed, it becomes a dissyllable, and takes the accent on the first syllable; as, *tu*, *túne*.

26.—In English, an accented syllable is always long, or rather the accent makes it long; but in Latin, the accent makes no change in the quantity of its syllable, and, except in the penult, is as often on a short, as on a long syllable; as, *fă'cĭles*, *pĕ'tĕre*, *vĭ'rum*.

Note 1. These rules respecting accent, in connection with the general rules for quantity, will be sufficient to guide the pupil in accenting words, without the artificial aid of marking the accented syllables. Where the quantity of the penult is not ascertained by the preceding rules (22), it will be marked in this work.

Note 2. In reading Latin, it is important, as much as possible, to distinguish accent from quantity—a matter not without difficulty to those accustomed to a language in which accent and quantity always coincide. It should be remembered that in Latin, the accent does not make a syllable long as in English, neither does the want of it make the syllable short. *Hŏ́mines*, for example, should not be pronounced *hṓmines*; and care should be taken to distinguish in reading the verbs *lĕ'go* and *lē'go*;—the noun *pŏp'ŭlus* (the people) from *pō'pŭlus* (a poplar);—or the verbs *fŭ'ris*, *lĕ'gis*, *rĕ'gis*, from the genitives *fū'ris*, *lē'gis*, *rē'gis*. The accented short syllable should be pronounced with greater force of voice, but be preserved short still; and the long syllable, whether accented or not, should be made long.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

27.—ETYMOLOGY treats of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivations.

§ 4. WORDS.

28.—WORDS are certain articulate sounds used by common consent as signs of our ideas.

1. In respect of *Formation*, words are either *Primitive* or *Derivative; Simple* or *Compound.*

A *Primitive* word is one that comes from no other; as, *puer*, *bŏnus*, *păter.*

A *Derivative* word is one that is derived from another word; as, *pueritia*, *bonĭtas*, *paternus.*

A *Simple* word is one that is not combined with any other word; as, *pius*, *doceo*, *verto.*

A *Compound* word is one made up of two or more simple words; as *impius*, *dedoceo*, *animadverto.*

2. In respect of *Form*, words are either *Declinable* or *Indeclinable.*

A *Declinable* word is one which undergoes certain changes of *form* or *termination*, to express the different relations of gender, number, case, &c., usually termed, in Grammar, *Accidents.*

An *Indeclinable* word is one that undergoes no change of form.

3. In respect of *Signification* and *Use*, words are divided into different classes, called *Parts of Speech.*

§ 5. PARTS OF SPEECH.

29.—The Parts of Speech in the Latin language are eight, viz:

1. *Noun* or *Substantive*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, declined.

2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, *Conjunction*, undeclined.

30.—Any part of speech used simply as a word, and spoken of, is regarded as a noun (271). Thus used, it is indeclinable, and in the neuter gender.

---

§ 6. THE NOUN.

31.—A Noun is the name of any person, place, or thing; as *Cicĕro*, *Rōma*, *hŏmo*, *lĭber*.

32.—Nouns are of two kinds, *Proper* and *Common*.

1. A *Proper Noun* is the name applied to an individual only; as, *Cicĕro*, *Aprīlis*, *Rōma*.

To this class belong,

Patronymics, or those which express one's parentage or family; as, *Priamĭdes*, the son of Priam.

Gentile, or *Patrial*, which denote one's country; as, *Romānus*, *Gallus*.

Obs. A proper noun applied to more than one, becomes a common noun; as, *duodĕcim Cæsăres*, the twelve Cæsars.

2. A *Common Noun* is a name applied to all things of the same sort; as, *vir*, a man; *dŏmus*, a house; *lĭber*, a book.

Note. A Proper noun is the name of an *individual* only, and is used to distinguish that individual from all others of the same class. A Common noun is the name of a *class* of objects, and is equally applicable to all the individuals contained in it.

33.—Under this class may be ranged,

1. *Collective nouns*, or nouns of multitude, which signify many in the singular number; as, *populus*, a people; *exercĭtus*, an army.

2. *Abstract nouns*, or the names of qualities; as, *bonĭtas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness.

3. *Diminutives*, or nouns which express a diminution in the signification of the nouns from which they are derived; as, *libellus*, a little book, from *liber*, a book.

4. *Amplificative* nouns, or those which denote an increase in the signification of the nouns from which they are derived; as, *capĭto*, a person having a large head, from *căput*, the head.

---

§ 7. ACCIDENTS OF THE NOUNS.

34.—To Latin nouns belong *Person*, *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case*.

1. PERSON.

35.—PERSON, in Grammar, is the distinction of nouns as used in discourse, to denote the speaker, the person or thing addressed, or the person or thing spoken of. Hence,

There are three persons, called *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

A noun is in the first person, when it denotes the speaker or writer; as, *Ego ille consul qui verbo cīves in exilium ejicio.*

A noun is in the second person, when it denotes the person or thing addressed; as, *Catilīna, perge quo cœpisti.*

A noun is in the third person, when it denotes the person or thing spoken of; as, *Tempus fugit.*

Note. Person has nothing to do either with the form of a noun, or with its meaning, but simply with the manner in which it is used. Hence, the same noun may at one time be in the first person; at another, in the second; and at another, in the third.

2. GENDER.

36.—GENDER means the distinction of nouns with regard to Sex.

37.—There are three Genders, the *Masculine*, the *Feminine*, and the *Neuter*.

38.—Of some nouns, the gender is determined by their *signification*;—of others, by their *termination*.

39.—The *Masculine* gender belongs to all nouns which denote the male sex.

40.—The *Feminine* gender belongs to all nouns which denote the female sex.

41.—The *Neuter* gender belongs to all nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine.

42.—Nouns which denote both males and females, are said to be of the *Common* gender; i. e., they are both masculine and feminine.

43.—Nouns denoting things without sex, and which are sometimes of one gender, and sometimes of another, are said to be *Doubtful.*

44.—The gender of nouns not determined by their signification, is usually to be ascertained by their termination, as will be noticed under each declension.

45.—GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON GENDER.

1. Nouns denoting brute animals, especially those whose sex is not easily discerned or but rarely attended to, commonly follow the gender of their termination. Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, insects, &c.

2. A proper name often follows the gender of the common noun under which it is comprehended; thus,

The names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine, because *mensis*, *ventus*, *fluvius*, *mons*, are masculine.

The names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *nāvis*, are feminine.

To these, however, there are many exceptions.

3. Some nouns are masculine and feminine both in sense and grammatical construction; as, *adolescens*, a young man or woman; *Affīnis*, a relation by marriage; *dux*, a leader.

Some nouns are masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction; i. e., they have an adjective word always in the masculine gender; such as, *Artĭfex*, an artist; *fur*, a thief; *sĕnex*, an old person; &c.

Some nouns are masculine or feminine in sense, but feminine only in grammatical construction; i. e., they have an adjective word always in the feminine gender; such as, *copiæ*, forces, troops; *custodiæ*, guards; *ŏpĕræ*, labourers; &c.

4. Some nouns denoting persons, are neuter, both in termi-

nation and construction; as, *Acroāma*, a jester; *Auxilia*, auxiliary troops; *mancipium*, or *servilium*, a slave.

5. Some nouns distinguish the masculine and feminine by a difference of termination; as, *Victor*, *victrix*; *ultor*, *ultrix*; *cŏquus*, *cŏqua*. Some names of animals distinguish the two sexes by different forms; as, *Agnus*, *agna*; *cervus*, *cerva*; *columbus*, *columba*; *gallus*, *gallīna*, &c. In some cases, the words are altogether different; as, *taurus*, a bull; *vacca*, a cow. But, in general, the male and the female are expressed by the same term; *passer*, sparrow; *corvus*, a raven; *fēlis*, a cat; *vulpes*, a fox; *cănis*, a dog; *hŏmo*, a man.

3. NUMBER.

46.—NUMBER is that property of a noun by which it expresses one, or more than one.

47.—Latin nouns have two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*. The Singular denotes *one;* the Plural, *more than one.*

48.—Some nouns in the plural form, denote only *one;* as, *Athēnæ*, Athens; others signify one or more; as, *nuptiæ*, a marriage or marriages.

4. CASE.

49.—CASE is the state or condition of a noun with respect to the other words in a sentence.

50.—Latin nouns have six cases, the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative.*

1. The *Nominative* case, for the most part, denotes the name of an object simply, or as that of which something is affirmed.

2. The *Genitive* connects with the name of an object, the idea of origin, possession, or fitness.

3. The *Dative* represents the thing named, as that *to* which something is added, or *to*, or *for* which something is said or done.

4. The *Accusative* represents the thing named, as affected or acted upon by something else, and also, as the object to which something tends or relates.

5. The *Vocative* is used when persons or things expressed by the noun, are addressed.

6. The *Ablative* represents the thing named, as that *from* which something is separated, or taken; or, as that *by* or *with* which something is done, or exists.

51.—All the cases, except the nominative, are called *Oblique* cases.

52.—The signs of the oblique cases, or the prepositions by which they are usually rendered into English, are the following, viz: Genitive, *of;* Dative, *to* or *for;* Vocative, *O;* Ablative, *with*, *from*, *in*, *by*, &c., as in the following scheme:

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	a king,	Nom.	kings,
Gen.	*of* a king,	Gen.	*of* kings,
Dat.	*to* or *for* a king,	Dat.	*to* or *for* kings,
Acc.	a king,	Acc.	kings,
Voc.	O king,	Voc.	O kings,
Abl.	*with*, *from*, *in*, or *by*, a king.	Abl.	*with*, *from*, *in*, or *by*, kings.

§ 8. DECLENSION.

53.—DECLENSION is the mode of changing the terminations of nouns, &c.

54.—In Latin, there are five declensions, called the *First*, *Second*, *Third*, *Fourth*, and *Fifth*.

55.—The declensions are distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular; thus,

The first	declension has the	genitive singular	in *-æ*,
The second	"	"	in *-i*,
The third	"	"	in *-is*,
The fourth	"	"	in *-ûs*,
The fifth	"	"	in *-ei*.

56.—All that part of a noun, or of an adjective, which precedes the termination of the genitive singular, is called the *Root*. All that follows the root, in any case or number, is called the *Case-ending*, or *Termination*.

57.—GENERAL RULES FOR THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative, alike in both numbers, and these cases, in the plural, end always in *a*.

2. The vocative, for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is like the nominative.

3. The dative and the ablative plural are alike.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural.

The difference between these declensions will be seen at one view in the following:

58.—TABLE OF TERMINATIONS.

Singular.

	First.	*Second.*		*Third.*		*Fourth.*		*Fifth.*
		M.	N.	M.	N.	M.	N.	
N.	-ă,	-us, -er,	-um,	—	—	-us,	-ū,	-es,
G.	-æ,	-i,		-is,	—	-ûs,	-ûs,	-eï,
D.	-æ,	-ō,		-ī,		-uī,	-ū,	-eï,
Ac.	-am,	-um,	-um,	-em,		-um,	-ū,	-em,
V.	-ă,	-ĕ, -er,	-um,	—	—	-us,	-ū,	-es,
Ab.	-ā.	-ō.		-ĕ, *or* ī.		-ū.	-ū.	-ē.

Plural.

N.	-æ,	-ī,	-ă,	-es,	-ă, -iă,	-us,	-uă,	-es,
G.	-ārum,	-ōrum,		-um,	-ium,	-uum,		-ērum,
D.	-is,	-is,		-ĭbus,		-ĭbus, *or* ŭbus,		-ēbus,
Ac.	-as,	-os,	-ă,	-es,	-ă, -iă,	-us,	-uă,	-es,
V.	-æ,	-ī,	-ă,	-es,	-ă, -iă,	-us,	-uă,	-es,
Ab.	-is.	-is.		-ĭbus.		-ĭbus, *or* ŭbus.		-ēbus.

59.—The terminations of the nominative singular in the third declension, being numerous, are omitted in the table; also those of the vocative, which, in this declension, is always like the nominative. The terminations of the genitive, dative, and ablative neuter, are the same as the masculine.

§ 9. FIRST DECLENSION.

60.—The first declension has four terminations of the nominative singular: two feminine, *a*, *e*; and two masculine, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*; the rest are Greek.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	–ă,	*Nom.*	–æ,
Gen.	–æ,	*Gen.*	–ārum,
Dat.	–æ,	*Dat.*	–is,
Acc.	–am,	*Acc.*	–as,
Voc.	–ă,	*Voc.*	–æ,
Abl.	–ā,	*Abl.*	–is.

PENNA, *a feather*,—later, *a pen*. Fem.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. penn-ă,	*a pen,*	*N.* penn-æ,	*pens,*
G. penn-æ,	*of a pen,*	*G.* penn-ārum,	*of pens,*
D. penn-æ,	*to* or *for a pen,*	*D.* penn-is,	*to* or *for pens,*
Ac. penn-am,	*a pen,*	*Ac.* penn-as,	*pens,*
V. penn-ă,	*O pen,*	*V.* penn-æ,	*O pens,*
Ab. penn-ā,	*with a pen.*	*Ab.* penn-is,	*with pens.*

VIA, *a way*. Fem.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. vi-ă,	*a way,*	*N.* vi-æ,	*ways,*
G. vi-æ,	*of a way,*	*G.* vi-ārum,	*of ways,*
D. vi-æ,	*to a way,*	*D.* vi-is,	*to ways,*
Ac. vi-am,	*a way,*	*Ac.* vi-as,	*ways,*
V. vi-ă,	*O way,*	*V.* vi-æ,	*O ways,*
Ab. vi-ā,	*with*, &c., *a way.*	*Ab.* vi-is,	*with*, &c., *ways.*

Note. The words declined as examples in this and the other declensions, are not divided into syllables, and the hyphen (–) is never to be regarded as a division of syllables, but only as separating the *root* from the *termination*; as *penn–a*, *agr–i*, &c.

In like manner decline:

Ara, *an altar*; Sella, *a seat*; Tŭba, *a trumpet*; Litĕra, *a letter*.

ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

Ala,	*a wing.*	Făba,	*a bean.*	Rīpa,	*a bank.*
Arca,	*a chest.*	Hōra,	*an hour.*	Turba,	*a crowd.*
Căsa,	*a cottage.*	Mensa,	*a table.*	Unda,	*a wave.*
Causa,	*a cause.*	Norma,	*a rule.*	Virga,	*a rod.*

61.—EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. Nouns in *a*, denoting appellations of men, as *pincerna*, a butler; names of rivers; (45–2,) likewise *Hadriă*, the Hadriatic; *comēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer, are masculine. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

EXCEPTIONS IN CASE.

2. *The Genitive Singular.*—The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive in *āi*; as, *aulă*, a hall; Gen. *aulāi*;—sometimes in *as;* as, *mater-familias*, the mother of a family, (See 96–9).

3. *The Accusative Singular.*—Greek nouns in *a*, have sometimes *an* in the accusative singular; as, *Maian*, *Ossan.*

4. *The Dative and Ablative Plural.*—The following nouns have *ābus* instead of *is*, in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them from masculine nouns in *us*, of the second declension, viz:

Asĭna, *a she ass.*	Filia, *a daughter.*
Dea, *a goddess.*	Mūla, *a she mule.*
Equa, *a mare.*	Nāta, *a daughter.*

Several others are found in inscriptions and in ancient authors. Still, except *dea* and *filia*, notwithstanding the ambiguity, they generally prefer the termination *is*.

GREEK NOUNS.

62.—Greek nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, are declined as follows, in the singular number:—

Ænēas, *Æneas.*	Anchīsēs, *Anchises.*	Penelŏpē, *Penelope.*
N. Ænē-ās,	*N.* Anchīs-ēs,	*N.* Penelŏp-ē,
G. Ænē-æ,	*G.* Anchīs-æ,	*G.* Penelŏp-ēs,
D. Ænē-æ,	*D.* Anchīs-æ,	*D.* Penelŏp-ē,
Ac. Ænē-am, *or* an,	*Ac.* Anchīs-en,	*Ac.* Penelŏp-ēn,
V. Ænē-ă,	*V.* Anchīs-ē,	*V.* Penelŏp-ē,
Ab. Ænē-ā.	*Ab.* Anchīs-ē.	*Ab.* Penelŏp-ē.

Like *Ænēas*, decline *Boreas*, the north wind; *Mĭdas*, a king of Phrygia;—also, *Gorgias*, *Messias.*

Like *Anchīses*, decline *Alcīdes*, a name of Hercules; *comētes*, a comet;—also, *Priamĭdes*, *Tydĭdes*, *dynastes*, *satrăpes.*

Like *Penelŏpe*, decline *Circe*, a famous sorceress; *Cybēle*, the mother of the gods; *epitŏme*, an abridgment; *grammatĭce*, grammar;—also, *alŏē, crambē, Circe, Danăē, Phœnicē.*

Obs. 1. When the plural of proper names occurs, it is like the plural of *penna;* thus, *Atrīdæ, Atridārum*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns in *es* have sometimes *ă* in the vocative, more rarely *ā*. Nouns in *stes* have *sta*. They also sometimes have the accusative in *em*, and the ablative in *ā*.

EXERCISES ON THE FIRST DECLENSION.

[The words in the following exercises will be found in No. 60.]

1. *Tell the case and number of the following words, and translate them accordingly.*—Penna, pennam, pennārum, pennis, pennā, pennæ;—āram, āris; sellæ, sellā, sellă, sellārum; tŭbis, tŭbam, tŭbæ; litĕrā, literārum, pennis, āras, tŭbæ, litĕris;—Penelŏpes, Penelŏpen, Ænēan, Anchīses, Anchīsæ, Ænēa.

2. *Translate the following words into Latin:*—The pen, of pens, with pens, from a pen, in a pen, by pens; from the altars; of a trumpet; with letters; a seat; O altar; the seat of Penelope; of Æneas; with Anchises; a trumpet; from the altar; to a seat; with a pen; of the altars; &c., *ad libitum.*

---

§ 10. SECOND DECLENSION.

63.—The Second Declension has seven terminations of the nominative singular: namely,

Five masculine, *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, and *os*.

Two neuter, *um* and *on*.

Of these terminations, *os* and *on* are Greek; the rest are Latin.

TERMINATIONS.

Masculine.		*Neuter.*	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. –er,–ir,–ur,–us,	*N.* –ī,	*N.* –um,	*N.* –ă,
G. –ī,	*G.* –ōrum,	*G.* –ī,	*G.* –ōrum,
D. –ō,	*D.* –īs,	*D.* –ō,	*D.* –īs,
Ac. –um,	*Ac.* –ōs,	*Ac.* –um,	*Ac.* –ă,
V. –er,–ir,–ur,–e,	*V.* –ī,	*V.* –um,	*V.* –ă,
Ab. –ō.	*Ab.* –īs,	*Ab.* –ō.	*Ab.* –īs.

64.—Nouns in *er*, *ir*, and *ur*, add *i* in the genitive; but *us* and *um* are changed into *i*. The only nouns in *ir* are *vir*, and its compounds *duumvĭri*, *trevĭri*, &c. The only word in *ur* of this declension, is the masculine gender of the adjective *sātur*, full. All these are declined like *puer*.

PUER, *a boy*, Masc.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. puer,	*a boy*,	*N.* puĕr-i,	*boys.*
G. puĕr-i,	*of a boy*,	*G.* puer-ōrum,	*of boys*,
D. puĕr-o,	*to*, or *for a boy*,	*D.* puĕr-is,	*to* or *for boys*,
Ac. puĕr-um,	*a boy*,	*Ac.* puĕr-os,	*boys*,
V. puer,	*O boy*,	*V.* puĕr-i,	*O boys*,
Ab. puĕr-o,	*with*, &c., *a boy.*	*Ab.* puĕr-is,	*with*, &c., *boys.*

65.—All the nouns in *er* declined like *puer*, are the compounds of *fĕro* and *gĕro*; as, *Lucĭfer*, the morning star; *armĭger*, an armor bearer: also the nouns *adulter*, an adulterer; *Celtĭbēr*, a Celtiberian; *Iber*, a Spaniard; *Lĭber*, Bacchus; *sŏcer*, a father-in-law; *vesper*, the evening; and sometimes *Mulcĭber*, a name of Vulcan: also the plural *lĭbĕri*, children.

Words in *er*, *ir*, and *ur*, it is probable, originally ended in *ĕrus*, *ĭrus*, and *ŭrus*; and hence, in some words, both forms are still found; as, *socĕrus* and *sŏcer*.

66.—RULE 1. All other nouns in *er*, lose *e* in the root, by syncope, when the termination is added; as,

LĪBER, *a book*, Masc.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:	
N. lĭber,	*N.* libr-i,	Ager,	*a field.*
G. libr-i,	*G.* libr-ōrum,	Aper,	*a wild boar.*
D. libr-o,	*D.* libr-is,	Culter,	*a knife.*
Ac. libr-um,	*Ac.* libr-os,	Magister,	*a master.*
V. lĭber,	*V.* libr-i,	Auster,	*the south wind.*
Ab. libr-o.	*Ab.* libr-is.	Cancer,	*a crab.*

67.—RULE 2. Nouns in *us*, have the vocative in *e*; as, *ventus*, *vente*.

DOMĬNUS, *a lord*, Masc.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:	
N. domĭn-us,	*N.* domĭn-i,	Ventus,	*the wind*,
G. domĭn-i,	*G.* domĭn-ōrum,	Oculus,	*the eye.*
D. domĭn-o,	*D.* domĭn-is,	Annus,	*a year.*
Ac. domĭn-um,	*Ac.* domĭn-os,	Fluvius,	*a river.*
V. domĭn-e,	*V.* domĭn-i,	Hortus,	*a garden*,
Ab. domĭn-o.	*Ab.* domĭn-is.	Radius,	*a ray.*

REGNUM, *a kingdom*, Neut.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:	
N. regn-um,	*N.* regn-a,	Antrum,	*a cave.*
G. regn-i,	*G.* regn-ōrum.	Astrum,	*a star.*
D. regn-o,	*D.* regn-is,	Dōnum,	*a gift.*
Ac. regn-um,	*Ac.* regn-a,	Jūgum,	*a yoke.*
V. regn-um,	*V.* regn-a,	Saxum,	*a stone.*
Ab. regn-o.	*Ab.* regn-is.	Pōmum,	*an apple.*

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.

Arbĭter,	*a judge.*	Folium,	*a leaf.*	Sŏcer,	*a father-in-law.*
Bellum,	*war.*	Gladius,	*a sword.*	Tēlum,	*a dart.*
Cădus,	*a cask.*	Lŭpus,	*a wolf.*	Tōrus,	*a couch.*
Cervus,	*a stag.*	Mūrus,	*a wall.*	Tectum,	*the roof.*
Collum,	*the neck.*	Nīdus,	*a nest.*	Truncus,	*the trunk.*
Equus,	*a horse.*	Ovum,	*an egg.*	Vēlum,	*a sail.*
Făber,	*an artist.*	Prælium,	*a battle.*	Vădum,	*a ford.*
Fīcus, f.,	*a figtree.*	Rāmus,	*a branch.*	Vōtum,	*a vow.*

68.—EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. 1. Of nouns ending in *us*, the names of plants, towns, islands, and precious stones, with few exceptions, are feminine, (45–2.)

Obs. In many cases, where the name of a tree ends in *us*, fem., there is a form in *um* denoting the fruit of the tree; as, *cerăsus, cerăsum; mālus, mālum; mōrus, mōrum; pīrus, pīrum; prūnus, prūnum; pōmus, pōmum.* But *fīcus* means both a fig-tree, and a fig.

Exc. 2. Besides these, only four words, originally Latin, are feminine; viz, *alvus*, the belly; *cŏlus*, the distaff; *hŭmus*, the ground; and *vannus*, a winnowing fan.

Exc. 3. *Vīrus*, juice, poison; and *pelăgus*, the sea, are neuter, and have the accusative and vocative like the nominative. *Vulgus*, the common people, is both masculine and neuter. *Pampĭnus*, a vine branch, is rarely feminine, commonly masculine.

Exc. 4. Many Greek nouns in *us*, are feminine, especially compounds of ὁδος; as, *methodus, periodus*, &c. So also, *biblus, papīrus, diphthongus, paragraphus, diametrus, perimetrus.*

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

69.—*Exc.* 5. *The Vocative Singular.* 1st. Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Virgilius*, V. *Virgĭli;* except *Pius*, which has *Pie.*

In like manner, *filius*, a son, has *fili;* and *genius*, one's guardian angel, has *geni.* But other common nouns in *ius*, and such epithets as *Delius*, *Saturnius*, &c., not considered as proper names, have *ie.* Also proper names in *īus*, from Greek nouns in εως, have *ie.*

2d. *Deus* has *deus* in the vocative, and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, (sometimes contracted *dî* and *dîs*,) than *dei* and *deis.* *Meus*, my, has the vocative *mi*, sometimes *meus.*

70.—*Obs.* The poets, sometimes, make the vocative of nouns in *us*, like the nominative, which is seldom done in prose. Sometimes, also, they change nouns in *er* into *us;* as, *Evander* or *Evandrus;* in the vocative, *Evander* or *Evandre.*

71.—*Exc.* 6. *The Genitive Singular.*—Nouns in *ius* and *ium*, in the purest age of the Latin language, formed the genitive singular in *i*, not in *ii*, both in prose and verse; as, *fili*, *Tulli*, *ingeni;* they are now frequently written with a circumflex; thus, *filî*, *Tullî*, *ingenî;* for, *filii*, *Tullii*, &c.

72.—*Exc.* 7. *The Genitive Plural.*—Some nouns, especially those which denote value, measure, weight, commonly form the genitive plural in *ûm*, instead of *ōrum;* as, *nummûm*, *sestertiûm*, &c. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *deûm*, *Danăûm*, &c.; also, *dîvom* is used for *divōrum.*

73.—DEUS, *a god*, is thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.	
N. De-us,	*N.* De-i, *or* Di-i,	Contr. Dî,
G. De-i,	*G.* De-ōrum,	
D. De-o,	*D.* De-is, *or* Di-is,	" Dîs,
Ac. De-um,	*Ac.* De-os,	
V. De-us,	*V.* De-i, *or* Di-i,	" Dî,
Ab. De-o.	*Ab.* De-is, *or* Di-is,	" Dîs.

GREEK NOUNS.

74.—Greek nouns in *os* and *on*, are often changed into *us* and *um*; as, *Alpheos*, *Alpheus*; *Ilion*, *Ilium*: and those in *ros*, into *er*; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander*. When thus changed, they are declined like Latin nouns of the same terminations. Otherwise,

Greek nouns are thus declined:

ANDROGEOS, Masc; DELOS, Fem.—BARBĬTON, *a lyre*, Neut.

	Singular.		Singular.	Plural.
N.	Androge-os,	Dēl-os,	*N.* barbĭt-on,	barbĭt-a,
G.	Androge-o, *or* -i,	Dēl-i,	*G.* barbĭt-i,	barbĭt-on,
D.	Androge-o,	Dēl-o,	*D.* barbĭt-o,	barbĭt-is,
Ac.	Androge-o, *or* -on,	Dēl-on,	*Ac.* barbĭt-on,	barbĭt-a,
V.	Androge-os,	Dēl-e,	*V.* barbĭt-on,	barbĭt-a,
Ab.	Androge-o.	Dēl-o.	*Ab.* barbĭt-o.	barbĭt-is.

75.—Some nouns in *os*, anciently had the genitive in *ŭ*; as, *Menandru*. *Panthu* occurs in Virgil, as the vocative of *Panthus*. Proper names in *eŭs* are declined like *domĭnus*, but have the vocative in *eus*, and sometimes contract the genitive-singular; as, *Orphĕi* into *Orphei*, or *Orphi*. Proper names in which *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension. Other nouns, also, are sometimes of the third declension; as, *Androgeo*, *Androgeonis*.

EXERCISES ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

List of words in the following exercises:

Puer,	*a boy.*	Regnum,	*a kingdom,*	Sŏlum,	*the soil,*
Domĭnus,	*a lord.*	Ventus,	*the wind.*	Ocŭlus,	*the eye.*
Lĭber,	*a book.*	Cœlum,	*heaven.*	Filius,	*a son.*

Tell the case and number of the following words, and translate them accordingly:—Puĕri, dominōrum, domĭno, puĕro, puĕrum, puĕros, libri, libris, librum, libro, domĭnis, domĭne, regnum, regna, regnōrum—ventŭs, vento, ventum—ocŭlus, oculōrum—filii, fili, filiis, filios.

Translate the following words into Latin:—To a boy, from a boy, O boy, O boys, of boys; books, of books, for books, in books, with a book; a lord, from a lord, to a lord, of lords, the lords; of a kingdom, the kingdom, to the kingdoms; to the winds of heaven, lords of the soil, &c., *ad libitum*.

§ 11. THE THIRD DECLENSION.

76.—Nouns of the third declension are very numerous; they are of all genders, and generally increase one syllable in the oblique cases. Its final letters, in the nominative, are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of these, *a*, *i*, *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

Obs. A noun is said to *increase*, when it has more syllables in any case than it has in the nominative.

TERMINATIONS.

Masculine and Feminine.		*Neuter.*	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. —,	*N.* -es,	*N.* —,	*N.* -a,
G. -is,	*G.* -um, *or* -ium,	*G.* -is,	*G.* -um, *or* -ium,
D. -i,	*D.* -ĭbus,	*D.* -i,	*D.* -ĭbus,
Ac. -em,	*Ac.* -es,	*Ac.* —,	*Ac.* -a,
V. —,	*V.* -es,	*V.* —,	*V.* -a,
Ab. -e, *or* -i.	*Ab.* -ĭbus.	*Ab.* -e, *or* -i.	*Ab.* -ĭbus.

77.—GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. In this declension, the nominative and vocative of masculine and feminine nouns are always alike. As the final syllables of the nominative are very numerous, a dash (—) supplies their place in the preceding table. Neuter nouns come under the general rule, (57–1).

2. All nouns of this declension are declined by annexing the above *case-endings*, or terminations to the *root*.

3. The *Root* consists of all that stands before *is* in the genitive (56), and remains unchanged throughout. Hence, when the genitive case is found, the cases after that are alike in all nouns, except as noticed hereafter. In most nouns of this declension, the root does not appear in full form in the nominative, nor in the vocative singular. See 78, 80, 81.

4. The genitive singular of nouns, in this declension, will be most easily learned from the Dictionary, as all rules that can be given are rendered nearly useless by the number of exceptions under them.

5. In the following examples, the root and terminations are separated by a hyphen (-), in order to show more distinctly the regularity of the declension. This being mentioned, it will occasion no difficulty, though standing, as it often does, in the middle of syllables; as, *pá tr-is.*

78.—§ 12. EXAMPLES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Sermo, *a speech*, Masc.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :	
N. Sermo,	*N.* Sermōn-es,	Carbo,	*a coal.*
G. Sermōn-is,	*G.* Sermōn-um,	Leo,	*a lion.*
D. Sermōn-i,	*D.* Sermon-ĭbus,	Oratio,	*an oration.*
Ac. Sermōn-em,	*Ac.* Sermōn-es,	Pāvo,	*a peacock.*
V. Sermo,	*V.* Sermōn-es,	Prædo,	*a robber.*
Ab. Sermōn-e,	*Ab.* Sermon-ĭbus,	Titio,	*a fire-brand.*

Note. *Homo*, *nemo*, *Apollo*, and *turbo*; also, *cardo*, *ordo*, *margo*, and likewise, nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, change *o* into *i* before the terminations; as, *Homo*, *hominis*; *Cupido*, *Cupidĭnis*; *imago*, *imagĭnis*. But *Comēdo*, *unēdo*, and *harpāgo*, retain *o*; as, *Comēdo*, *comedōnis*. *Anio* and *Nerio* change *o* into *e*; as, *Anio*, *Aniēnis*; and *căro* has *carnis*, by syncope for *carŏnis*.

2. Color, *a color*, Masc.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :	
N. cŏlor,	*N.* colōr-es,	Arbor,	*a tree*
G. colōr-is,	*G.* colōr-um,	Cantor,	*a singer.*
D. colōr-i,	*D.* color-ĭbus,	Hŏnor,	*honor.*
Ac. colōr-em,	*Ac.* colōr-es,	Lăbor,	*labor.*
V. cŏlor,	*V.* colōr-es,	Lector,	*a reader.*
Ab. colōr-e.	*Ab.* color-ĭbus.	Pastor,	*a shepherd.*

3. Miles, *a soldier*, Masc.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :	
N. mīles,	*N.* milĭt-es,	Ales,	*a bird.*
G. milĭt-is,	*G.* milĭt-um,	Cŏmes,	*a companion.*
D. milĭt-i,	*D.* milit-ĭbus,	Līmes,	*a limit.*
Ac. milĭt-em,	*Ac.* milĭt-es,	Trāmes,	*a path.*
V. mīles,	*V.* milĭt-es,	Sēges, -ētis,	*a crop.*
Ab. milĭt-e.	*Ab.* milit-ĭbus.	Tĕges, -ĕtis,	*a mat.*

79.—Rule 1. Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in the genitive singular, have *ium* in the genitive plural; as,

4. Rūpes, *a rock*, Fem.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:	
N. rūp-es,	*N.* rūp-es,	Apis,	*a bee.*
G. rūp-is,	*G.* rup-ium,	Classis,	*a fleet.*
D. rūp-i,	*D.* rup-ĭbus,	Mōles,	*a mass.*
Ac. rūp-em,	*Ac.* rūp-es,	Nūbes,	*a cloud.*
V. rūp-es,	*V.* rūp-es,	Vītis,	*a vine.*
Ab. rūp-e.	*Ab.* rup-ĭbus.	Vulpes,	*a fox.*

Exc. *Strues*, a pile; *vātes*, a prophet; *cănis*, a dog; *juvĕnis*, a young man; *mugĭlis*, a mullet; *pānis*, bread; *strigĭlis*, a scraper, have *um*. *Sedes*, *mensis*, *ăpis* or *ăpes*, and *volūcris*, have *um* or *ium*.

80.—Rule 2. Nouns of one syllable in *as* and *is*, and also, in *s* and *x*, after a consonant, have *ium* in the genitive plural; as,

5. Pars, *a part*, Fem.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:	
N. pars,	*N.* part-es,	Calx, -cis,	*the heel.*
G. part-is,	*G.* part-ium,	Vas, -dis,	*a surety.*
D. part-i,	*D.* part-ĭbus,	Lis, -tis,	*a law-suit.*
Ac. part-em,	*Ac.* part-es,	Arx, -cis,	*a citadel.*
V. pars,	*V.* part-es,	Urbs, -is,	*a city.*
Ab. part-e,	*Ab.* part-ĭbus.	Pons, -tis,	*a bridge.*

81.—Rule 3. Nouns of more than one syllable in *as* and *ns*, have *um*, and sometimes *ium*, in the genitive plural; as,

6. Parens, *a parent*, Masc. or Fem.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:	
N. părens,	*N.* parent-es,	Bĭdens,	*a fork.*
G. parent-is,	*G.* parent-um,-ium,	Rŭdens,	*a cable.*
D. parent-i,	*D.* parent-ĭbus,	Cliens,	*a client.*
Ac. parent-em,	*Ac.* parent-es,	Serpens,	*a serpent.*
V. părens,	*V.* parent-es,	Sextans,	*a sixth of an as.*
Ab. parent-e.	*Ab.* parent-ĭbus.	Torrens,	*a torrent.*

82.—*Obs.* 1. Masculine and feminine nouns, which have *ium* in the genitive plural, sometimes have *is*, or *eis*, as well as *es* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural; as, *partes*, *partium*;—nominative, accusative, and vocative, *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

7. Opus, *a work*, Neut. (57–1.)

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:
N. ŏpus,	*N.* opĕr-a,	Fūnus, *a funeral.*
G. opĕr-is,	*G.* opĕr-um,	Lătus, *the side.*
D. opĕr-i,	*D.* oper-ĭbus,	Corpus, -ŏris, *the body.*
Ac. ŏpus,	*Ac.* opĕr-a,	Căput, capĭtis, *the head.*
V. ŏpus,	*V.* opĕr-a,	Fĕmur, -ŏris, *the thigh.*
Ab. opĕr-e.	*Ab.* oper-ĭbus,	Iter, itinĕris, *a journey.*

83.—Rule 4. Nouns in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative singular; *ium* in the genitive plural; and *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural; as,

8. Sedīle, *a seat*, Neut.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:
N. sedīl-e,	*N.* sĕdil-ia,	Ancīle, *a shield.*
G. sedīl-is,	*G.* sedil-ium,	Mantīle, *a towel.*
D. sedīl-i,	*D.* sedil-ĭbus,	Mărе, *the sea.*
Ac. sedīl-e,	*Ac.* sedil-ia,	Ovīle, *a sheep-fold.*
V. sedīl-e,	*V.* sedil-ia,	Rēte, *a net.*
Ab. sedīl-i.	*Ab.* sedil-ĭbus.	Cubīle, *a couch.*

9. Anĭmal, *an animal*, Neut.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:
N. anĭmal,	*N.* animal-ia,	Cubĭtal, *a cushion.*
G. animāl-is,	*G.* animal-ium,	Calcar, *a spur.*
D. animāl-i,	*D.* animal-ĭbus,	Jŭbar, *a sun-beam.*
Ac. anĭmal,	*Ac.* animal-ia,	Nectar, *nectar.*
V. anĭmal,	*V.* animal-ia,	Tŏral, *a bed-cover.*
Ab. animāl-i.	*Ab.* animal-ĭbus.	Vectīgal, *a tax.*

Exc. Proper names in *e* have *e* in the ablative; as, *Præneste*, Neut., a town in Italy; ablative, *Præneste*.

84.—ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

Acer, -ĕris, n.,	*a maple tree.*	Hŏmo, -ĭnis, c.,	*a man*
Ætas, -ātis, f.,	*age.*	Imāgo, -ĭnis, f.,	*an image*
Arbor, -ŏris, f.,	*a tree.*	Lac, -tis, n.,	*milk.*
Aries, -ĕtis, m.,	*a ram.*	Lăpis, -ĭdis, m.,	*a stone.*
Ars, -tis, f.,	*an art.*	Laus, -dis, f.,	*praise.*
Cănon, -ŏnis, m.,	*a rule.*	Lex, lēgis, f,	*a law.*
Carcer, -ĕris, m.,	*a prison.*	Monile, -is, n.,	*a necklace.*
Cardo, -ĭnis, m.,	*a hinge.*	Mons, -tis, m.,	*a mountain*
Carmen, -ĭnis, n.,	*a poem.*	Mūnus, -ĕris, n.,	*a gift.*
Cervix, -icis, f.,	*the neck.*	Nix, nĭvis, f.,	*snow.*
Cōdex, -ĭcis, m.,	*a book.*	Nox, noctis, f.,	*night.*
Consul, -ŭlis, m.,	*a consul.*	Onus, -ĕris, n.,	*a burden*
Cor, cordis, n.,	*the heart.*	Pecten, -ĭnis, m.,	*a comb.*
Crux, -ŭcis, f.,	*a cross.*	Regio, -ōnis, f.,	*a region.*
Dens, -tis, m.,	*a tooth.*	Sălar, -āris, m.,	*a trout.*
Dos, dōtis, f.,	*a dowry.*	Serpens, -tis, c.,	*a serpent.*
Formīdo, -ĭnis, f.,	*fear.*	Trabs, -ăbis, f.,	*a beam.*
Fornax, -ăcis, f.,	*a furnace.*	Turris, -is, f.,	*a tower.*
Frāter, -tris, m.,	*a brother.*	Uter, utris, m.,	*a bottle.*
Fur, fūris, c.,	*a thief.*	Virgo, -ĭnis, f.,	*a virgin.*
Gĕnus, -ĕris, n.,	*a kind.*	Voluptas, -ātis, f.,	*pleasure.*
Hæres, -ēdis, c.,	*an heir.*	Vulnus, -ĕris, n.,	*a wound.*

EXERCISES ON THE EXAMPLES.

Tell the case and number of the following words, and translate them accordingly:—Sermōnis, sermōnum; colorĭbus, colōri, colōre, colōres; milĭtum, milĭtis, milĭtem, militĭbus; rūpis, rūpe, rupium, rūpi, rupĭbus; partium, partes, parte, partis; parenti, parente, parentum, parentes, parentis; opĕra, opĕre, opĕri, operĭbus, opĕrum; sedĭlis, sedilia, sedilĭbus, sedĭli sedilium; animalia, animālis, animāli; carmĭnis, carmĭni, carminĭbus,

Translate the following words into Latin:—Of a rock, of rocks; from a soldier, with soldiers; to a seat, seats, of seats, the works, of a soldier; to the color, of a rock, a seat, for a parent, the speech, of a parent, to a soldier, the color, of an animal, from rocks, to rocks, of a region, for a serpent, the night, &c., *ad libitum.*

§ 13. GENDER OF NOUNS IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. MASCULINE NOUNS.

85.—RULE 1. Nouns in *n*, *o*, *er*, *or*, *es* increasing (76, *Obs.*,) and *os*, are generally masculine.

86.—The following are exceptions; viz:

1. *Exceptions in* N.

FEM. *Sindon, ădor; halcyon,* and *icon,* are feminine.
NEUT. *Glūten, unguen, inguen, pollen,* and all nouns in *men;* as *carmen, nōmen,* etc., are neuter.

2. *Exceptions in* O.

FEM. 1. Nouns in *io,* denoting things incorporeal, are feminine.
2. Nouns in *do* and *go,* of more than two syllables, with *grando, virgo,* and sometimes *margo,* are feminine.
But *harpăgo, comēdo, unēdo* and *Cupīdo,* Cupid, are masculine.
NOTE. *Cupīdo,* desire, in prose, is always feminine; in poetry, often masculine.
3. *Căro,* flesh, is feminine, and Greek nouns in *o;* as, *echo, Argo.*

3. *Exceptions in* ER.

FEM. *Tūber,* the tuber-tree, and sometimes *linter,* a boat, are feminine.
NEUT. *Acer, cadāver, cicer, iter, lāser, lāver, papāver, pĭper, sĭler, spinther, sūber, tūber,* a swelling, *ūber, ver, verber, zingĭber,* and sometimes *sĭser,* are neuter.

4. *Exceptions in* OR.

FEM. *Arbor,* a tree, is feminine. (45–2.)
NEUT. *Ador, æquor, marmor,* and *cor,* the heart, are neuter.

5. *Exceptions in* ES, *increasing* (76, *Obs*).

FEM. *Compes, merces, merges, quies, requies, inquies, sēges, tēges, tūdes,* and sometimes *ăles,* a bird, are feminine.
NEUT. *Æs,* brass, is neuter.

6. *Exceptions in* OS.

FEM. *Arbos,* (45–2) *cos, dos, eos,* are feminine.
NEUT. *Os,* the mouth; *os,* a bone; also, the Greek *chaos, ethos, ĕpos,* and *melos,* are neuter.

2. FEMININE NOUNS.

87.—Rule 2. Nouns in *as*, *es* not increasing, *is*, *ys*, and *aus*;—also in *s* after a consonant, and *x*, are, for the most part, feminine.

88.—The following are exceptions; viz:

1. *Exceptions in* AS.

Masc. *As*, a piece of money, and Greek nouns in *as*, *-antis*, are masculine.
Neut. *Vas*, a vessel, and Greek nouns in *as*, *-ădis*, are neuter.

2. *Exceptions in* ES *not increasing.*

Masc. *Acinăces*, *cŏles*, and sometimes *palumbes*, and *vepres*.
Neut. *Cacoēthes*, *hippomănes*, *nepenthes*, and *panăces*, Greek.

3. *Exceptions in* IS.

Masc. 1. Latin nouns in *nis* are masculine. But *amnis*, *cĭnis*, *clūnis*, *finis*, and *fūnis*, are sometimes feminine. *Fines*, boundaries, in the plural, is always masculine.

2. The following nouns are masculine, viz:

Axis,	Cossis,	Lăpis,	Semissis,
Aquālis,	Cucŭmis,	Mensis,	Sentis,
Callis,	Decussis,	Mugĭlis,	Sodālis,
Cassis,	Ensis,	Orbis,	Torris,
Caulis, *or* Cōlis,	Fascis, Follis,	Piscis, Pollis,	Unguis, Vectis,
Centussis,	Fustis,	Postis,	Vermis,
Collis,	Glis,	Sanguis,	Vŏmis.

Masc. *or* Fem. *Anguis*, *canālis*, *cenchris*, *corbis*, *pulvis*, *scrōbis*, *tigris*, *torquis*, are masculine or feminine.

4. *Exceptions in* YS.

Masc. Names of rivers and mountains, as *Halys*, *Othrys*, &c., are commonly masculine. (45–2.)

5. *Exceptions in* S *after a consonant.*

Masc. 1. *Dens*, *fons*, *mons*, and *pons*; also, *chălybs*, *ellops*, *ĕpops*, *gryps*, *hydrops*, *mĕrops*, and *seps*, are masculine.

2. Nouns in *ns*, originally participles, and compounds of *dens*, as *occĭdens*, *oriens*, *vĭdens*, a two-pronged hoe; also *nextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, &c., parts of *as*, are masculine; but *bĭdens*, a sheep, is feminine.

Masc. *or* Fem. *Adeps*, *forceps*, *rŭdens*, *scrobs*, *serpens*, *stirps*.

Note. *Animans*, a living creature, is of all genders.

6. *Exceptions in* X.

MASC. 1. AX. *Cĕrax, cordax, drŏpax, stўrax, thŏrax*, are masculine.
2. EX. All nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *lex, nex, supellex*, feminine; *cortex, imbrex, ŏbex, rŭmex, silex*, sometimes feminine; *grex* and *pūmex*, rarely feminine; and *atriplex*, neuter.
3. IX. *Cŏlix, fornix, phœnix, spādix*, are masculine, and sometimes *perdix* and *vŭtrix*; otherwise feminine.
4. OX. *Box, ĭsox*, and *volvox*, are masculine.
5. UX. *Trădux* is masculine.
6. YX. *Bombyx*, a silk worm; *călyx, coccyx, ŏryx*, are masculine; but *ŏnyx*, and *sandyx*, are masculine or feminine.
7. NX. *Quincunx, septunx, dēcunx, deunx*, parts of *as*, are masculine; *lynx* is masculine or feminine.

Calx, lime, is feminine; *calx*, the heel, masculine or feminine.
Bombyx, silk, is feminine.

NEUT. *Atriplex*, gold-herb, is neuter.

3. NEUTER NOUNS.

89.—RULE 3. Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, *c*, and *t*, are always neuter; those in *l*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are almost always neuter.

90. The following are exceptions; viz:

1. *Exceptions in* L.

MASC. *Mūgil* and *sol* are masculine; *sal*, in the singular, is commonly masculine or feminine, sometimes neuter; in the plural, always masculine.

2. *Exceptions in* AR.

MASC. *Sŏlar* is masculine. *Par*, in the sense of "mate," is masculine or feminine; in the sense of "a pair," it is neuter.

3. *Exceptions in* UR.

MASC. *Astur, furfur, turtur*, and *vultur*, are masculine.

4. *Exceptions in* US.

MASC. *Lĕpus, mus, rhus*, meaning a seed, or spice, and Greek nouns in *pus* (except *lagōpus*, feminine), are masculine.

FEM. Nouns in *us*, having *ūtis*, or *ūdis* in the genitive; also *pĕcus, -ūdis tellus, lagōpus*, and *rhus*, meaning a tree, are feminine. *Grus*, is masculine or feminine.

90.—§ 15. EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

1. The following nouns in *is* have *im* in the accusative.

Amussis, f., *a measure, rule.*	Rāvis, f., *a hoarseness.*
Būris, f., *the beam of a plough.*	Sināpis, f., *mustard.*
Cannăbis, f., *hemp.*	Sītis, f., *thirst.*
Cucūmis, m., *a cucumber.*	Tussis, f., *a cough.*
Gummis, f., *gum.*	Vis, f., *strength.*
Mephītis, f., *a strong smell.*	

2. Proper names in *is* not increasing in the genitive, have *im* in the accusative; viz:

Names of cities and other places; as, *Bilbĭlis*, f., a city of Spain; *Syrtis*, f., a quicksand on the coast of Africa.

Names of rivers; as, *Tibĕris*, m., the Tiber; *Bœtis*, m., the Guadalquivir.

Names of gods; as, *Anūbis*, m.; *Osĭris*, m., Egyptian deities.

Note. These nouns have sometimes *in* in the accusative.

3. The following nouns in *is* have *em* or *im* in the accusative; viz:

Aquālis, f., *a water pot.*	Puppis, f., *the stern of a ship.*
Clāvis, f., *a key.*	Restis, f., *a rope.*
Cūtis, f., *the skin.*	Secūris, f., *an axe.*
Febris, f., *a fever.*	Sementis, f., *a sowing.*
Lens, f., *lentiles.*	Strigĭlis, f., *a curry-comb.*
Nāvis, f., *a ship.*	Turris, f., *a tower.*
Pelvis, f., *a bason.*	

Note 1. *Puppis*, *restis*, *secūris*, and *turris*, have generally *im*; the others commonly *em*. The oldest Latin writers form the accusative of some other nouns in *im*; as, *āvis*, *auris*.

4. Nouns which have been adopted from the Greek, sometimes retain *a* in the accusative; as, *hĕros*, m., a hero, *heroa*; *Tros*, m., a Trojan, *Troa*. (See No. 13 below.)

Note 2. This form of the accusative singular is seldom used by the best prose writers, and is chiefly confined to proper names, except in *aër*, m., the air; *æther*, m., the sky; *delphin*, m., a dolphin; *Pan*, m., the god of the shepherds, which commonly have *aëra*, *æthĕra*, *delphīna*, and *Pāna*.

Obs. 1. Many Greek nouns in *es* have *en*, as well as *em*, in the accusative; as, *Euphrāten*, *Oresten*, *Pylāden*.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

5. Nouns in *is*, which have *im* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *sĭtis*, *sĭtim*, *sĭti*.

But *cannăbis*, *Bætis*, *sināpis*, and *Tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

6. Nouns in *is*, which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the Ablative; as, *clāvis*, *clāve* or *clāvi*.

Note 3. But *cūtis*, and *restis*, have *e* only; *securis*, *sementis*, and *strigilis*, seldom have *e*.

7. The following nouns, which have *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; viz:

Amnis, m., *a river.*	Occĭput, n., *the hind-head.*
Anguis, m. and f., *a snake.*	Orbis, m., *a circle.*
Avis, f., *a bird.*	Pars, f., *a part.*
Cīvis, c., *a citizen.*	Postis, m., *a door post.*
Classis, f., *a fleet.*	Pŭgil, c., *a pugilist.*
Fīnis, m. and f., *an end.*	Rus, n., *the country.*
Fustis, m., a *staff.*	Sors, f., *a lot.*
Ignis, m., *a fire.*	Supellex, f., *furniture.*
Imber, m., *a shower.*	Unguis, m., *a nail.*
Mūgil, m., *a mullet.*	Vectis, m., *a lever.*

Note 4. *Fīnis*, *mūgil*, *occĭput*, *pŭgil*, *rus*, *supellex*, and *vectis*, have *e* or *i* indifferently; the others much more frequently have *e*.

Obs. 2. Names of towns, when they denote the place in or at which any thing is done, take *e* or *i*; as, *Carthagĭne*, or *Carthagĭni*.

Obs. 3. *Canālis*, m. or f., a water pipe, has *canāli* only. Likewise names of months in *is* or *er*; as, *Aprīlis*, *September*, *Aprīli*, *Septembri*; and those nouns in *is* which were originally adjectives; as, *ædīlis*, *affīnis*, *bipennis*, *familiāris*, *natālis*, *rivālis*, *sodālis*, *volucris*, &c. This class of nouns also admits *e* in the ablative: *Rŭdis*, f., a rod, and *juvĕnis*, c., a youth, have *e* only.

8. The following neuter nouns in *al* and *ar* have *e* in the ablative; viz:

Baccar, *lady's glove.*	Jūbar, *a sunbeam.*	Par, *a pair.*
Far, *corn.*	Nectar, *nectar.*	Sal, *salt.*

Obs. 4. *Măre*, the sea, has the ablative in *e* or *i*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

[See Rules, 79—83.]

9. The following nouns have *ium* in the genitive plural :

Cĭro, f., *flesh.*	Lar, m., *a household god.*	Par, n., *a pair.*
Cŏhors, f., *a cohort.*	Linter, m. or f., *a boat.*	Quĭris, m., *a Roman.*
Cor, n., *the heart.*	Mas, m., *a male.*	Samnis, m., *a Samnite.*
Cos, f., *a whetstone.*	Nix, f., *snow.*	Strix, f., *a screech-owl.*
Dos, f., *a dowry.*	Nox, f., *night.*	Uter, m., *a bottle.*
Fauce, f., *the jaws.*	Os, n., *a bone.*	Venter, m., *the belly.*

Obs. 5. The compounds of *uncia* and *as* have likewise *ium;* as, *Septunx*, m., seven ounces, *septuncium; sextans*, m., two ounces, *sextantium.*

Obs. 6. *Apis*, f., a bee, has *ăpum* and *apium; fraus*, fraud; and *mus*, a mouse, generally, and *fornax, lar, pālus*, and *rādix*, sometimes, have *ium; ŏpis*, f., power, has *ŏpum* only. *Grypa*, m., a griffon; *lynx*, m. or f., a lynx; and *Sphinx*, f., the Sphinx, have *um. Bōs*, c., gen. *bŏvis*, an ox, has *boum.*

DATIVE PLURAL.

10. *Bos*, c., an ox or a cow, has *bōbus* or *būbus* in the dative plural; and *sus*, c., a sow, has *sŭibus*, or *sūbus.* Nouns in *ma* have *tis* as well as *tĭbus;* as, *poĕma*, n., a poem, *poemătibus* or *poemătis.* The Greek termination *si* or *sin* is very uncommon in prose, and is admissible only in words purely Greek. (See No. 13, below.)

ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

11. The form of the accusative plural in *as* is admissible in all words which have that termination in Greek, but is rarely used in prose. Livy however, frequently uses *Macedŏnăs;* and *Allobrŏgas* is found in Cæsar (For the accusative plural in *is*, or *eis*, see 82.)

12. Some nouns of the third declension are somewhat peculiar in different cases, as follows :

Jupĭter.		Vis, *force, power*, Fem.	
Singular.		Singular.	Plural.
N. Jupĭter,		*N.* vis,	*N.* vīr-es,
G. Jŏv-is,		*G.* vis,	*G.* vir-ium,
D. Jŏv-i,		*D.* —,	*D.* vir-ĭbus,
Ac. Jŏv-em,		*Ac.* vim,	*Ac.* vīr-es,
V. Jupĭter,		*V.* vis,	*V.* vīr-es,
Ab. Jŏv-e.		*Ab.* vi.	*Ab.* vir-ĭbus.

Bos, *an ox*, or *cow*, Masc. or Fem.

Singular.	Plural.
N. bos,	*N.* bŏv-es,
G. bŏv-is,	*G.* boum,
D. bŏv-i,	*D.* bōbus, *or* būbus,*
Ac. bŏv-em,	*Ac.* bŏv-es,
V. bos,	*V.* bŏv-es,
Ab. bŏv-e,	*Ab.* bōbus, *or* būbus.

* Contracted for *bovibus*.

13. GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
S.	Lampas	-ădis, *or* -ădos,	-ădi,	-ădem, *or* -āda,	-as,	-āde.
Pl.	Lamp-ădes,	-ădum,	-ădibus,	-ădes, *or* -ādas,	-ădes,	-ădĭbus.
S.	Trō-as,	-ădis, *or* -ădos,	-ădi,	-ădem, *or* -āda,	-as,	-āde.
Pl.	Tro-ădes,	-ădum,	-ădĭbus, *or* -ăsi, *or* -ăsin,	-ădes, *or* -ādas,	-ădes,	-ădĭbus, *or* -ăsi, *or* -ăsin.
S.	Heros,	-oĭs,	-oĭ,	-oĕm, *or* -oa,	-os,	-oĕ.
S.	Phyll-is,	-idis, *or* -idos,	-idi,	-idem, *or* -ida,	-i, *or* -is,	-ide.
S.	Păr-is.	-idis, *or* -idos,	-idi,	-idem, -im, *or* -in,	-i,	-ide.
S.	Chlăm-ys,	-ydis, *or* -ydos,	-ydi,	-ydem, *or* -ida,	-ys,	-yde.
S.	Căp-ys,	-yis, or -yos,	-yi,	-ym, *or* -yn,	-y,	-ye.
S.	Hæres-is,	-is, -ios, *or* -eos,	-i,	-im, *or* -in,	-i,	-i.
S.	Orph-ans,	-eos, *or* -eĭ, *or* -ei,	-eĭ, *or* -ei,	-ea,	-eu,	-eo.
S.	Did-o,	-us, *or* -ōnis,	-o, *or* -ōni,	-o, *or* -ōnem,	-o,	-o, *or* -ōne.

---

§ 16. FOURTH DECLENSION.

91.—The Fourth Declension has two terminations of the nominative singular, *us* and *u*. Those in *u* are neuter.

TERMINATIONS.

Masculine and Feminine.		*Neuter.*	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. -us,	-us,	*N.* -u,	-ua,
G. -ûs,	-uum,	*G.* -ûs,	-uum,
D. -ui,	-ĭbus,	*D.* -u (ui),	-ĭbus,
Ac. -um,	-us,	*Ac.* -u,	-ua,
V. -us,	-us,	*V.* -u,	-ua,
Ab. -u,	-ĭbus.	*Ab.* -u,	-ĭbus.

FRUCTUS, *fruit*, Masc.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :	
N. fruct-us,	*N.* fruct-us,	Cantus,	*a song.*
G. fruct-ûs,	*G.* fruct-uum,	Cāsus	*a fall.*
D. fruct-ui,	*D.* fruct-ĭbus,	Currus,	*a chariot.*
Ac. fruct-um,	*Ac.* fruct-us,	Fluctus,	*a wave.*
V. fruct-us,	*V.* fruct-us,	Grădus,	*a step.*
Ab. fruct-u.	*Ab.* fruct-ĭbus.	Senātus,	*the senate.*

CORNU, *a horn*, Neut.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :	
N. corn-u,	*N.* corn-ua,		
G. corn-ûs (93–4),	*G.* corn-uum,	Gĕlu,	*ice.*
D. corn-u,	*D.* corn-ĭbus,	Gĕnu,	*the knee.*
Ac. corn-u,	*Ac.* corn-ua,	Pĕcu,	*cattle.*
V. corn-u,	*V.* corn-ua,	Vĕru,	*a spit.*
Ab. corn-u.	*Ab.* cornĭbus.		

Note. The only neuters in this declension are *cornu*, *gĕlu*, *gĕnu*, *vĕru*, and *pĕcu*, which has the dative *pecui : tonĭtrus*, *ûs*, m., and *tonĭtruum*, *i*, n., thunder, are in common use; *tonĭtru* is hardly ever found in classic writers, and never in the nominative or accusative singular.

ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

Flātus, *a blast.*	Mōtus, *a motion.*	Rītus, *a ceremony.*
Ictus, *a stroke.*	Nūtus, *a nod.*	Sĭnus, *a bosom.*
Mănus, f., *the hand.*	Passus, *a pace.*	Sĭtus, *a situation.*

92.—EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine; viz :

Acus, *a needle.*	Ficus, *a fig.*	Portĭcus, *a gallery.*
Anus, *an old woman.*	Mănus, *the hand.*	Spĕcus,* *a den.*
Dŏmus, *a house.*	Pĕnus,* *a storehouse.*	Trĭbus, *a tribe.*

* Sometimes masculine.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

Exc. 2. *The Genitive and Dative singular* :—In some writers, the genitive singular is occasionally found in *uis*; as, *ejus anuis causâ*, for *ănûs*. TERENCE : sometimes also in *i*; as, *senāti* and *tumulti*. SALL. In others, the dative is sometimes found in *u*; as, *resistĕre impĕtû*, for *impetui*; *Esse ūsû sibi*, for *usui*. CIC.

Exc. 3. *The Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural*:—The genitive plural is sometimes contracted; as, *currûm*, for *currŭum*. The following nouns have *ŭbus* instead of *ĭbus* in the dative and ablative plural; viz:

Acus, *a needle.*	Lăcus, *a lake.*	Spĕcus, *a den.*
Arcus, *a bow.*	Partus, *a birth.*	Tribus, *a tribe.*
Artus, *a joint.*	Portus,* *a harbour.*	Vĕru,* *a spit.*
Gĕnu,* *the knee.*		

* These words also have *-ĭbus* in the dative plural.

93.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. Nouns of this declension seem to have belonged anciently to the third, and were declined like *grus, gruis;* thus, *fructus, fructu-is, fructu-i*, &c. So that all the cases, except the Dative singular and the genitive plural, may be regarded as contracted forms of that declension.

2. Several nouns of this declension are, in whole or in part, of the second also; such as, *Ficus, laurus, pĕnus, pinus, dŏmus, senātus, tumultus*, and several others. *Capricornus*, m., and the compounds of *mănus*, as *unimănus, centimănus*, &c., are always of the second.

3. Jesus, the name of the Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other oblique cases. This word does not properly belong to this declension, but is after the Greek: Ἰησοῦς, οῦ, οῦ, οῦν, οῦ.

4. Nouns in *u* were formerly considered indeclinable in the singular; but the recent investigations of Freund and others, have shown this opinion to be incorrect, at least with regard to the genitive; and that *u*, the only termination of the dative now found, is probably a contraction for *ui*—just as *ūsu* is contracted for *usui*. (Exc. 2.)

5. Dŏmus, *a house*, Fem., is thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.
N. dŏm-us,	*N.* dŏm-us,
G. dŏm-ûs, *or* -i,	*G.* dom-ōrum, *or* -uum,
D. dŏm-ui, *or* -o,	*D.* dom-ĭbus,
Ac. dŏm-um,	*Ac.* dŏm-us, *or* -os,
V. dŏm-us,	*V.* dŏm-us,
Ab. dŏm-o.	*Ab.* dom-ĭbus.

Note.—Dŏmus in the genitive, signifies *of a house: Dŏmi* is used only to signify *at home*, or *of home.*

EXERCISES ON THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

1. *Tell the gender, number, and case, of the following words, from the paradigm and additional examples, pp.* 34 *and* 35, *and translate:*

Fructus, fructûs, fructuum, flatĭbus, flātu, manuum, manĭbus, nūtu, passuum, passĭbus, passûs, cornua, tonĭtrĭbus, verŭbus, cāsu, currum, currui, fluctu, fluctĭbus, cornĭbus, &c.

2. *Translate the following words into Latin, and tell the gender, number, and case, in which the words are put; viz:*

Of fruit, to fruit, with the hand, for the hand, of a horn, to a horn, with a horn, from horns, horns, the horns, of the chariot, for a chariot, of chariots, from the waves, for the waves, from his hands, with a nod, &c.

---

§ 17. FIFTH DECLENSION.

94.—The Fifth Declension has but one termination of the nominative singular, namely, *es;* as, *res*, a thing: *dies*, a day.

All nouns of this declension are feminine, except *dies*, a day, which is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, which is masculine in the singular, and wants the plural.

1. DIES, *a day.*

		TERMINATIONS.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. di-es,	*N.* di-es,	–es,	–es,
G. di-ēi,	*G.* di-ērum,	–ēi, –ĕi,	–ērum,
D. di-ēi,	*D.* di-ēbus,	–ēi, –ĕi,	–ēbus,
Ac. di-em,	*Ac.* di-es,	–em,	–es,
V. di-es,	*V.* di-es,	–es,	–es,
Ab. di-ē.	*Ab.* di-ēbus.	–ē.	–ēbus,

Obs. 1. *Dies*, *res*, and *species*, are the only nouns of the fifth declension which have the plural complete; *acies*, *effigies*, *facies*, *series*, and *spes*, in the plural, have only the nominative, accusative, and vocative; the other nouns of this declension have no plural.

2. Facies, *the face*, Fem.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:
N. faci-es,	*N.* faci-es,	
G. faci-ēī,	*G.* ——	Acies, *an army.*
D. faci-ēī,	*D.* ——	Effigies, *an image.*
Ac. faci-em,	*Ac.* faci-es,	Series, *a series.*
V. faci-es,	*V.* faci-es.	Spes, -ēī, *hope.*
Ab. faci-ē.	*Ab.* ——	

Exc. The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative singular, in *e;* as, *fīde* for *fidēi*, Ov.: sometimes in *i;* as, *pernicii* for *pernicīēi*, Nep.; and *plēbi* for *plebēi*, Liv. *Requies* is both of the third and the fifth declension.

EXERCISES ON THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

1. *Tell the gender, number, and case of the following nouns, and translate them* :—Diēi, spēi, aciem, acie, faciēi, facies, diēbus, diērum, dies, faciem, effigiem, series, rērum, diēbus, diem, &c., *ad libitum.*

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, and tell the gender*, &c. :—The image, of the face, the things, of the army, the hope, of the army, a series, of days, to a day, from the days, with the army, to an image, &c.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES ON ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

Tell the gender, declension, case, and number, of the following nouns, in the order here mentioned, and give the translation; thus, Pennâ, *a noun, feminine, of the first declension, in the ablative singular,* "*with a pen*" *:

Via, puĕri, genĕro, ventis, puerōrum, sermo, sedīle, sedīli, sedilium, sedilībus, fructuum, fructūs, sellæ, tūbam, regno,

* The following are the words used in these exercises; the declension is indicated by the genitive, according to No. 55.

Āla, -æ, *a wing.*
Bellum, -i, *war.*
Căput, -ĭtis, *the head.*
Cŏlor, -is, *color.*
Dies, -ēī, *a day.*
Dominus, -i, *a lord.*
Facies, -ēī, *the face.*
Fructus, -ūs, *fruit.*
Gĕner, -i, *a son-in-law.*
Hŏnor, -is, *honor.*
Iter, itinĕris, *a way.*
Mănus, -ūs, *a hand.*
Mensa, -æ, *a table.*
Miles, -ĭtis, *a soldier.*
Părens, -tis, *a parent.*
Pars, -tis, *a part.*
Puer, -i, *a boy.*
Regnum, -i, *a kingdom.*
Res, -rēi, *a thing.*
Rūpes, -is, *a rock.*
Sedīle, -is, *a seat.*
Sella, -æ, *a seat.*
Sermo, -ōnis, *a speech.*
Templum, -i, *a temple.*
Tempus, -ŏris, *time.*
Tūba, -æ, *a trumpet.*
Urbs, -is, *a city.*
Ventus, -i, *the wind.*
Via, -æ, *a way.*
Vulpes, -is, *a fox.*

templi, dies, rērum, capīte, capītum, itinerĭbus, partis, parentĭbus, rūpe, urbis, vulpem, vulpĭbus, parente, sedilia, die, colōrem, milĭtis, militĭbus, sermōnes, honōre, mănus, mănŭs, manibus, faciem, āla, tūbam, mensārum, bellum, dominōrum, templum, puerōrum, bella, bello, &c.

Translate the following into Latin, and state the gender, declension, case, and number, always following the same order; thus, "*Of boys,*" puerōrum, *a noun, masculine, of the first declension, in the genitive plural:*

From the way, to a speech, with a part, of a seat, of seats, to the wind, a kingdom, to a boy, of boys, with lords, foxes, of tables, to parents, with seats, of soldiers, from the head, heads, to a part, with a trumpet, in a time, of war, the time, of color, in a journey, to a seat, of a rock, to sons-in-law, with fruit, of the face, with a seat, to tables, of rocks, &c.

---

§ 18. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

95. Irregular Nouns are divided into *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

96.—Nouns are variable either in Gender, or Declension, or in both. Nouns varying in gender are called, *Heterogeneous*. Those which vary in declension are called, *Heteroclites*.

Heterogeneous Nouns.

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as,

Avernus, *a hill in Campania.*	Pangæus, *a promontory in Thrace.*
Dindўmus, *a hill in Phrygia.*	Tænărus, *a promontory in Laconia.*
Ismărus, *a hill in Thrace.*	Tartărus, *hell.*
Mænălus, *a hill in Arcadia.*	Taygĕtus, *a hill in Laconia.*

2. Masculine in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural; as, *jŏcus*, a jest, plural *jŏci* and *jŏca; lŏcus*, a place, plural *lŏci* and *lŏca*.

3. Feminine in the singular, neuter in the plural; as, *carbăsus*, a sail, plural *carbăsa; Pergămus*, the citadel of Troy, plural *Pergăma*.

4. Neuter in the singular, masculine in the plural; as, *Argos*, Argos, a city in Greece, plural *Argi; Elysium*, the Elysian fields, plural *Elysii; cælum*, heaven, plural *cœli*.

Note 1.—*Argos*, in the Singular, is used only in the Nom. and Acc.

5. Neuter in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural; as, *frēnum*, a bridle, plural *frēni* and *frēna; rastrum*, a rake, plural *rastri* and *rastra*.

6. Neuter in the singular, feminine in the plural; as, *balneum*, a bath, plural *balneæ*, seldom *balnea; epŭlum*, a banquet, plural *epŭlæ; delicium*, a delight, plural *deliciæ*.

Heteroclites.

7. *Vas, vāsis*, neuter, a vessel, of the third declension, plural *vāsa, vasōrum*, of the second. *Jugĕrum, jugĕri*, neuter, an acre, of the second declension, plural *jugĕra, jugĕrum*, of the third. *Jugĕris* and *jugĕre* from *jŭgus*, are also found in the singular. (See Num. 11 below.)

8. Some Greek proper nouns are declined both by the second declension and the third, as follows:

Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*	
Orpheus,	-ĕi,	-eo,	-eum, *or* -eon,	——	-eo;	2d Decl.
	-eos,	-ei,	-ea,	-eu,	——	3d Decl.
Œdĭpus,	-i,	-o,	-um,	——	-o;	2d Decl.
	-ŏdis,	-ŏdi,	-ŏdem,	-u,	-ŏde;	3d Decl.
Achilleus,	-ĕi,	-eo,	——	-eu,	-eo;	2d Decl.
Achilles,	-lis, *or* -lĕos,	-li,	-lem, *or* -len,	-les, *or* -le,	-le;	3d Decl.

DOUBLE NOUNS.

9. To this class may be referred a few double nouns, the parts of which are of different declensions. When the two nominatives combine, both parts are declined like a substantive and adjective; thus,

RESPUBLĬCA, *a commonwealth*, Fem.

Singular.	Plural.
N. respublĭca,	*N.* respublĭcæ,
G. reĭpublĭcæ,	*G.* rerumpublicārum,
D. reĭpublĭcæ,	*D.* rebuspublĭcis,
Ac. rempublĭcam,	*Ac.* respublĭcas,
V. respublĭca,	*V.* respublĭcæ,
Ab. republĭcâ.	*Ab.* rebuspublĭcis.

JUSJURANDUM, *an oath*, Neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. jusjurandum,	*N.* jurajuranda,
G. jurisjurandi,	*G.* ———
D. jurijurando,	*D.* ———
Ac. jusjurandum,	*Ac.* jurajuranda,
V. jusjurandum,	*V.* jurajuranda,
Ab. jurejurando,	*Ab.* ———

When the one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the part in the nominative only is declined; as,

MATERFAMILIAS, *a mistress of a family*, Fem.

Singular.
N. materfamilias,
G. matrisfamilias,
D. matrifamilias,
Ac. matremfamilias,
V. materfamilias,
Ab. matrefamilias.

Note 2.—Here, *familiæ* is an old form of the genitive, and is governed by *māter*. So, *Pater-familias, filius-familias, filia-familias*. Pl. *matres-familiārum*; &c. In this way, *familiæ* is used as well as *familias*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective either in *Case* or in *Number*.

Obs. 1. *Indeclinable nouns*, i. e., nouns which have the same form in all cases, though commonly ranked under this class, do not properly belong to it, because none of the cases are wanting. They are such as *pondo*, n., a pound or pounds; *sēmis*, n., the half; *mille*, a thousand; *cēpe*, an onion; *ŏpus*, need or needful, used both as a substantive and an adjective. To these may be added any word used as a noun; as, *velle*, in the phrase, *suum velle* (for *sua voluntas*), his own inclination; —proper names adopted from a foreign language; as, *Elizăbet, Jĕrusălem*, &c.

I. *Nouns defective in particular cases.*

Note.—A noun used in one case only, is called a *monoptote;* in two cases, a *diptote;* in three, a *triptote;* in four, a *tetraptote;* in five, a *pentaptote.* An indeclinable word is called an *aptote.*

10. The following nouns are used only in one case:

Nominative. Inquies, f., *want of rest.*

Ablative.

Admonĭtu, m., *an admonition.*	Ingratiis, f., *in spite of.*
Ambāge, f., *a winding.*	Injussu, m., *without order.*
Casse, m., *a net.*	Interdiu, *by day.*
Diu, *by day.*	Nātu, m., *by birth.*
Ergŏ, *on account of.*	Noctu, f., *by night.*
Fauce, f., *the jaws.*	Promptu, m., *in readiness.*

Obs. 2. Many verbal nouns of the fourth declension are used only in the ablative singular; as, *accĭtu*, *promptu*, &c. *Dĭcis*, f., and *nauci*, n., are used only in the genitive singular; as *dĭcis gratia*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value. *Inficias*, f., and *incĭta*, f., or *incĭtas*, have only the accusative plural; as, *inficias ire*, to deny; *ad incĭtas reductus*, reduced to extremities. *Ambāges*, *casses* and *fauces*, are regularly declined in the plural.

11. The following nouns are used only in two cases:

Nominative and *Accusative.*

Astu, n., *the city of Athens.*	Instar, n., *likeness, bigness.*
Inferiæ, -as, f., *sacrifices to the dead.*	Suppetiæ, -as, f., *help.*

Nominative and *Ablative.*

Astus, -u, m., *cunning.*	Vesper, -e, *or* -i, m., *the evening.*

Genitive and *Ablative.*

Compĕdis, -e, f., *a fetter.*	Spontis, -e, f., *of one's own accord.*
Impĕtis, -e, m., *force.*	Verbĕris, -e, n., *a stripe.*
Jugĕris, -e, n., *an acre.*	Repetundārum, -is, f., *extortion.*

Obs. 3. *Compĕdes*, *jugĕra* and *verbĕra* are regularly declined in the plural. *Astus* is found in the nominative and accusative plural.

12. The following nouns are used only in three cases:

Nominative, *Accusative* and *Vocative.*

Cacoëthes, n., *a bad custom.*	Nĕfas, n., *impiety.*
(Also other Greek nouns in -es.)	Nīhil, *and* Nil, n., *nothing.*
Cēte, n., *whales.*	Tempe, n., *the vale of Tempe.*
Dĭca, -am, f., *a process;* pl. -as.	

Nominative, *Accusative* and *Ablative.*

Epos, n., *a heroic poem.*	Mĕlos, n., *a song;* pl. -e.
Fas, n., *divine law.*	Māne, -e, -e, n., *the morning.*
Grātes, f., *thanks.*	Tābes, f., *consumption.*
Lues, f., *a plague.*	Vepres, *or* -is, m., *a brier.*

Nom., Gen. and *Abl.* Tābum, n., *putrid gore.*
Nom., Gen. and *Acc.* Munia, -ōrum, n., *offices.*

Opis, f., genitive, help, (from *ops,*) has *ŏpem* in the accusative, and *ŏpe* in the ablative singular, with the plural complete, *ŏpes, ŏpum,* &c., wealth; and *prĕci*, f., dative, a prayer, (from *prex,*) has *prĕcem* and *prĕce*, with the plural entire, *prĕces, prĕcum,* &c. *Femĭnis*, n., genitive, the thigh, (from *fēmen,*) has *femĭni* and *femĭne*, in the dative and ablative singular, and *femĭna* in the nominative, accusative and vocative plural.

Obs. 4. *Vēpres* has the plural entire; and *tābes* and *grātibus*, the nominative and the ablative plural of *tābes* and *grātes*, are also found.

The following nouns want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural:

Far, n., *corn.*	Mel, n., *honey.*	Rus, n., *the country.*
Hiems, f., *winter.*	Mĕtus, m., *fear.*	Thus, n., *frankincense.*

(For nouns of the Fifth Declension, see 94.)

13. The following nouns want the nominative and vocative, and are therefore used only in four cases:

Ditiōnis, f., *power.*	Sordis, f., *filth.*
Pecŭdis, f., *a beast.*	Vĭcis, f., *a change.*

To these may be added *daps*, f., a dish; *frux*, f., corn; and *nex*, f., slaughter, which are seldom used in the nominative. The plural of *frux* is entire; *daps* wants the genitive; and *nex* seems to have the nominative, accusative, and vocative only.

Chaos, n., a confused mass, wants the genitive and dative singular, and is not used in the plural.

Obs. 5. *Pecŭdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire; *vĭcis* is defective in the genitive; *ditiōnis* has no plural.

14. Some nouns are defective in one case.

The following want the genitive plural:

Fæx, f., *dregs.*	Prōles, f., *offspring.*
Fax, f., *a torch.*	Ros, m., *dew.*
Lābes, f., *a stain.*	Sobōles, f., *offspring.*
Lux, f., *light.*	Sol, m., *the sun.*
Os, n., *the mouth.*	

Satias, f., a glut of any thing, and *sălum*, n., the sea, want the genitive singular and the plural entirely. *Situs*, m., a situation, mustiness, wants

the genitive, and perhaps the dative singular, and probably the genitive, dative, and ablative plural. *Nēmo*, c., nobody, wants the vocative singular, and has no plural.

II. *Nouns defective in number.*

15. Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, cannot be used in the plural. Such are the names of virtues and vices; of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, abstract nouns, &c.; as, *justĭtia*, justice; *luxus*, luxury; *musĭca*, music; *apium*, parsley; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trĭtĭcum*, wheat; *magnitūdo*, greatness; *senĕctus*, old age; *macies*, leanness, &c. But some of the nouns included in these classes are occasionally found in the plural.

16. The following masculine nouns, for the most part, want the plural:

Aër, ăĕris, *the air.*
Æther, -ĕris, *the sky.*
Fīmus, -i, *dung.*
Hesperus, -i, *the evening star.*
Līmus, -i, *mud.*
Meridies, -iēi, *mid-day.*
Mundus, -i, *a woman's ornaments.*
Muscus, -i, *moss.*
Pĕnus, -i, *or* -ūs, *all manner of provisions.*
Pontus, -i, *the sea.*
Pulvis, -ĕris, *dust.*
Sanguis, -ĭnis, *blood.*
Sŏpor, -ōris, *sleep.*
Veternus, -i, *a lethargy.*

Note 3.—*Aër*, *pulvis*, and *sŏpor* are found in the plural.

17. The following feminine nouns, for the most part, want the plural:

Argilla, -æ, *potter's earth.*
Fāmes, -is, *hunger.*
Hūmus, -i, *the ground.*
Indŏles, -is, *a disposition.*
Plebs, -is, *the common people.*
Pūbes, -is, *the youth.*
Sălus, -ūtis, *safety.*
Sĭtis, -is, *thirst.*
Supellex, -ctĭlis, *household furniture.*
Venia, -æ, *pardon.*
Vespĕra, -æ, *the evening.*

The following are sometimes found in the plural:

Bīlis, -is, *bile.*
Cholĕra, -æ, *choler.*
Cūtis, -is, *the skin.*
Fāma, -æ, *fame.*
Gloria, -æ, *glory.*
Lābes, -is, *a stain.*
Pax, -cis, *peace.*
Pituīta, -æ, *phlegm.*
Pix, -cis, *pitch.*
Prōles, -is, *offspring.*
Quies, -ētis, *rest.*
Soböles, -is, *offspring.*
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth.*

18. The following neuter nouns, for the most part, want the plural:

Album, -i, *a list of names.*
Barāthrum, -i, *any deep place.*
Dilucŭlum, -i, *the dawn of day.*
Ebur, -ŏris, *ivory.*
Fœnum, -i, *hay.*
Gĕlu, *frost,* indeclinable.
Hīlum, -i, *the black speck of a bean; a trifle.*
Jūbar, -ăris, *the sunbeam.*
Justitium, -i, *a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.*
Lardum, -i, *bacon.*
Lēthum, -i, *death.*
Lŭtum, -i, *clay.*
Nectar, -ăris, *nectar.*
Pelăgus, -i, *the sea.*
Pĕnum, -i, *and* pĕnus, -ŏris, *all kinds of provisions.*
Pus, pūris, *matter.*
Sal, sălis, *salt.*
Ver, vēris, *the spring.*
Vīrus, -i, *poison.*
Vitrum, -i, *glass.*
Viscum, -i, *the mistletoe.*
Vulgus, i, *the rabble.*

Obs. 6. *Ebur, lardum, lŭtum,* and *pus,* are found in the plural; and *pelăge* is found, in some cases, as the plural of *pelăgus; sal,* as a neuter noun, is not used in the plural.

19. Many nouns want the singular; such as the names of feasts, books, games, and many cities and places; as,

Apollināres, -ium, *games in honor of Apollo.*
Bacchanalia, -ium, *and* -ōrum, *the feasts of Bacchus.*
Bucolĭca, -ōrum, *a book of pastorals.*
Olympia, -ōrum, *the Olympic games.*
Syracūsæ, -ārum, *Syracuse.*
Hierosolyma, -ōrum, *Jerusalem.*
Thermopylæ, -ārum, *the straits of Thermopylæ.*

20. The following masculine nouns are scarcely used in the singular:

Antes, *the front rows of vines.*
Cancelli, *lattices,* or *windows made with cross-bars.*
Cāni, *gray hairs.*
Celĕres, -um, *the light-horse.*
Codicilli, *writings.*
Fasti, -ōrum, *or* fastus, -uum, *calendars, in which were marked festival-days,* &c.
Fŏri, *the gangways of a ship,* or *seats in the Circus.*
Inferi, *the gods below.*
Lemŭres, -um, *ghosts, hobgoblins.*
Liberi, *children.*
Majōres, -um, *ancestors.*
Mānes, -ium, *ghosts.*
Minōres, -um, *successors.*
Penātes, -um, *or* -ium, *household gods.*
Posteri, *posterity.*
Procĕres, -um, *the nobles.*
Pugillāres, -ium, *writing tables.*
Superi, *the gods above.*

Obs. 7. *Liberi* and *procĕres* are also found in the singular (*procĕrem*). Some of the others, as *inferi, majōres,* &c.,

are properly adjectives, and agree with the substantives which are implied in their signification.

21. The following feminine nouns want the singular:

Clītellæ, *a pannier.*
Cūnæ, *a cradle.*
Dīræ, *imprecations.*
Divitiæ, *riches.*
Excubiæ, *watches.*
Exsequiæ, *funerals.*
Exuviæ, *spoils.*
Feriæ, *holidays.*
Gerræ, *trifles.*
Induciæ, *a truce.*
Induviæ, *clothes to put on.*
Insidiæ, *snares.*
Kalendæ, Nōnæ, Idus, -uum, *names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.*
Lactes, *the small guts.*
Lapicidīnæ, *stone quarries.*
Manubiæ, *spoils taken in war.*
Mīnæ, *threats.*
Nūgæ, *trifles.*
Nundīnæ, *a market.*
Nuptiæ, *a marriage.*
Parietīnæ, *ruinous walls*
Phalĕræ, *trappings.*
Primitiæ, *first fruits.*
Reliquiæ, *a remainder.*
Salīnæ, *salt-pits.*
Scālæ, *a ladder.*
Scōpæ, *a besom.*
Tenebræ, *darkness.*
Thermæ, *hot baths.*
Tricæ, *toys.*
Valvæ, *folding doors.*
Vindiciæ, *a claim of liberty, a defence*

The following are generally found in the plural:

Alpes, *the Alps.*
Argutiæ, *quirks, witticisms.*
Bigæ, *a chariot drawn by two horses.*
Trigæ, —— *by three.*
Quadrigæ, —— *by four.*
Braccæ, *breeches.*
Charītes, -um, *the Graces.*
Facetiæ, *pleasant sayings.*
Ineptiæ, *silly stories.*
Præstigiæ, *enchantments.*
Salĕbræ, *rugged places.*

22. The following neuter nouns want the singular:

Acta, *public acts* or *records.*
Æstīva, *summer quarters.*
Arma, *arms.*
Bellaria, -um, *dainties.*
Brevia, -um, *shallows.*
Cibaria, *victuals.*
Crepundia, *children's toys.*
Cunabŭla, *a cradle, an origin.*
Exta, *the entrails.*
Februa, *purifying sacrifices.*
Flabra, *blasts of wind.*
Frāga, *strawberries.*
Hyberna, *winter quarters.*
Ilia, -um, *the entrails.*
Justa, *funeral rites.*
Lamenta, *lamentations.*
Lautia, *provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.*
Magalia, -um, *cottages.*
Mœnia, -um, *the walls of a city.*
Orgia, *the sacred rites of Bacchus.*
Parentālia, -um, *solemnities at the funeral of parents.*
Præcordia, *the diaphragm, the heart.*
Sponsālia, -um, *espousals.*
Statīva, *a standing camp.*
Talaria, -um, *winged shoes.*
Tesqua, *rough places.*
Transtra, *the seats on which the rowers sit in ships.*
Utensĭlia, -um, *utensils.*

Obs. 8. *Acta* and *transtra*, are also found in the singular. Some of the others, as *æstīva*, *brevia*, *hyberna*, *statīva*, &c., are properly adjectives; and agree with the substantives which are necessary to complete their meaning.

III. *Redundant Nouns.*

23. Some nouns are redundant in termination, gender, or form of declension: as, *arbŏr*, or *arbos*, a tree; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter; *menda*, *mendæ*, or *mendum*, *mendi*, a fault.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns, is composed of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as,

Æther, -ĕris, & æthra, -æ, *the air.*
Alvear, & -e, & -ium, *a bee-hive.*
Amarăcus, & -um, *sweet marjoram.*
Ancīle, & -ium, *an oval shield.*
Angiportus, -ûs, & -i, & -um, *a narrow lane.*
Aphractus, & -um, *an open ship.*
Aplustre, & -um, *the flag, colors.*
Arbor, & -os, *a tree.*
Bacŭlus, & -um, *a staff.*
Balteus, & -um, *a belt.*
Batillus, & -um, *a fire-shovel.*
Căpus, & -o, *a capon.*
Cassis, -ĭdis, & -ĭda, -ĭdæ, *a helmet.*
Cēpa, & -e, (indec.), *an onion.*
Clypeus, & -um, *a shield.*
Colluvies, & -io, *filth, dirt.*
Compāges, & -go, *a joining.*
Conger, & -grus, *a large eel.*
Crŏcus, & -um, *saffron.*
Cubĭtus, & -um, *a cubit.*
Diluvium, & -es. *a deluge.*
Elĕgi, -ōrum, & -ĭa, *an elegy.*
Elephantus, & Elephas, -antis, *an elephant.*
Essĕda, & -um, *a chariot.*
Eventus, & -a, -ōrum, *an event.*
Gausăpe, & -e, -es; & -e, -is; & -um, *a rough cloth.*
Gĕlu, & -um, *frost.*
Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ĕris, *or* -ĕri, *a bunch, a swelling.*
Glutĭnum, & -en, *glue.*
Grus, -uis, & -uis, -uis, *a crane.*
Laurus, i, & -ûs, *a laurel tree.*
Maceria, & -ies, -iēi, *a wall.*
Materia, -æ, & -ies, -iēi, *matter.*
Menda, -æ, & -um, -i, *a fault.*
Milliāre, & -ium, *a mile.*
Monĭtum, & -us, -ûs, *an admonition.*
Muria, & -ies, -iēi, *brine* or *pickle.*
Năsus, & -um, *the nose.*
Obsidio, & -um, *a siege.*
Ostrea, -æ, & -ea, ōrum, *an oyster.*
Peplus, & -um, *a veil, a robe.*
Pĕnus, -ûs, & -i; & -um; & -us, -ōris, *provisions.*
Pistrīna, & -um, *a grinding-house.*
Plebs, & -es, *the common people.*
Prætextus, -ûs, & -um, *a pretext.*
Rāpum, & -a, *a turnip.*
Rūma, & -men, *the cud.*
Ruscum, & -us, *butcher's broom.*
Segmen, & -mentum, *a paring.*
Sepes, & seps, *a hedge.*
Sibĭlus, & -a, -ōrum, *a hissing.*
Sĭnus, & -um, *a milk pail.*
Strāmen, & -tum, *straw.*

Suffīmen, & -tum, *a perfume.*
Tignum, & -um, *a plank.*
Tŏral, & -āle, *a bed-covering.*
Tonĭtrus, -ūs, & -u, & -uum, *thunder.*
Torcŭlar, & -āre, *a wine-press.*
Veternus, & -um, *a lethargy.*
Viscum, & -us, *the mistletoe.*

Obs. 9. Some of the nouns in the preceding list, may be used in either or in any of the terminations, and in the singular or plural, indifferently; some, as *auxilium*, *laurus*, *-ūs*, are used only in one or two cases; or in one number, as *elĕgi;* while others, as *prætextus* (a pretext) and *prætextum* (a border), though sometimes synonymous, are commonly employed in a different meaning.

24. The following nouns have a meaning in the plural different from that which generally belongs to them in the singular:

Singular.	Plural.
Aedes, *a temple.*	Aedes, *a house.*
Auxilium, *assistance.*	Auxilia, *auxiliary troops.*
Bŏnum, *any thing good.*	Bŏna, *goods, property.*
Carcer, *a prison.*	Carcĕres, *the barriers of a race course.*
Castrum, *a fort.*	Castra, *a camp.*
Comitium, *a place in the Roman forum where the comitia were held.*	Comitia, *an assembly of the people for the purpose of voting.*
Copia, *plenty.*	Copiæ, *troops.*
Cupedia, *daintiness.*	Cupediæ, *or* -a, *dainties.*
Facultas, *power, ability.*	Facultātes, *wealth, property.*
Fascis, *a bundle of twigs, a fagot.*	Fasces, *a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrate of Rome.*
Finis, *the end of any thing.*	Fĭnes, *the boundaries of a country.*
Fortūna, *fortune,*	Fortūnæ, *an estate, possessions*
Gratia, *grace, favor.*	Gratiæ, *thanks.*
Hortus, *a garden,*	Horti, *pleasure-grounds.*
Litĕra, *a letter of the alphabet.*	Litĕræ, *a letter, epistle.*
Lustrum, *a period of five years.*	Lustra, *dens of wild beasts.*
Natālis, *a birth-day.*	Natāles, *birth, descent.*
Opĕra, *labor.*	Opĕræ, *workmen.*
Opis, (genitive,) *help.*	Opes, *wealth, power.*
Pars, *a part, portion.*	Partes, *a party, faction.*
Plăga, *a space, a tract of country.*	Plăgæ, *nets used by hunters.*
Principium, *a beginning, a first principle,* or *element.*	Principia, *a place in the camp where the general's tent stood.*

Singular.	Plural.
Rostrum, *the beak of a bird, the sharp part of the prow of a ship.*	Rostra, *a pulpit in the Roman forum, from which orators used to address the people.*
Sal, *salt.*	Sāles, *witticisms.*

Note 4.—All the nouns in the preceding list, except *castrum* and *comitium*, are sometimes found in the singular, in the sense in which they more commonly occur in the plural.

---

§ 19. THE ADJECTIVE.

97.—An ADJECTIVE is a word used to qualify a substantive; as, *vir* BONUS, a GOOD man; DECEM *nāves*, TEN ships.

A noun is qualified by an adjective when the object named is thereby *described*, *limited*, or *distinguished* from other things of the same name.

1. The accidents of the adjective are *gender*, *number*, and *case*, and, of most adjectives, also *comparison*.

2. Adjectives, in Latin, indicate the gender, number, and case, by the termination; as, *bŏn-us*, *bŏn-a*, *bŏn-um*. (98.)

3. Participles have the *form* and *declension* of adjectives, while, in *time* and *signification*, they belong to the verb.

4. Some adjectives denote each gender by a different termination in the nominative, and consequently have three terminations. Some have one form common to the masculine and feminine, and are adjectives of two terminations; and some are adjectives of one termination, which is common to all genders.

5. Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

6. Adjectives of three terminations (except thirteen), are of the first and second declensions; but those of one or two terminations, are of the third.

Exc. Thirteen adjectives in *er*, of three terminations, are of the third declension. (See 99–5.)

§ 20. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

98.—Adjectives of the first and second declensions have the masculine always in *us* or *er;* the feminine always in *a*, and the neuter always in *um;* as, masculine *bŏnus*, feminine *bŏna*, neuter *bŏnum*, good.

The masculine in *us* and *er*, is declined like *dominus*, and *gener;* the feminine in *a*, like *penna;* and the neuter in *um*, like *regnum:* thus,

1. Bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bŏn-us,	a,	um,	bŏn-i,	æ,	a,
G.	bŏn-i,	æ,	i,	bon-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
D.	bŏn-o,	æ,	o,	bŏn-is,	is,	is,
Ac.	bŏn-um,	am,	um,	bŏn-os,	as,	a,
V.	bŏn-e,	a,	um,	bŏn-i,	æ,	a,
Ab.	bŏn-o,	â,	o.	bŏn-is,	is,	is.

In the same manner decline:

Altus, *high.*	Cavus, *hollow.*	Lætus, *joyful.*
Amplus, *large.*	Doctus, *learned.*	Plēnus, *full.*
Blandus, *flattering.*	Dūrus, *hard.*	Privatus, *private.*
Cārus, *dear.*	Fidus, *faithful.*	Rectus, *right.*

Also all participles, numerals, and pronouns, in *us;* as, *amātus*, *amatūrus*, *amandus*,—*primus*, *secundus*, &c.,—*meus*, *tuus*, *suus*.

Note 1.—*Meus* has *mi* in the vocative masculine, seldom *meus*.

2. Tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	tĕner,	a,	um,	tenĕr-i,	æ,	a,
G.	tenĕr-i,	æ,	i,	tener-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum,
D.	tenĕr-o,	æ,	o,	tenĕr-is,	is,	is,
Ac.	tenĕr-um,	am,	um,	tenĕr-os,	as,	a,
V.	tĕner,	a,	um,	tenĕr-i,	æ,	a,
Ab.	tenĕr-o,	â,	o.	tenĕr-is,	is,	is.

In the same manner decline:

Asper, *rough.*	Mĭser, *wretched.*	Exter, *foreign.*
Lĭber, *free.*	Prosper, *prosperous.*	Sătur, *full.*

Also compounds derived from *gĕro* and *fĕro*; as, *lanĭger*, bearing wool; *opĭfer*, bringing help.

But most adjectives in *er* lose the *e* in all the genders (66); as,

3. ĂTER, ĂTRA, ĂTRUM, *black.*

	Singular.			Plural.	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. ăter,	atr-a,	atr-um,	*N.* atr-i,	atr-æ,	atr-a,
G. atr-i,	atr-æ,	atr-i,	*G.* atr-ōrum,	atr-ārum,	atr-ōrum,
D. atr-o,	atr-æ,	atr-o,	*D.* atr-is,	atr-is,	atr-is,
Ac. atr-um,	atr-am,	atr-um,	*Ac.* atr-os,	atr-as,	atr-a,
V. ăter,	atr-a,	atr-um,	*V.* atr-i,	atr-æ,	atr-a,
Ab. atr-o,	atr-â,	atr-o.	*Ab.* atr-is,	atr-is,	atr-īs.

In like manner decline:

Æger, *sick.*	Măcer, *lean.*	Săcer, *sacred.*
Crĕber, *frequent.*	Pulcher, *fair.*	Sinister, *left.*

Dexter, right, has *dextra, dextrum*; or *dextĕra, dextĕrum.*

4. The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*; namely,

Alius, *another of many.*	Sōlus, *alone.*	Uterlĭbet, *which of the two you please.*
Alter, *the other of two.*	Tōtus, *whole.*	Uterque, *both.*
Alteruter, *the one or other.*	Ullus, *any.*	Utervis, *which of the two you please.*
Neuter, *neither.*	Unus, *one.*	
Nullus, *none.*	Uter, *whether.*	

In the other cases, they are like *bŏnus*, *tĕner*, or *ăter*; as,

TŌTUS, TŌTA, TŌTUM, *whole.*

	Singular.			Plural.	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. tōt-us,	a,	um,	*N.* tōt-i,	æ,	a,
G. tot-ius,	ius,	ius,	*G.* tot-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum,
D. tōt-i,	i,	i,	*D.* tōt-is,	is,	is,
Ac. tōt-um,	am,	um,	*Ac.* tōt-os,	as,	a,
V. tōt-e,	a,	um,	*V.* tōt-i,	æ,	a,
Ab. tōt-o,	â,	o.	*Ab.* tōt-is,	is,	is.

Note 2.—*Alius* has *aliud* in the neuter; and in the genitive *alius*, contracted for *aliius*; dative, *alii*. The genitive in *ius*, in poetry, has the *i* either long or short; in prose, always long. *Uter*, *neuter*, *alter*, *alius*, *ullus*, and *nullus*, instead of *ius* in the genitive, and *i* in the dative, occasionally, in the early writers, have the regular genitive *i*, *æ*, *i*, and dative *o*, *æ*, *o*.

---

§ 21. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

99.—RULE 1. Adjectives of the third declension, have *e* or *i*, in the ablative singular; but if the neuter is in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

RULE 2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*.

Exc. Except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

I. *Adjectives of one termination.*

1. FELIX, *happy.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	fēlix,	fēlix,	fēlix,	*N.* felīc-es,	es,	ia,
G.	felīc-is,	is,	is,	*G.* felic-ium,	ium,	ium
D.	felīc-i,	i,	i,	*D.* felic-ībus,	ībus,	ībus,
Ac.	felīc-em,	em,	felix,	*Ac.* felīc-es,	es,	ia,
V.	fēlix,	fēlix,	fēlix,	*V.* felīc-es,	es,	ia,
Ab.	felīc-e *or* i,	e *or* i,	e *or* i,	*Ab.* felic-ībus,	ībus,	ībus.

In like manner decline:

Fĕrox, *bold.*	Supplex, *suppliant.*	Trux, -ūcis, *cruel.*
Săgax, *sagacious.*	Tĕnax, *tenacious.*	Vēlox, -ōcis, *swift.*

2. PRUDENS, *prudent.*

	Singular.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	prūdens,	prūdens,	prūdens,
G.	prudent-is,	prudent-is,	prudent-is,
D.	prudent-i,	prudent-i,	prudent-i,
Ac.	prudent-em,	prudent-em,	prūdens,
V.	prūdens,	prūdens,	prūdens,
Ab.	prudent-e, *or* -i,	prudent-e, *or* -i,	prudent-e, *or* -i.

	Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia,
G.	prudent-ium,	prudent-ium,	prudent-ium,
D.	prudent-ĭbus,	prudent-ĭbus,	prudent-ĭbus,
Ac.	prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia,
V.	prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia,
Ab.	prudent-ĭbus,	prudent-ĭbus,	prudent-ĭbus.

In like manner decline:

Clēmens, -tis, *gentle.* Ingens, *great.* Rĕcens, *fresh.*

Also all participles in *ns*; as, *ămans, dŏcens, lĕgens, audiens,* &c.

Note.—Participles have *e* oftener than *i* in the ablative singular, and in the ablative absolute, they have *e* only.

II. *Adjectives of two terminations.*

3. Mītis, mīte, *meek.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	mīt-is,	is,	e,	mīt-es,	es,	ia,
G.	mīt-is,	is,	is,	mit-ium,	ium,	ium,
D.	mīt-i,	i,	i,	mit-ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus,
Ac.	mīt-em,	em,	e,	mīt-es,	es,	ia,
V.	mīt-is,	is,	e,	mīt-es,	es,	ia,
Ab.	mīt-i,	i,	i,	mit-ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus.

In the same manner decline:

Agĭlis, *active.* Debĭlis, *weak.* Tālis, *such.*
Brĕvis, *short.* Incolŭmis, *safe.* Utĭlis, *useful.*

4. *Comparative Degree,*—Mitior, mitius, *more meek.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	mitior,	mitior,	mitius,	mitiōr-es,	es,	a,
G.	mitiōr-is,	is,	is,	mitiōr-um,	um,	um,
D.	mitiōr-i,	i,	i,	mitior-ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus,
Ac.	mitiōr-em,	em,	mitius,	mitiōr-es,	es,	a,
V.	mitior,	mitior,	mitius,	mitiōr-es,	es,	a,
Ab.	mitiōr-e *or* i,	e *or* i,	e *or* i.	mitior-ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus.

In like manner decline:

Altior, *higher.* Felicior, *happier.* Melior, *better.*
Brevior, *shorter.* Fortior, *braver.* Molior, *softer.*
Durior, *harder.* Mājor, *greater.* Pējor, *worse.*

Exc. ***Plus***, more, has only the neuter gender in the singular, and is thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.		
Neut.	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. plus,	*N.* plūr-es,	es,	a, (ia,)
G. plūr-is,	*G.* plur-ium,	ium,	ium,
D. ——	*D.* plur-ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus,
Ac. plus,	*Ac.* plūr-es,	es,	a, (ia,)
V. ——	*V.* ——	——	——
Ab. plūr-e, *or* i.	*Ab.* plur-ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus.

Note.—The neuter plural in *ia* is hardly ever used. The compound, *complūres*, has no singular.

III. *Adjectives of three terminations.*

5. ACER *or* ACRIS, ACRE, *sharp.*

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. ācer, *or* ācr-is,	is,	e,	*N.* ācr-es,	es,	ia.
G. ācr-is,	is,	is,	*G.* acr-ium,	ium,	ium.
D. ācr-i,	i,	i,	*D.* acr-ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus.
Ac. ācr-em,	em,	e,	*Ac.* ācr-es,	es,	ia.
V. ācer, *or* ācr-is,	is,	e,	*V.* ācr-es,	es,	ia.
Ab. ācr-i,	i,	i.	*Ab.* acr-ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus.

Besides *ācer*, the following twelve are declined in this way

Alăcer, *cheerful.*	Equester, *equestrian.*	Salŭber, *wholesome.*
Campester, *flat, level.*	Paluster, *marshy.*	Silvester, *woody.*
Celĕber, *famous.*	Pedester, *on foot.*	Terrester, *terrestrial.*
Cĕler, *swift.*	Pŭter, *putrid.*	Volŭcer, *swift.*

100.—*Exceptions in the Ablative Singular and Genitive Plural.*

Exc. 1. The following adjectives have *e* in the ablative singular, and *um* in the genitive plural; viz:

Cœlebs, *unmarried.*	Pauper, *poor.*	Sospes, *safe.*
Compos, *master of.*	Juvĕnis, *young.*	Impŭbes, *beardless.*
Hospes, *strange.*	Pŭbis, *marriageable.*	Superstes, *surviving.*
Impos, *unable.*	Sĕnex, *old.*	Vĕtus, *old.*

The compounds of *cŏlor*, *corpor*, *cuspis*, and *pes*, have likewise *e* and *um*.

Note.—Caelebs, *compos*, *impos*, and *superstes*, have sometimes *i* in the ablative. *Vetus* has commonly *vetĕri* in the ablative, but always *vetĕra* and *vetĕrum* in the plural.

Exc. 2. The following adjectives have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular, and *um* in the genitive plural; viz:

Ales, *winged.*	Degĕner, *degenerate.*	Partĭceps, *sharing.*
Anceps, *double.*	Dispar, *unequal.*	Præceps, *headlong.*
Artĭfex, *artificial.*	Dīves, *rich.*	Princeps, *chief.*
Cĭcur, *tame.*	Impar, *unequal.*	Supplex, *suppliant.*
Compar, *equal.*	Inops, *poor.*	Vĭgil, *watchful.*

Note.—Mĕmor, mindful; *immĕmor*, unmindful; *par*, equal; *ūber*, fertile; *volūcer*, swift, have *i* only in the ablative singular, and *um* in the genitive plural; except *par*, which has *ium*.

Locuples, rich; *sons*, guilty, and *insons*, innocent, have *um*, as well as *ium*, in the genitive plural.

101.—§ 22. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

Irregular adjectives are *Defective* or *Redundant.*

I. DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. The adjectives *frūgi*, temperate; *sat* or *sătis*, sufficient; *sēmis*, half; and the plurals *quot*, how many? *tot*, so many; *alĭquot*, some; *quotquot*, and *quotcunque*, how many soever; *totĭdem*, just so many, are indeclinable. *Nēquam*, worthless, is also indeclinable, but used in both numbers.

2. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *pŏtis*, neuter *pŏte*, sometimes *pŏtis*, able, are used only in the nominative. They are of all genders, and *pŏtis* is also found joined with plural nouns.

Tantundem, as much, has *tantīdem* in the genitive, and *tantundem*, m. and n., in the nominative and accusative singular.

Necesse, or *necessum*, necessary; and *volŭpe*, pleasant, are used only in the nominative and accusative singular.

3. *Mactus*, *-e*, and plural *-i*, a common word of encouragement, brave! gallant! is used only in the nominative and vocative singular, and nominative plural.

Plus, more, in the singular, is neuter only; wants the dative, and probably the vocative; has *e* only in the ablative, and *a*, seldom *ia*, in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter.

Primōris, genitive, first, wants the nominative and vocative singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter; likewise *seminĕcis*, half dead, which is not used in the neuter, and has *seminĕcum* in the genitive plural.

Pauci, few; and *plerīque*, the most part, are seldom used in the singular.

4. The following classes of words want the vocative; viz: Partitives; as, *quīdam*, *alius:* Relatives; as, *quālis*, *quantus:* Negatives; as, *nullus*, *neuter:* Interrogatives; as, *quŏtus? ŭter?*

Except *alĭquis*, *quicunque*, *quilĭbet*, and *quisque*. (See 131.)

5. The following adjectives of one termination, in the subjoined list, are scarcely used in the nominative, accusative, or vocative plural of the neuter gender; viz:

Adjectives in ER: as, *pauper*, *pūber*, *cĕler*, *degĕner*, *ūber*.

Adjectives in FEX: as, *artĭfex*, *carnĭfex*.

Adjectives in OR: as, *mĕmor*, *concŏlor*, *bicorpor*.

Adjectives in ES: as, *āles*, *dīves*, *locuples*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *dēses*, *rĕses*, *hĕbes*, *tĕres*, *præpes*.

Adjectives in OS: as, *compos*, *impos*, *exos*.

Also *pūbis*, *impūbis*, *supplex*, *cōmis*, *ĭnops*, *vĭgil*, *sons*, *insons*, *intercus*, *rĕdux*, and perhaps some others.

Cæter, or *cætĕrus*, the rest, is scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

Victrix, victorious, and *ultrix*, revengeful, are feminine only in the singular, but feminine and neuter, in the plural; *victrīces*, *victricia*.

II. REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

6. Some adjectives compounded of *clīvus*, *frēnum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jŭgum*, *līmus*, *somnus*, and *anĭmus*, have two forms of declension; one in *us*, of the first and second declensions; and another in *is*, of the third; as, *acclīvus*, *-a*, *-um*, and *acclīvis*, *-e*, steep; *imbecillus*, and *imbecillis*, weak; *semisomnus*, and *semisomnis*, half-sleeping; *exanĭmus*, and *exanĭmis*, dead. Also, *hilăris*, and *hilărus*, merry.

Obs. Some of these compounds do not admit of this variation; as, *magnanĭmus*, *flexanĭmus*, *effrēnus*, *levisomnus*, not *magnanĭmis*, &c. On the contrary, *pusillanĭmis*, *injŭgis*, *illīmis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*, are used, and not *pusillanĭmus*, &c. *Semianĭmis*, *inermis*, *sublīmis*, *acclīvis*, *declīvis*, *proclīvis*, are more common than *semianĭmus*, &c. *Inanĭmis*, and *bijŭgis*, are scarcely used.

§ 23. EXERCISES ON ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives and Substantives to be declined together.*

Parva casa, *a small cottage.*	Alta arbor, *a high tree.*
Clārus poēta, *a famous poet.*	Priscus mos, *an ancient custom.*
Pulchra filia, *a beautiful daughter.*	Callida æstas, *a warm summer.*
Dulce pōmum, *a sweet apple.*	Tūtus portus, *a safe harbor.*
Docilis puer, *a docile boy.*	Nobile carmen, *a noble poem.*
Brĕve ævum, *a short life.*	Antīqua urbs, *an ancient city.*
Căpax antrum, *a capacious den.*	Magna dos, *a great dowry.*
Magnum ŏpus, *a great work.*	Căva nāvis, *a hollow ship.*
Serēnus dies, *a clear day.*	Culpātus Păris, *wicked Paris.*
Densa nūbes, *a thick cloud.*	Miser Tros, *a miserable Trojan.*
Fīdus pastor, *a faithful shepherd.*	Infēlix Dīdo, *unhappy Dido.*

2. *Translate the following words into English, according to their number and case:*

Opĕris magni,	Urbem antīquam,	Urbis antīquæ,
Clāro poētæ,	Poētis clāris,	Parĭdi culpāto,
Diēi serēno,	Puĕri docīles,	Arbŏres altæ,
Diēi serēni,	Dōte magnâ,	Trois misĕri,
Densis nubĭbus,	Mōrum priscōrum,	Dīdo infelīci,
Fīdi pastōris,	Carmĭnis nobĭlis,	Portĭbus tūtis,
Ævo brĕvi,	Callĭda æstāte,	Dulcium pomōrum.

3. *Translate the following phrases into Latin, observing to put the adjective in the same gender, number, and case, with the substantive.* The words will be found in the list above:

To a small cottage,	Of ancient customs,	In a great work,
Of a capacious den,	Of an ancient city,	With wicked Paris,
From lofty trees,	To a great work,	A harbor safe,
For unhappy Dido,	O wicked Paris,	In a clear day,
In a hollow ship,	Faithful shepherds,	Of small cottages,
A wretched Trojan,	In a short life,	To a thick cloud,
With thick clouds,	With a sweet apple,	With high trees,
From a clear day,	With clear days,	Beautiful daughters,
Of sweet apples,	Noble poems,	In a warm summer,
High trees,	Of ancient cities,	Of a short life,
With great dowries,	In small cottages,	With docile boys.

§ 24. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

102.—Numeral adjectives are those which signify number. In Latin, they are divided into four classes; viz:

1. *Cardinal*, which express number simply, or how many; as, *one*, *two*, *three*, *four*, &c.

2. *Ordinal*, denoting which one of a number; as, *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, &c.

3. *Distributive*, denoting how many to each; as, *bīni*, two by two, *or* two to each.

4. *Multiplicative*, denoting how many fold.

I. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

103. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are:

Unus,	I.	*one.*
Duo,	II.	*two.*
Tres,	III.	*three.*
Quatuor,	IIII, or IV.	*four.*
Quinque,	V.	*five.*
Sex,	VI.	*six.*
Septem,	VII.	*seven.*
Octo,	VIII.	*eight.*
Nŏvem,	VIIII, or IX.	*nine*
Děcem,	X.	*ten*
Undĕcim,	XI.	*eleven*
Duodĕcim,	XII.	*twelve*
Tredĕcim,	XIII.	*thirteen*
Quatnordĕcim,	XIIII, or XIV.	*fourteen*
Quindĕcim,	XV.	*fifteen*
Sedĕcim, *or* Sexdĕcim,	XVI.	*sixteen*
Septemdĕcim,	XVII.	*seventeen*
Octodĕcim,	XVIII.	*eighteen*
Novemdĕcim,	XVIIII, or XIX.	*nineteen*
Viginti,	XX.	*twenty*
Viginti ūnus, *or* Unus et viginti,	XXI.	*twenty-one*
Viginti duo, *or* Duo et viginti, &c.	XXII.	*twenty-two*
Triginta,	XXX.	*thirty*
Quadraginta,	XXXX, or XL.	*forty.*

Quinquaginta,	L.	*fifty*
Sexaginta,	LX.	*sixty.*
Septuaginta,	LXX.	*seventy.*
Octoginta,	LXXX.	*eighty*
Nonaginta,	LXXXX, or XC.	*ninety*
Centum,	C.	*a hundred*
Centum ūnus. *or* Centum et ūnus, &c.,	CI.	*a hundred and one, &c.*
Ducenti, -æ, -a,	CC.	*two hundred.*
Trecenti,	CCC.	*three hundred.*
Quadringenti,	CCCC.	*four hundred.*
Quingenti,	IↃ, or D.	*five hundred.*
Sexcenti,	IↃC, or DC.	*six hundred.*
Septingenti,	IↃCC, or DCC.	*seven hundred.*
Octingenti,	IↃCCC, or DCCC.	*eight hundred.*
Nongenti,	IↃCCCC, or DCCCC.	*nine hundred.*
Mille,	CIↃ, or M.	*a thousand.*
Duo millia, *or* Bis mille,	CIↃCIↃ, or MM.	*two thousand.*
Quinque millia, *or* Quinquies mille,	IↃↃ, or $\overline{\text{V}}$.	*five thousand.*
Decem millia, *or* Decies mille,	CCIↃↃ, or $\overline{\text{X}}$.	*ten thousand.*
Quinquaginta millia, *or* Quinquagies mille,	IↃↃↃ, or $\overline{\text{L}}$.	*fifty-thousand.*
Centum millia, *or* Centies mille,	CCCIↃↃↃ, or $\overline{\text{C}}$.	*a hundred thousand.*

104.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Eighteen* and *nineteen* are more properly expressed by *duodeviginti*, and *undeviginti;* from which Ordinals, Distributives and Adverbs are likewise formed. The same form is also used in the corresponding numbers of each of the other decades; as, *duodetriginta*, twenty-eight; *undetriginta*, twenty-nine, &c.

2. The Cardinal numbers, except *ūnus* and *mille*, want the singular.

3. *Unus*, as a numeral, is not used in the plural, except when joined with a substantive that wants the singular; as, *ūna mœnia*, one wall; or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *ūna vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. *Unus* is declined like *tōtus* (98–4).

Duo, *two*, and Tres, *three*, are thus declined:

	Plural.				Plural.	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	*N.* trēs,	trēs,	tria,
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	*G.* trium,	trium,	trium,
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	*D.* trĭbus,	trĭbus,	trĭbus,
Ac. duos, -o,	duas,	duo,	*Ac.* trēs,	trēs,	tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	*V.* trēs,	trēs,	tria,
Ab. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	*Ab.* trĭbus,	trĭbus,	trĭbus,

Ambo, both, is declined like *duo*.

4. All the cardinal numbers, from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, they are declined like the plural of *bŏnus* (98–1).

5. *Mille*, when placed before a genitive plural, is a substantive indeclinable in the singular; in the plural, it is declined like the plural of *sedīle* (83–8); thus, *millia*, *millium*, *millĭbus*, &c. When it has a substantive in any other case than the genitive plural joined to it, it is a plural adjective indeclinable; as, *mille homĭnes*, a thousand men; *bis mille hominĭbus*, with two thousand men.

ROMAN METHOD OF NOTATION BY LETTERS.

6. The capital letters used by the Romans to denote numbers, were C, I, L, V, X, which are therefore called Numeral Letters. I, denotes *one;* V, *five;* X, *ten;* L, *fifty*, and C, *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these letters, all numbers were expressed as follows:

The repetition of a letter repeats its value; thus, II signifies *two;* III, *three;* XX, *twenty;* XXX, *thirty;* CC, *two hundred;* CCC, *three hundred*, &c. V and L are never repeated.

When a letter of less value is placed before another of greater value, the value of the less is *taken from* the greater. When placed after it, the value of the less is *added to* the greater; thus,

IV. Four,	V. Five,	VI. Six.
IX. Nine,	X. Ten,	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty,	L. Fifty,	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety,	C. A hundred,	CX. A hundred and ten.

A *thousand* was marked CIↃ, which was afterwards expressed by M, the initial of *mille*. *Five hundred* is marked IↃ, afterwards changed into D.

The annexing of Ↄ to IↃ makes its value ten times greater; thus, IↃↃ denotes *five thousand;* IↃↃↃ, *fifty thousand.*

In like manner, a C prefixed, together with another Ↄ annexed to the numerals CIↃ, always increases the value tenfold; thus, CIↃ, *a thousand;* CCIↃↃ, *ten thousand;* CCCIↃↃↃ, *a hundred thousand.* Any higher number than this, according to Pliny, was expressed by repetition; thus, CCCIↃↃↃ, CCCIↃↃↃ, *two hundred thousand.*

Thousands are sometimes expressed by a line drawn over the numeral letters; thus, $\overline{\text{III}}$ denotes *three thousand;* $\overline{\text{X}}$, *ten thousand*, &c.

II. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

105.—The *Ordinal Numerals* are formed from the cardinal; they all end in *us*, and are declined like *bŏnus* (98–1); as, *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second; &c. (See the following table.)

III. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS.

106.—*Distributive numerals* distribute an equal number to each individual of several objects, or an equal number at different times. They answer the question, How many to each? or, How many each time? as, *bīni*, two each, or two at a time, two by two. They are all plural, and declined like the plural of *bŏnus* (98–1); but usually have *ŭm* instead of *ōrum* in the genitive; as, *singŭli, æ, a;* &c.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs:

Ordinal.	*Distributive.*	*Numeral Adverbs.*
1. Prīmus, *first,*	Singŭli, *one by one,*	Semel, *once.*
2. Secundus, *second,*	Bīni, *two by two,*	Bis, *twice.*
3. Tertius, *third,*	Terni, *or* trīni, &c.,	Ter, *thrice.*
4. Quartus, &c.,	Quaterni,	Quăter, *four times.*
5. Quintus,	Quīni,	Quinquies, &c.
6. Sextus,	Sēni,	Sexies.
7. Septĭmus,	Septēni,	Septies.
8. Octāvus,	Octōni,	Octies.
9. Nōnus,	Novēni,	Novies.
10. Decĭmus,	Dēni,	Decies.

Ordinal.	*Distributive.*	*Numeral Adverbs.*
11. Undecĭmus,	Undēni,	Undecies.
12. Duodecĭmus,	Duodēni,	Duodecies.
13. Tertius decĭmus,	Terni dēni,	Terdecies.
14. Quartus decĭmus,	Quaterni dēni,	Quaterdecies.
15. Quintus decĭmus,	Quīni dēni,	Quindecies.
16. Sextus decĭmus,	Sēni dēni,	Sedecies.
17. Septĭmus decĭmus,	Septēni dēni,	Decies et septies.
18. Octāvus decĭmus,	Octōni dēni,	Decies et octies.
19. Nōnus decĭmus,	Novēni dēni,	Decies et nonies.
20. Vicesĭmus, *or* vigesĭmus,	Vicēni,	Vicies.
21. Vicesĭmus prīmus.	Vicēni singŭli,	Semel et vicies,
22. Vicesĭmus secundus.	Vicēni bīni,	Bis et vicies, &c.
30. Tricesĭmus, *or* trigesĭmus,	Tricēni,	Tricies.
40. Quadragesĭmus,	Quadragēni,	Quadragies.
50. Quinquagesĭmus,	Quinquagēni,	Quinquagies.
60. Sexagesĭmus,	Sexagēni,	Sexagies.
70. Septuagesĭmus,	Septagēni,	Septuagies.
80. Octogesĭmus,	Octogēni,	Octogies.
90. Nonagesĭmus,	Nonagēni,	Nonagies.
100. Centesĭmus,	Centēni,	Centies.
200. Ducentesĭmus,	Ducēni,	Ducenties.
300. Trecentesĭmus,	Trecēni, *or* trecentēni,	Trecenties.
400. Quadringentesĭmus.	Quadringēni, *or* quadringentēni,	Quadringenties.
500. Quingentesĭmus,	Quingēni,	Quingenties.
600. Sexcentesĭmus,	Sexcēni, *or* Sexcentēni,	Sexcenties.
700. Septingentesĭmus,	Septingēni,	Septingenties.
800. Octingentesĭmus,	Octingēni,	Octingenties.
900. Nongentesĭmus,	Nongēni,	Noningenties.
1000. Millesĭmus,	Millēni, *or* singŭla millia,	Millies.
2000. Bis millesĭmus, &c.,	Bis millēni, *or* bīna millia, &c.,	Bis millies, &c.

7. Instead of *prīmus*, *prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

Twenty-first, thirty-first, &c., are often expressed by *ūnus et vicesĭmus*, *ūnus et tricesĭmus*, &c.; and twenty-second, &c., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesĭmus*, in which *duo* is indeclinable. In

the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et;* as, *vicesĭmus quartus*, or *quartus et vicesĭmus*.

8. Distributives are used in a variety of ways, as 1st. In multiplication, with adverbial numerals; as, *bis bīna*, twice two, i. e. four; *bis sēnos*, twice six, i. e. twelve. 2d. Instead of cardinals, with words which have no singular; as, *bīni codicilli*, two writings; or with nouns in the plural having the meaning of a singular, but still different from the meaning of the same word in the singular number (§ 18, 24, or 96–24); as, *bīna castra*, *bīnæ ædes*, *bīnæ literæ*; two camps, two houses, two epistles. *Duo*, *duæ*, with these nouns, would mean two forts or castles; two temples; two letters of the alphabet. 3d. *Bīni* is used for *duo*, to denote things which exist in pairs; as, *bīni bŏves*, a pair of oxen; *bīnæ aures*, two ears. In ordinary language, distributives occur only in the plural—among the poets sometimes in the singular in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *centēna arbŏre* (=*centum arborĭbus*), literally "with a tree a hundred fold." See also No. 11.

9. The singular of some distributives, is sometimes used in the sense of a multiplicative; as, *bīnus*, two-fold, &c.

IV. MULTIPLICATIVE NUMBERS.

107.—*Multiplicatives* denote how many fold; they all end in *ex*, and are declined like *fēlix* (99–1). They are as follows:

Simplex, *single.*	Quadrŭplex, *fourfold.*
Dŭplex, *double.*	Quintŭplex, *fivefold.*
Trĭplex, *threefold.*	Centŭplex, *a hundredfold, &c., &c.*

10. To these classes may be added:

1st. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *dūplus*, twice as great.

2d. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *bīmus*, two years old; *biennis*, of two years' continuance.

3d. Those which denote how many parts a thing contains; as, *binarius*, of two parts.

4th. *Interrogatives;* as, *quot*, how many? *quŏtus*, of what number? *quotēni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? which have for their correlatives, *tot*, *totĭdem*, &c.

11. The learner should carefully notice the distinction between the cardinal and distributive numerals in their ordinary use. Thus, for example, *Duo consŭles* VIGINTI *nāves habēbant*, means, "the two consuls *together* had twenty ships," i. e. twenty in all, or ten each; but *Duo consŭles* VICENAS *nāves habēbant*, means, "the two consuls had twenty ships *each*," or *forty* in all.

---

§ 25. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

108.—Adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

109.—The POSITIVE expresses a quality simply; as, *bŏnus*, good. The COMPARATIVE expresses a quality in a higher or lower degree in one object than in another, or than in several taken together. The SUPERLATIVE expresses a quality in the highest or lowest degree in one object compared with several taken separately; as, gold is *heavier* than silver; it is the *most precious* of the metals. Hence, those adjectives only can be compared whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

110.—The *Superlative* is often used to express a very high or a very low degree of a quality, without implying comparison; as, *vir doctissĭmus*, "a very learned man;" *hortus amœnissĭmus*, "a most delightful garden." Thus used, it is called the superlative of *eminence*, and is commonly translated with the article *a*, or *an*;—when comparison is implied, the article *the* must be used.

111.—The *Comparative* is always of the third declension, and declined like *mitior* (99–4). The Superlative is always of the first and second, and declined like *bŏnus* (98–1).

112.—RULES OF COMPARISON.

1. The comparative is formed from the root of the positive (56), by adding *ior* for the mas-

culine and feminine, and *ius* for the neuter; as,

Positive.	Root.	Comparative.			
		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
Dūrus, *hard*,	dūr-	dur-ior,	dur-ior,	dur-ius,	*harder.*
Brĕvis, *short*,	brĕv-	brev-ior,	brev-ior,	brev-ius,	*shorter*
Audax, *bold*,	audāc-	audac-ior,	audac-ior,	audac-ius,	*bolder.*

2. The superlative is formed from the root of the positive, by adding *issĭmus, a, um;* as,

Positive.	Root.	Superlative.
Dūrus, *hard*,	dūr-	dur-issĭmus, a, um, *hardest.*
Brĕvis, *short*,	brĕv-	brev-issĭmus, a, um, *shortest.*
Audax, *bold*,	audāc-	audac-issĭmus, a, um, *boldest.*

Exc. If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rĭmus, a, um*, to the nominative masculine, i. e. to the root uncontracted; as,

Positive.	Superlative.
Pulcher, *fair*,	pulcher-rĭmus, a, um.
Pauper, *poor*,	pauper-rĭmus, a, um.

Hence these adjectives are compared thus:

Dūrus,	durior,	durissĭmus;	*Hard,*	*harder,*	*hardest.*
Brĕvis,	brevior,	brevissĭmus;	*Short,*	*shorter*	*shortest*
Audax,	audacior,	audacissĭmus;	*Bold,*	*bolder,*	*boldest.*
Pulcher,	pulchrior,	pulcherrĭmus;	*Fair,*	*fairer,*	*fairest.*
Pauper,	pauperior,	pauperrĭmus;	*Poor,*	*poorer*	*poorest.*

In the same manner compare:

Altus, *high.*	Firmus, *strong.*	Lĭber, *free.*
Căpax, *capacious.*	Fortis, *brave.*	Pĭger, *slow.*
Crĕber, *frequent.*	Grāvis, *heavy.*	Prūdens, *prudent.*
Dignus, *worthy.*	Intĕger, *entire.*	Sapiens, *wise.*
Doctus, *learned.*	Lentus, *slow.*	Vehĕmens, *vehement.*
Fēlix, *happy.*	Lĕvis, *light.*	Vēlox, *swift.*

113.—§ 26. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISONS.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.			
Bŏnus,	melĭor,	optĭmus;	*Good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Magnus,	major,	maxĭmus;	*Great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Mālus,	pejor,	pessĭmus;	*Bad,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Multus,	plus, n.	plūrĭmus;	*Much,*	*more,*	*most.*
Parvus,	mĭnor,	minĭmus;	*Little,*	*less,*	*least.*

Obs. Plus has only the neuter in the singular. In the plural, it is regular, and is declined as 99–4. Exc.

1. The following adjectives form the superlative in *ĭmus*.

Facĭlis, *easy,*	facilior,	facillĭmus.
Gracĭlis, *lean,*	gracilior,	gracillĭmus.
Humĭlis, *low,*	humilior,	humillĭmus.
Imbecillis, *weak,*	imbecillior,	imbecillĭmus.
Simĭlis, *like,*	similior,	simillĭmus.

2. The following adjectives have the comparative regular, but the superlative irregular.

Cĭter, *near,*	citerior,	citĭmus.
Dexter, *right,*	dexterior,	dextĭmus.
Exter, *outward,*	exterior,	extrēmus, *or* extĭmus.
Infĕrus, *low,*	inferior,	infĭmus, *or* īmus.
Intĕrus, *inward,*	interior,	intĭmus.
Matūrus, *ripe,*	maturior,	maturrĭmus, *or* maturissĭmus.
Postĕrus, *behind,*	posterior,	postrēmus, *or* postŭmus.
Sinister, *left,*	sinisterior,	sinistĭmus.
Supĕrus, *high,*	superior,	suprēmus, *or* summus.
Vĕtus, *old.*	veterior,	veterrĭmus.

Note.—Dives, rich, has commonly *ditior, ditissimus,* for its comparative and superlative; contracted for *divitior* and *divitissimus.*

3. Compounds in *dĭcus, fĭcus, lŏquus,* and *vŏlus,* form the comparative in *entior,* and the superlative in *entissĭmus.*

Benefĭcus, *beneficent,*	beneficentior,	beneficentissĭmus.
Benevŏlus, *benevolent,*	benevolentior,	benevolentissĭmus.
Magnilŏquus, *boasting,*	magniloquentior,	magniloquentissĭmus.
Maledĭcus, *railing,*	maledicentior,	maledicentissĭmus.
Mirifĭcus, *wonderful,*	mirificentior,	mirificentissĭmus.

Note.—*Mirĭficus* has also *mirificissimus* in the superlative. The compounds of *lŏquus* are not found in the superlative.

4. The following adjectives want the positive:

Deterior, *worse*,	deterrĭmus.	Propior, *nearer*,	proxĭmus.
Ocior, *swifter*,	ocissĭmus.	Ulterior, *farther*,	ultĭmus.
Prior, *former*,	prīmus.		

5. The following adjectives want the comparative:

Inclȳtus, *renowned*,	inclytissĭmus.	Nupĕrus, *late*,	nuperrĭmus.
Invictus, *invincible*,	invictissĭmus.	Par, *equal*,	parissĭmus.
Merĭtus, *deserving*,	meritissĭmus.	Persuāsus, *persuaded*,	persuasissĭmus.
Nŏvus, *new*,	novissĭmus.	Săcer, *sacred*,	sacerrĭmus.

6. The following adjectives want the superlative:

Adolescens, *young*,	adolescentior.	Opīmus, *rich*,	opimior.
Diuturnus, *lasting*,	diuturnior.	Prōnus, *bending down*,	pronior.
Ingens, *huge*,	ingentior.	Sātur, *full*,	saturior.
Juvĕnis, *young*,	junior.	Sĕnex, *old*,	senior.

Note.—The superlative of *juvĕnis*, or *adolescens*, is supplied by *minimus nātu*, the youngest; *sĕnex* takes *maximus nātu*, the oldest.

7. Almost all adjectives in *ĭlis* (penult long), *ālis*, and *bĭlis*, want the superlative; as, *civīlis*, civil, *civilior; regālis*, regal, *regalior; flebĭlis*, lamentable, *flebĭlior*.

Note.—Some adjectives of these terminations have the superlative also; as *æquālis, frugālis, hospitālis, liberālis, vocālis—affabilis, amabilis, habilis, ignobilis, mirabilis, nobilis, mutabilis, nobilis, stabilis.*

Some adjectives of other termipations also want the superlative; as, *arcānus, ior*, secret; *declīvis, ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus*, far off, *ior; propinquus*, near, *ior; salutāris*, healthful, *salutarior*.

Anterior, former, and *sequior*, worse, are found only in the comparative.

Nēquam, worthless (indeclinable), has *nequior, nequissimus*.

8. Many adjectives have no degrees of comparison at all, because they denote invariable qualities. They are such as denote *substance, origin, possession*, or *definite time;* as, *aureus, adamantĭnus;—Græcus, Romānus, peregrīnus;—paternus, equīnus;—æstīvus, hibernus, vīvus*, &c.

9. Many adjectives which do not denote invariable qualities, are yet without comparative and superlative forms. They are—

1st. Adjectives ending in *ĭmus, īnus, ōrus*, and most adjectives in *īvus;* as, *legitĭmus, matutīnus, canōrus, fugitīvus:* also adjectives in *us* after a vowel; as, *dubius, idoneus, arduus*, &c.; except adjectives in *quus*, in which, however, the first *u* does not form a syllable (8–2); and sometimes *assiduus, egregius, pius, strenuus* and *vacuus*, which are also regularly compared.

2d. Compound adjectives, one of whose component parts is a noun or a verb; as, *versicŏlor, pestĭfer, degĕner, magnanĭmus, consŏnus, fœdifrăgus*, &c., and such as have the derivative terminations *ĭcus, ĭdus, ŭlus, ălis, ŭlis, bundus*; as, *modĭcus, trepĭdus, gurrŭlus, mortālis, hostĭlis, furibundus*, &c.

3d. Diminutives, which in themselves imply a sort of comparison; as, *tenellus*, somewhat tender; *majuscŭlus*, somewhat big.

4th. Many adjectives which cannot be classed under distinct heads; as, *albus*, white; *almus*, gracious; *egēnus*, needy; *lăcer*, torn; *mĕmor*, mindful; *mīrus*, wonderful; *præcox*, early ripe; *sospes*, safe; and many others noted in the dictionaries.

In most, or in all adjectives of these classes, and sometimes in others also, the comparative is made by prefixing *magis*, more; and the superlative by prefixing *valde* or *maxĭme*, most, to the positive; as, *arduus*, high; *magis arduus*, higher; *valde*, or *maxĭme arduus*, highest, or very high. Sallust has *maxĭme tūtos*.

10. Comparison is sometimes made by means of the prepositions *præ, ante, præter*, or *supra*, with the positive; as, *Præ nōbis beātus*, happier than we, Cic.; *Ante alias insignis*, most distinguished, Liv. A high degree of quality without comparison is expressed by prefixing *valde, imprīmis, apprīme, admŏdum*, &c., or by the preposition *per* or *præ* prefixed in composition.

11. The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam*, even, yet, and of both comparative and superlative, by prefixing *longe* or *multo*, far, much; as, *multo melior*, much better; *longe nobilissĭmus*, far the noblest. *Quam* with the superlative renders it emphatic; as, *quam doctissĭmus*, extremely learned; *quam celerrĭme*, as speedily as possible.

---

§ 27. DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

114.—Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

1. Those derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*. They are such as *aureus*, golden; *capitālis*, capital, relating to the life; *puerīlis*, boyish; *animōsus*, full of courage, &c., from *aurum, căput, puer, anĭmus*, &c.

2. Those derived from adjectives are also called denomina-

tives; they are chiefly diminutives; as, *dulcicŭlus*, sweetish; *duriuscŭlus*, somewhat hard, &c., from *dulcis*, *dūrus*, &c.

3. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbal* adjectives. They commonly end in *bundus*, *ĭdus*, *bĭlis*, *ĭlis*, *ĭtius*, and *ax*; as *errabundus*, given to wandering; *rapĭdus*, rapid; *credibĭlis*, credible; *flexibĭlis*, easy to be bent; *fictitius*, feigned; *căpax*, capacious, &c., from *erro*, *rapio*, *crēdo*, *flecto*, *fingo*, *capio*, &c.

4. Participles divested of the idea of time, and expressing merely a quality, become adjectives, and are capable of comparison; as, *ămans*, fond of; *amantior*, *amantissĭmus*; *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, *doctissĭmus*. These are called *Participial* adjectives.

Adjectives are also derived from adverbs and prepositions; as, *hodiernus*, *contrarius*, &c., from *hodie*, *contra*, &c.

---

§ 28. PRONOUNS.

115.—A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun.

116.—In Latin, there are eighteen simple pronouns, namely, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*; *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*; *nostras*, *vestras* and *cujas*.

Of these, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, are substantive or personal pronouns, the rest are adjectives.

SUBSTANTIVE OR PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

117.—The Substantive or Personal pronouns have the same accidents as nouns (34); in construction, they take the gender and number of the nouns for which they stand, and are thus declined:

Ego, *I*, First Person, Masc. or Fem.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. ĕgo,	*I*,	*N.* nos,	*we*,
G. mei,	*of me*,	*G.* nostrûm, *or* nostri,*	*of us*,
D. mihi,	*to me*,	*D.* nōbis,	*to us*,
Ac. me,	*me*,	*Ac.* nos,	*us*,
V. ——	——	*V.* ——	——
Ab. me,	*with*, &c., *me*,	*Ab.* nōbis,	*with*, &c., *us*.

* *Nostrum*, *vestrum*, G. subjective; *nostri*, *vestri*, G. objective. 334.

Tu, *thou*, Second Person, Masc. or Fem.

	Singular.		Plural.
N. tu,	*thou*, or *you*,	*N.* vos,	*ye*, or *you*,
G. tui,	*of thee*, or *of you*,	*G.* vestrûm, *or* vestri,	*of you*,
D. tĭbi,	*to thee*, or *to you*,	*D.* vōbis,	*to you*,
Ac. te,	*thee*, or *you*,	*Ac.* vos,	*you*,
V. tu,	*O thou*, or *O you*,	*V.* vos,	*O ye*, or *you*,
Ab. te,	*with*, &c., *thee*, or *you*,	*Ab.* vōbis,	*with*, &c., *you*.

Sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself*, Third Person, Masc., Fem., Neut. Reflexive.

	Singular.		Plural.
N. ——	——	*N.* ——	
G. sui,	*of himself*, &c.,	*G.* sui,	*of themselves*,
D. sĭbi,	*to himself*, &c.,	*D.* sĭbi,	*to themselves*,
Ac. se,	*himself*, &c.,	*Ac.* se,	*themselves*,
V. ——	——	*V.* ——	——
Ab. se,	*with*, &c., *himself*, &c.,	*Ab.* se,	*with*, &c., *themselves*.

118.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. In all speech, three things are implied, the person speaking, the person spoken to, and the person or thing spoken of. These are called, in Grammar, the *First*, *Second*, and *Third* persons; and the pronouns representing them are called *Personal Pronouns.*

2. The pronoun of the first person is *Ego*, I; of the second, *Tu*, thou *or* you; of the third, *Sui*, of himself, of herself, of itself. Also the adjective pronouns, *ipse*, *ille*, *iste*, *is*, and *hic*, without a substantive, in the gender of the nouns represented by them, and with the general meaning of *he*, *she*, *it*, may be called *Substantive* or *Personal Pronouns.*

Note 1.—The plural of the first person is often used for the singular, i. e. *nos* for *ĕgo;* so also *noster* for *meus;* and the verb, without the pronoun expressed, is sometimes used in the first person plural for the first person singular; but the plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as in English.

Note 2.—"Thou" and "thee," are used as the rendering of *tu* and its cases in the singular, only in solemn addresses, or to mark special emphasis or contempt. In ordinary discourse, it is translated by "you." See Eng. Gram., 114. 4. An., and Pr. Gr., 244 and 245.

3. The personal pronouns of the third person, though all

translated by one term in English,* differ from one another in meaning and use, as follows:

1st. *Sui*, the substantive pronoun of the third person, is without the nominative, as the third person (in English *he, she, it, they*) is not usually expressed in Latin in the nominative, but is implied in the third person of the verb. But if it is to be expressed, a demonstrative pronoun, commonly *ille*, is used. The other cases of the English pronouns of the third person, not reflexive, are expressed by the oblique cases of *is, ea, id*, the nominative of which belongs to the demonstrative pronouns. *Sui, sĭbi, se*, are used in a reflexive sense referring, as a substitute, to the main subject of the sentence† in which they occur; as, *Laudat* se, "He praises *himself*;" *Cāto* se *occīdit*, "Cato killed *himself*." *Cāto dixit* se *esse Cæsāre feliciōrem*, "Cato said *that he* (Cato) was happier than Cæsar." *Puer pūtat hoc* sĭbi *nocēre*, "The boy thinks that this hurts *him*" (the boy). *Procŭlus Julius dixisse fertur a* se *vīsum esse Romŭlum*, "Proculus Julius is reported to have said that Romulus was seen by *him*" (Julius). But when the pronoun refers to another word, and there is a transition from the principal to a subordinate subject, the oblique cases of *is, ea, id*, must be used. Thus, if the words *that he, him, by him*, in the last three propositions, referred to any other than Cato, or the boy, or Proculus Julius, they would have to be made, in the first sentence, by *eum;* in the second, by *ei;* and in the third, by *ab eo*.

Exc. Sui, and its corresponding possessive pronoun *suus*, are sometimes used when the reference is not to be primary, but to a subordinate subject; but this is never done by good writers when it would cause ambiguity. The most common cases of this usage are:—1st. When the primary subject is in the first or second person, to which, of course, *sui*, being the third, cannot refer; as, *illum occīdi suo gladio*, "I slew him with his own sword." 2d. After *quisque* or *unusquisque;* as, *suum cuīque tribuunt*, "they give every man his own." 3d. When the word to which *suus* refers stands immediately or almost immediately before it; as, *hunc cīves sui ex urbe ejē-*

* The want of different pronouns of the third person, in English, is frequently the cause of ambiguity, which never can occur in Latin or Greek. Thus, if we say: "Lysias promised his father never to abandon his friends;" it is impossible to tell, from this sentence, whose friends are meant,—whether those of Lysias or of his father. If the former, "his," in Latin, would be *suos;* if the latter, "*ejus*," and if the latter in a special manner, "*ipsius*."

† The main subject is generally the nominative to the leading verb, as in the above examples. Sometimes, however, the construction requires it to be in a different case; as, *Ab Antonio admonĭtus sum ut māne sibi adessem;* here, the leading subject is *Antonio* in the Ablative, and to this, of course, *sibi* refers; so in the following: *Est libīdo homĭni suo animo obsĕqui*, the principal subject is *homĭni*.

cērunt, "his fellow citizens banished him from the city." 4th. When the noun with which *suus* agrees is coupled with another by *cum*; as, *eum cum suis rēbus dimisĕrunt*, "they dismissed him with his effects."

2d. *Ipse* is applicable to any of the three persons, and, in the nominative case, is used when either the primary or the subordinate subject is again introduced with emphasis in a subsequent or subordinate clause, or in the next sentence; as, *Lycurgus nihil ulla lĕge in alios sanxit, cujus non ipse prīmus in se documenta dăret*, "Lycurgus bound nothing by any law upon others, of which he did not first give an instance in himself;" here *ipse* refers to *Lycurgus*, the primary subject. In the following sentence, *ipsi* refers to the subordinate, and *ipse* to the principal subject: *Cæsar ad præfectos—mittit qui nunciārent ne hostes prælio lacessĕrent; et si ipsi* (*præfecti*) *lacessĕrentur, sustinērent quoad ipse* (*Cæsar*) *accessisset.* Cæsar, B. G. IV, 11.

In the oblique cases, *ipse* hardly ever refers to the main subject (this being the proper office of *sui*), but to the subordinate, when that is to be expressed with emphasis, and distinguished from the primary or any other subject previously expressed; as, *Senātus dixit non sua negligentia, sed ipsius* (*Pompeji*) *subĭto adventu factum*, "The senate said that it happened not through any negligence on their part, but owing to his (Pompey's) sudden arrival." Instances, however, occur in which the oblique cases refer to the principal subject; but these are rare, and such as to create no ambiguity.

Note.—When joined with the personal pronouns *ĕgo*, *tu*, &c., used in a reflexive sense, and in an oblique case, *ipse* commonly agrees with the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, but is always to be translated with the oblique case, to which it adds the force of the word "self," or simply emphasis: thus (the subject being in the nominative), *se ipse* (not *ipsum*) *interfĕcit*, "he slew himself;" *mihi ipse* (not *ipsi*) *faveo*, "I favor myself;" *virtus est per se ipsa* (not *ipsam*) *laudabilis*,—with the accusative as a subject; *crēdis mihi ipsum* (not *ipsi*) *favēre*. Yet, when, for the word in the oblique case, special emphasis is required by antithesis or other cause, *ipse* is put in the case of the pronoun; as, *Alios ămas, te ipsum* (not *ipse*) *odisti*, "Others thou lovest, THYSELF thou hatest." 282.

3d. *Is*, *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, without a substantive, in all genders, are used as pronouns of the third person, and are all rendered *he*, *she*, or *it*, as the word which they represent may require. In the nominative, they are applicable equally to the main or to the subordinate subject; but in the oblique cases, with few exceptions, they refer to the subordinate only. It must be carefully noticed, however, that though often rendered by the same term in English, still each word has its own specific meaning and use, as follows:

Is simply refers to some person or thing mentioned before, and is less

emphatic and distinctive than any of the other terms. Before *qui* (*is qui*, he who), it refers to the person or thing described in the relative clause, and, in this construction, is often understood.

Hic is used in reference to objects which are nearest to the speaker Hence, as nothing is nearer to the speaker than himself, *hic hŏmo*, "this man," is often the same as *ĕgo*. *Hic* is therefore called the demonstrative pronoun of the *first person*.

Iste refers to the person spoken to, or to the things pertaining to, or connected with him. Thus, *iste lĭber*, means "that book of thine," or "thy book." Hence it is called the demonstrative of the *second person*. It is often used, like the English *thou*, as an expression of worthlessness or contempt. An. and Pr. Gr., 244.

Ille, in opposition to *hic*, refers to objects at a distance from the speaker, or to that about which he is speaking to another, and is called the demonstrative of the *third person*. As substantive pronouns, then, these three words may be thus distinguished:

Hic means "he," namely, this man near me, or just spoken of.

Iste means "he," namely, that man by you, or of whom you spoke.

Ille means "he," namely, that man at a distance, or formerly spoken of.

In the use of these pronouns, however, these distinctions are not always strictly observed; *ille* and *is* especially, are often used indiscriminately, and in the same sentence, apparently for the sake of euphony or variety of expression.

4. The personal pronouns are rendered emphatic by annexing the definite *ipse*, or the syllable *met* or *te*, separately or variously combined; as, *ĕgo ipse*, *egŏmet*, *tūte*, *tutĕmet*, *nosmet-ipsi*, &c. *Se*, the accusative and ablative of *sui*, is often doubled, as *sēse*. When the preposition *cum* is used with the ablative of the personal pronouns, it is commonly annexed; as, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *nobiscum*, &c.

5. In the accusative plural with *inter*, or after a transitive active verb, with *invĭcem*, *se* is used as a *reciprocal* pronoun; as, *Fratres inter se simĭles*, "Brothers like each other." *Brūtus et Aruns se invĭcem occidērunt*, "Brutus and Aruns slew each other."

---

§ 29. ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

119.—ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS are words used sometimes like adjectives, to qualify a substantive;

and sometimes like pronouns, to stand instead of nouns. They are declined with three genders, to agree with substantives in these accidents.

120.—Adjective Pronouns may be divided into *Possessive*, *Demonstrative*, *Definite*, *Relative*, *Interrogative*, *Indefinite*, and *Patrial*.

---

§ 30. I. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

121—The POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS denote possession, and are derived from the substantive pronouns as follows:

Meus,	a,	um,	*my, my own,*	*from*	me.
Tuus,	a,	um,	*thy, thy own,*	"	tu.
Suus,	a,	um,	*his, her, its, his own,* &c.,	"	sui.
Noster,	tra,	trum,	*our, our own,*	"	nos.
Vester,	tra,	trum,	*your, your own,*	"	vos.

Obs. 1. In *signification*, possessive pronouns correspond to the genitive of their primitives, for which they may be considered as a substitute; thus, *frāter mei*, "the brother of me," and *meus frāter*, "my brother," mean the same thing, and hence they are often connected with, and may be rendered as, the genitive; as, suo *populique Romāni beneficio*, "by the kindness *of himself*, and of the Roman people." Cæs. Hence, also, the genitive of the adjective is often put with the possessive pronoun in any case qualifying the substantive implied in it; as, *tuo ipsius amīco*, "with thine own friend." *Mea unius opĕra*, "through the agency of me alone." *Vestra ipsōrum causa hoc fēci*, &c.;—and hence, also, a substantive in apposition with the possessive pronoun is put in the genitive; as, *tuum hominis simplĭcis pectus vidĭmus.*

Obs. 2. In *form*, possessive pronouns are regular adjectives of the first and the second declension. *Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus*, are declined like *bŏnus*, 98–1; except that *meus* has *mi*, seldom *meus*, in the vocative singular masculine. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *ater*, 98–3.

Obs. 3. *Suus*, like its primitive *sui* (113–8, Exc.), is used in a reflexive

sense, referring to the main subject of the sentence, and must be rendered into English in the gender and number of that subject, without regard to the noun with which it stands; thus, *suam rem familiārem perdidērunt*, "they squandered their property;" here *suam*, though singular, to agree with *rem*, must be rendered "their," because it refers to the plural subject of *perdidērunt*. *Illa* SUOS *fratres dilexit*, "she loved *her* brothers."

When the reference is not to the main subject, but to some other person or thing, the possessive is expressed in Latin, not by *suus*, but by the genitives of *ille, ipse, iste, is*, and *hic*; thus, *ejus rem familiārem rapuērunt*, "they plundered his property." *Suos amīcos ămat*, means "he loves his own friends;" *ejus amīcos ămat*, is "he loves his friends," meaning (not his own, but) the friends of some other person to whom *ejus* refers.

Obs. 4. The ablative singular of the possessive pronouns, especially *suo* and *sua*, frequently take the suffix *pte*, equivalent to the English word *own*; as, *suapte mănu*, "with his own hand;" and, in the same sense, all the cases of *suus* take the suffix *met*, usually followed by *ipse*; as, *Hannĭbal, suāmet ipse fraude captus, abiit*, "Hannibal, being foiled by his own device, departed."

---

§ 31. II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

122.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are such as point out with precision a person or thing already known.

They are *hic*, this; *ille, iste, is*, that. They are declined as follows:

1. HIC, HÆC, HOC, *this;* Plural, *these.*

	Singular.			Plural.	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*N.* hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	*G.* hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,
D. huic,	huic	huic,	*D.* his,	his,	his,
Ac. hunc,	hanc,	hŏc	*Ac.* hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*V.* hi,	hæ,	hæc,
Ab. hoc,	hac,	hoc,	*Ab.* his,	his,	his.

Note.—Some suppose that the original form of this pronoun was *hice, hæce, hoce*, some cases of which still remain; that the present form was attained by dropping final *e*, and that this, and not *hicce, hæcce*, &c., is the proper emphatic form of the word. It is certain, however, that most writers and grammarians prefer the double *c*, as *hicce*, &c. See Obs. 3.

2. ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD, *that;* Plural, *those.*

	Singular.			Plural.	
	Masc	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ille,	illa,	illud,	illi,	illæ,	illa,
G.	illīus,	illīus,	illīus,*	illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D.	illi,	illi,	illi,	illis,	illis,	illis,
Ac.	illum,	illam,	illud,	illos,	illas,	illa,
V.	ille,	illa,	illud,	illi,	illæ,	illa,
Ab.	illo,	illā,	illo,	illis,	illis,	illis.

Note.—Virgil has *olli*, as a dative singular, and nominative plural; and Cicero, in an antique formula, has *olla* and *ollos*, from an ancient form *ollus*.

Iste, "that," is declined like *ille*.

3. IS, EA, ID, *that;* Plural, *those.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	is,	eă,	id,	ii,	eæ,	eă,
G.	ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D.	ei,	ei,	ei,	iis *or* eis,	iis *or* eis,	iis *or* eis,
Ac.	eum,	eam,	id,	eos,	eas,	eă,
V.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Ab.	eo,	eā,	eo,	iis *or* eis,	iis *or* eis,	iis *or* eis.

4. From *is*, and the syllable *dem*, is formed *ĭdem*, *ĕădem*, *ĭdem*, "the same," which is thus declined:

	Singular.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ĭdem,	eădem,	ĭdem,
G.	ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem,
D.	eidem,	eidem,	eidem,
Ac.	eundem,	eandem,	ĭdem,
V.	ĭdem,	eădem,	ĭdem,
Ab.	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.
	Plural.		
N.	iīdem,	eædem,	eădem,
G.	eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
D.	eisdem, *or* iisdem, &c.,		
Ac.	eosdem,	easdem,	eădem,
V.	iīdem,	eædem,	eădem,
Ab.	eisdem, *or* iisdem, &c.		

* See 98, *Note* 2.

123.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. When two persons or things are spoken of, *ille* refers to the former, and *hic* to the latter. This order, however, is sometimes reversed. When three are spoken of, *ille* refers to the first; *iste*, to the intermediate; and *hic*, to the last.

2. *Hic* means "this," referring to something near the speaker or just spoken of. *Ille*, "that," refers to something at a distance or before spoken of; sometimes to what is well known and celebrated, and therefore regarded as present; as, *Medea illa*, "the well known Medea:" *Alexander ille*, "the illustrious Alexander." *Iste*, "that," refers to something near, or belonging to, or some way connected with the person spoken to.

a. *Is*, "that," is less precise in its reference than the other demonstratives. It commonly refers simply to a person or thing as mentioned before.—Sometimes it points out that which is to be further described in a relative clause; as, *ea legiōne quam sēcum habēbat*, "with that legion which he had with him."—Sometimes after *et*, *atque*, *que*, and in a negative clause after *nec*, it is used to show that the noun referred to receives an additional predicate; as, *in ūna dŏmo, et ea quĭdem angusta*, "in one house, and that, too, a small one:" *Adolescentes alĭquot, nec ii tenui lŏco orti*, "some young men, and these not of humble origin." The neuter (*et id, idque*) is used when the proposition itself receives an addition, and may be rendered "and that too," "especially," equivalent to the Greek *καὶ ταῦτα*.

b. *Is* (and sometimes *hic* and *ille*), before *ut* or *qui*, has the sense of *tālis*, "such;" as, *nĕque tu is es qui* (or *ut*) *quid sis nescias*, "neither art thou such a one as not to know what thou art."

c. *Īdem*, agreeing with the subject, but without a substantive, connects emphatically two predicates which belong to the same subject, and, when the predicates are similar, may be rendered "also," "and also;" as, *Cicĕro orātor ĕrat idemque philosŏphus*, "Cicero was an orator and also a philosopher;" *Vĭros fortes eosdem bŏnos esse volŭmus*, "we wish brave men to be also good." When the predicates are opposite, *idem* is translated by "yet," "and yet;" as, *hoc dīcit, nĕgat īdem i'lud*, "he affirms this, yet (*or*, and yet) he denies that."

3. *Hic*, and some cases of the other demonstratives, are

rendered emphatic by adding *ce;* as, *hicce, hujusce, huncce,* &c. When *ne* interrogative is also added, *ce* is changed into *ci;* as, *hiccine, hosccine,* &c. 122. *Note.*

4. From *ille* and *iste* with *hic*, are formed the compounds *illic* and *isthic* or *istic*, used in some of the cases for *ille* and *iste*, but with greater emphasis. Those parts only are in use which end in *c*, as follows:

Istic is thus declined:

	Singular.			Plural.	
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		*Neut.*
N.	istic,	istæc,	istoc, *or* istuc,	*N.* *Ac.*	istæc.
Ac.	istunc,	istanc,	istoc, *or* istuc,		
Ab.	istoc,	istac,	istoc,		

Illic is declined in the same manner.

---

§ 32. III. THE DEFINITE PRONOUN.

124.—The Definite Pronoun *ipse* is used to give a closer or more definite signification of a person or thing; as, *ad ipsam portam accessit,* "he came up to the gate itself;" *or* "to the very gate." It is thus declined:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ipse,	ipsă,	ipsum,	ipsī,	ipsæ,	ipsă,
G.	ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum,
D.	ipsi,	ipsi,	ipsi,	ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis,
Ac.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,	ipsos,	ipsas,	ipsă,
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	ipso,	ipsā,	ipso,	ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis.

---

§ 33. IV. RELATIVE PRONOUN.

125.—A RELATIVE PRONOUN is one that relates to, and connects its clause with, a noun or pronoun before it, called the antecedent.

The simple relative *qui* is thus declined:

QUI, QUÆ, QUOD, *who, which, that.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	qui,	quæ,	quod,	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	queis, *or* quĭbus, &c.,		
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quǫd,	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	quō,	quā,	quō,	queis, *or* quĭbus, &c.		

Note.—Quis and *queis* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative, instead of *quibus*. *Cui* is commonly regarded as one long syllable, but is sometimes used as two short ones (*cŭi*); so also the dative singular *huic*, or *hŭic*. 122–1.

(For the construction of the relative, see § 99.)

Obs. 1. *Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular in all genders, seldom for the plural. To all forms of the ablative, *cum* is frequently annexed; as, *quōcum, quibuscum*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quicunque*, or *quicumque*, and *quīvis*, also used as relatives (293, Obs. 7), are declined like *qui*.

---

§ 34. V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

126.—The INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN is used in asking a question; as, *Quis fēcit?* "Who did it?"

The interrogatives are:

Quisnam? Quis? Qui? Quīnam? } *who? what? which? what?*

Ecquis? Ecquisnam? Numquis? } *is any one?*

Cujus? *whose?*

Cujas? *of what country?*

The simple interrogative *quis* is thus declined:

QUIS, QUÆ, QUOD, or QUID? *Who, which, what?*

	Singular.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quis *or* qui,	quæ,	quid *or* quod,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quid *or* quod,
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	quō,	quā,	quō,

	Plural.	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D. queis *or* quĭbus, &c.,		
Ac. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. ——	——	——
Ab. queis *or* quĭbus, &c.		

(For the inflection of the compound interrogatives, see 131–1 and 2.)

127. OBSERVATIONS.

1. All interrogative pronouns used in a dependent clause, and without a question, are *indefinites* (128); as, *nescio quis sit*, "I know not who he is." In this sense, *qui* is often used for *quis* for the sake of euphony, when the following word begins with an *s;* as, *qui sit apĕrit*, "he shews who he is." So also such adjectives as *quantus*, *quālis*, &c.

2. The interrogative *quis* is commonly used as a substantive without a noun following it; *qui*, as an adjective before a noun. *Quis* means "what man?" or "Who?" and applies to both sexes;—*qui* means "which man," and has its feminine *quæ*. This distinction, however, is often disregarded, especially as mentioned in Obs. 1. But, in the neuter gender, *quid* is always used as a substantive, and governs its noun in the genitive; as, *Quid facinŏris commīsit?* "What crime has he committed?" Whereas, *quod* is always used as an adjective, and agrees with its noun; as, *Quod facĭnus commīsit?*

Note.—Quid is often used elliptically thus: *Quid?* "why?" is for *propter quid?*—As an interrogative interjection at the beginning of a sentence, *Quid?* is for *Quid ais? Quid censes?* So also the expressions *Quid vĕro? Quid igĭtur? Quid ĕnim?* &c., are to be supplied. After *Quid postea? Quid tum?* supply *sequĭtur*. *Quid quod* may be supplied thus: *Quid dicam de eo quod?* "What shall I say about this, that, &c.?" With *Quid multa? Quid plăra?* &c., supply *dicam*, "Why should I say much?" &c.

3. *Cujus, a, um?* "whose?" used instead of the genitive of *quis*, is defective. The parts in use are as follows:

	Singular,		Plural.	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*
N. cujus,	cuja,	cujum,	*N.* cuji,	cujæ,
Ac. cujum,	cujam,	——	*Ac.* ——	cujas.
Ab. ——	cujā,	——		

4. *Cujas*, "of what country," is declined like an adjective of one termination (99–1). Nom. *cujas*, gen. *cujātis*, &c.

---

§ 35. VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

128.—The INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are such as denote persons or things indefinitely. Besides the interrogatives used indefinitely (127–1), they are:

Alĭquis, *some one.*	Quispiam, *some one.*
Sĭquis, *if any one.*	Unusquisque, *each one.*
Nĕquis, *lest any, no one.*	Quīdam, *a certain one.*
Quisque, *each one, every one.*	Quilĭbet, Quīvis, *any one you please.*
Quisquam, *any one.*	

(For the inflection of these, see 130–1, 2, 3.)

---

§ 36. VII. PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

129.—The Patrial Pronouns are those which have reference to one's country. They are *nostras*, "of our country;" *vestras*, "of your country." They are both adjectives of one termination. Nom. *nostras*, gen. *nostrātis*, &c. (99–1.)

---

§ 37. COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

130.—The Compound Pronouns all belong to some of the classes enumerated above.

131.—In the compounds of *qui* and *quis*, *qui* is always the first part of the word compounded; *quis* is sometimes the first part, and sometimes the last.

1. The compounds of *qui* are *quicumque*, "whoever," "whosoever;" *quīdam*, "some;" *quilĭbet*, *quīvis*, "any one," "whom you please." They are declined by adding the termination to the different cases and numbers of *qui*.

QUICUNQUE, *whoever, whosoever, whatsoever.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quicunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque,
G.	cujuscunque,	cujuscunque,	cujuscunque, &c.

Plural.

N.	quicunque,	quæcunque,	quæcunque,
G.	quorumcunque,	quarumcunque,	quorumcunque, &c.

So,

Quīdam,	quædam,	quiddam, *or* quoddam.
Quilībet,	quælībet,	quidlībet, *or* quodlībet.
Quīvis,	quævis,	quidvis, *or* quodvis.

Note.—Before *dam*, *m* is changed into *n;* as, *quendam*, *quorundam*, &c.

2. The compounds of *quis*, when *quis* is put first, are *quisnam?* "who?" *quispiam*, *quisquam*, "any one;" *quisque*, "every one;" and *quisquis*, "whoever, whosoever."

QUISNAM, *who, which, what?*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quisnam,	quænam,	quidnam, *or* quodnam,
G.	cujusnam,	cujusnam,	cujusnam,
D.	cuīnam,	cuīnam,	cuīnam,
Ac.	quemnam,	quamnam,	quidnam, *or* quodnam,
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	quōnam,	quānam,	quōnam.

Plural.

N.	quīnam,	quænam,	quænam,
G.	quorumnam,	quarumnam,	quorumnam,
D.	quibusnam,	quibusnam,	quibusnam,
Ac.	quosnam,	quasnam,	quænam,
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	quibusnam,	quibusnam,	quibusnam.

So decline:

Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quidpiam, *or* quodpiam.
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quidquam, *or* quodquam.
Quisque,	quæque,	quidque, *or* quodque.
Quisquis,	——	quidquid, *or* quicquid.

Obs. 1. *Quisquam* has *quenquam* in the accusative, without

the feminine. The plural is scarcely used; *quicque* is also used for *quidque*. *Quisquis*, "whoever," has no feminine termination except in the ablative; and the neuter, only in the nominative and accusative. It is used as an indefinite adjective pronoun; and also instead of *quīqui*, not in use, as a double relative of the same meaning as *quicunque*. 131–1. The following are the parts in use:

	Singular.	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. quisquis,	——	quidquid, *or* quicquid,
Ac. quemquem,	——	quidquid, *or* quicquid,
Ab. quōquo,	quāqua,	quōquo.

The plural has the nominative masculine *quīqui*, and the dative *quibusquībus*. *Quisquis* is sometimes used for the feminine.

3. The compounds of *quis*, when *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative singular feminine, and in the nominative and accusative plural neuter. These are:

Alĭquis, *some.*	Numquis, *whether any?*
Ecquis, *whether any?*	Sīquis, *if any.*
Nēquis, *lest any.*	

The last three are often written separately; as, *ne quis*, *num quis*, *si quis*. These pronouns are thus declined:

	Singular.	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. alĭquis,	alĭquă,	alĭquid, *or* alĭquod,
G. alicujus,	alicujus,	alicujus,
D. alĭcui,	alĭcui,	alĭcui,
Ac. alĭquem,	alĭquam,	alĭquid, *or* alĭquod,
V. alĭquis,	alĭqua,	alĭquid, *or* alĭquod,
Ab. alĭquō,	alĭquā,	alĭquō.
	Plural.	
N. alĭqui,	alĭquæ,	alĭqua,
G. aliquōrum,	aliquārum,	aliquōrum,
D. aliquĭbus,	aliquĭbus,	aliquĭbus,
Ac. alĭquos,	alĭquas,	alĭqua,
V. alĭqui,	alĭquæ,	alĭqua,
Ab. aliquĭbus,	aliquĭbus,	aliquĭbus.

Note.—*Ecquis* and *sīquis* have sometimes *qua* in the nominative singular feminine.

Obs. 2. Some of these are twice compounded; as, *ecquisnam, ecquænam, ecquidnam*, or *ecquodnam*, "who?" *unusquisque, unaquæque, unumquidque*, or *unumquodque*, "every one;" genitive *uniuscujusque*, &c. The former is scarcely declined beyond the nominative singular, and the latter wants the plural.

Obs. 3. All these compounds want the vocative, except *quisque, aliquis, quilibet*, and *quicunque*. They have seldom, if ever, *queis*, but *quibus* in the dative and the ablative plural.

---

§ 38. THE VERB.

132.—A VERB is a word used to express the *act*, *being*, or *state*, of its subject.

Obs. 1. The use of the verb, in simple propositions, is to affirm. That of which it affirms, is called its *subject*, and, if a noun or pronoun, it is usually in the nominative case. But when the verb is in the infinitive, its subject is put in the accusative.

1. Verbs are of two kinds, *Transitive*, and *Intransitive*.

Note.—These two classes comprehend all the verbs in any language. According to this division, *Transitive* verbs include those only which denote transitive action; i. e. action *passing over* from, or done by, one person or thing to another; and *Intransitive* verbs, those which have nothing transitive in their meaning, but which represent their subject in a certain state or condition, and nothing more. For this purpose, not only are the terms *Transitive* and *Intransitive* more expressive and appropriate than *Active* and *Neuter*, but their use relieves the term "Active," to be employed solely as the name of the form called the *Active Voice;* and the term "Neuter," to be appropriated to the gender of nouns.

2. A TRANSITIVE verb expresses an act done by one person or thing to another. It has two forms, called the *Active*, and the *Passive* voice. 135.

3. An INTRANSITIVE verb expresses *being*, or a *state of being*, or *action confined to the actor*. It is commonly without the passive form.

Obs. 2. The verbs that express *being* simply, in Latin, are *sum*, *fio*, *existo*, signifying, in general, "to be," or "exist." The state of being expressed by intransitive verbs may be a state of rest, as *dormio*, "I sleep;" or of motion, as *cădo*, "I fall;" or of action, as *curro*, "I run."

Obs. 3. The action expressed by an intransitive verb does not, like the action expressed by a transitive verb, *pass over* from the agent or actor to an object. It has no immediate relation to any thing beyond its subject, which it represents in a certain state or condition, and nothing more; and hence they may always be distinguished thus:—A transitive verb always requires an object to complete the sense; as, *ămo* TE, "I love *thee*;"—the intransitive verb does not, but the sense is complete without such an object; as, *sedeo*, "I sit;" *curro*, "I run."

Obs. 4. Many verbs considered intransitive in Latin, are translated by verbs considered transitive in English; as, *placeo*, "I please;" *obedio*, "I obey;" *crēdo*, "I believe;" &c.

Obs. 5. Many verbs are used sometimes in a transitive, and sometimes in an intransitive sense. Such are *fugio*, *inclīno*, *timeo*, &c.; as, *fŭge dextrum littus* (tr.), "avoid the right hand shore;" *tempus fŭgit* (intr.), "time flies;" *timeo Danaos* (tr.), "I dread the Greeks;" *timeo* (intr.), "I am afraid."—In some, the transitive and intransitive are distinguished by a difference in form and conjugation; thus, *jacio*, *jaceo; pendo*, *pendeo; albo*, *albeo; fŭgo*, *fugio; plāco*, *placeo; sēdo*, *sedeo;* &c.

Obs. 6. Verbs usually intransitive assume a transitive sense, when a word of signification similar to that of the verb itself is introduced as its object; as, *vivĕre vītam*, "to live a life;" *jurāre jusjurandum*, "to swear an oath."

Obs. 7. When we wish to direct the attention, not so much to any particular act of the subject of discourse, as to the employment or state of that subject, the object of the act—not being important—is omitted, and the transitive verb assumes the character of an intransitive; thus, in the sentence, *puer lĕgit*, "the boy reads," nothing more is indicated than the present state or employment of *puer*, "the boy," and the verb has obviously an intransitive sense: still, an object is necessarily implied, as he who reads must read something. But when we say *puer lĕgit Homērum*, "the boy reads Homer," the attention is directed to a particular act, terminating in a certain object, "*Homērum*," and the verb has its proper transitive sense.

§ 39. DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS.

133.—Though the division of verbs into *Transitive* and *Intransitive* comprehends all the verbs in any language, yet, from something peculiar in their form or signification, they are characterized by different names, expressive of this peculiarity. The most common of these are the following, viz: *Regular*, *Irregular*, *Deponent*, *Common*, *Defective*, *Impersonal*, *Redundant*, *Frequentative*, *Inceptive*, and *Desiderative*.

1. REGULAR VERBS are those in which the secondary parts are formed from the primary, according to certain rules. 184.

Note.—Under these are included *Transitive*, *Intransitive*, *Deponent*, and *Common* verbs belonging to the four conjugations.

2. IRREGULAR VERBS are those in which some of the secondary parts are not formed from the primary, according to rule. 221.

3. DEPONENT VERBS under a passive form have an active signification. 207–1.

4. COMMON VERBS under a passive form have an active or passive signification. 207–2.

5. DEFECTIVE VERBS are those in which some of the parts are wanting. 222.

6. IMPERSONAL VERBS are used only in the third person singular. 223.

7. REDUNDANT VERBS have more than one form of the same part. 225.

8. FREQUENTATIVE VERBS express repeated action. 227–1.

9. INCEPTIVE VERBS mark the beginning or continued increase of an action. 227–2.

10. DESIDERATIVE VERBS denote desire or intention of doing. 227–3. The three last are always derivatives. 226.

§ 40. INFLECTION OF VERBS.

134.—To the inflection of Verbs belong *Voices*, *Moods*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

1. The Voices, in Latin, are two, *Active* and *Passive*.

2. The Moods are four, the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

3. The Tenses are six, the *Present*, *Imperfect*, *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, *Future*, and *Future-Perfect*.

4. The Numbers are two, *Singular* and *Plural*.

5. The Persons are three, *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

6. Besides these, to the Verb belong, *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*.

7. The Conjugation of a verb is the arrangement of its different moods, tenses, &c., according to a certain order. Of these, in Latin, there are four, called the *First*, *Second*, *Third*, and *Fourth Conjugations*. 184–1—3.

Obs. A few verbs in Latin are of more than one conjugation, and a few have some of their parts belonging to one conjugation, and others to another.

---

§ 41. VOICE.

135.—Voice is a particular form of the verb which shows the relation of the *subject*, or thing spoken of, to the action expressed by the verb.

The transitive verb, in Latin, has two voices, called the *Active* and the *Passive*.

1. The Active Voice represents the subject of

the verb as acting on some object; as, *ămo te*, "I love thee."

2. The PASSIVE VOICE represents the subject of the verb as acted upon; as, *amātur*, "he is loved."

136.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. In both voices, the act expressed by the verb is the same, but differently related to the subject of the verb. In the *active* voice, the subject is the actor; in the *passive*, it is acted upon, as in the above examples. Hence, the same idea may be expressed with equal propriety in either voice, by simply changing the object of the active voice into the subject of the passive: thus, by the active voice, *Cæsar vīcit Galliam*, "Cæsar conquered Gaul;" by the passive, *Gallia victa est a Cæsăre*, "Gaul was conquered by Cæsar."

This property of the transitive verb, enables the speaker or writer not only to vary his form of expression at pleasure, but also, by means of the passive form, to direct the attention to the *act* and the *object* acted upon, when the actor either is unknown, or, it may be, unimportant or improper to be mentioned: thus, "America *was discovered* and *inhabited* before the days of Columbus." So also the attention may be directed by means of the active voice to the act and the actor, without regard to the object. See 132, Obs. 7.

2. Intransitive verbs, from their nature, do not admit a distinction of voice. They are generally in the form of the active voice, but are frequently used in the third person singular, passive form, as impersonal verbs. 223–3. Deponent intransitives, however, have the form of the passive.

3. The passive voice, in Latin, is often used in a sense similar to the middle voice in Greek; to express actively what its subject does *to*, or *for itself;* as, *dōnec pauci, qui prœlio superfuĕrant, paludĭbus* ABDERENTUR, "till the few who had survived the battle, *concealed themselves* in the marshes." TAC. The following are examples of the same kind: *Columba*—FERTUR *in arva vŏlans.* VIRG.—*Nunc spicŭla vertunt infensi; factâ parĭter nunc pace* FERUNTUR. Id.—*E scopŭlo multâ vix arte* REVULSUS—*rătem Sergestus agēbat.* Id.—*Quis ignōrat, ii, qui mathematĭci vocantur, in quantâ obscuritāte rērum*—VERSENTUR. CIC.—*Cum igĭtur vehementius* INVEHERETUR *in causam princi-*

pum consul Philippus. Id.—*Cum omnes in omni genĕre scelĕrum* VOLUTENTUR. Id.

> Circumdat nequidquam humĕris, et inutĭle ferrum
> CINGĬTUR, ac densos FERTUR moritūrus in hostes. VIRG.

In all such constructions, the words "*a se*" may be understood after the verb.

§ 42. MOODS.

137.—MOOD is the *mode* or *manner* of expressing the signification of the verb.

138.—The moods, in Latin, are four; namely, the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

139.—I. The INDICATIVE MOOD asserts the action or state expressed by the verb, simply as a fact, and generally in an independent clause; as, *scrībo*, "I write;" *tempus fŭgit*, "time flies."

140.—*Obs.* 1. The indicative mood is sometimes used in dependent clauses with *si*, *nĭsi*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi*, to assert a fact as a condition or supposition; as, *si quid melius hăbes, arcesse.* Or with *ut* or *quum*, "when," signifying time past; as, *Tempus fuit quum homĭnes vagabantur. Ut inquināvit ære tempus aureum.* HOR.

141.—*Obs.* 2. The indicative followed by *si non*, *ni*, *nĭsi*, is sometimes used potentially, to express, not what did take place, but what would have taken place if something else had not happened; as, *Tĕnus Ægyptum penetrāvit, nĭsi exercĭtus sĕqui recusāsset*, "He would have penetrated as far as Ægypt, if the army had not refused to follow him." 624.

142.—II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD represents the action or state expressed by the verb, not as a fact, but only as a conception formed by the mind. It is generally used in dependent clauses in various ways, as follows:

1st. It represents the action or state expressed by it as *conditional* or *contingent.*

Thus used, it corresponds to the English subjunctive, or to the indicative used subjunctively (An. and Pr. Gr., 386); as, *si redeat, videbimus*, "if he return, we shall see him."

2d. It represents an action or state, as what *may, can, will; might, could, would*, or *should*, take place in certain circumstances.

Thus used, it corresponds to the English potential (An. and Pr. Gr., 380); as, *edimus ut vivāmus, non vivimus ut edāmus*, "we eat that we may live—not live that we may eat;" *signum dătum crederes*, "you would suppose that the signal had been given."

3d. It is used to express a fact in a dependent proposition, connected with the leading verb by an adverb, conjunction, relative, or indefinite term.

Thus used, it is commonly rendered by the indicative in English; as, *nescit qui sim*, "he knows not who I am."

143.—*Obs.* 3. The subjunctive mood is sometimes used in an independent proposition, in order to soften the assertion made; as, *Nēmo istud tibi concēdat*, "nobody probably would concede that to you." (625).

144.—*Obs.* 4. The subjunctive is used also in independent propositions, to express a wish, desire, or command; as, *utinam sapĕres*, "O that thou wert wise;" *quod bĕne vertat*, "may it turn out well;" *sic eat*, "thus let her go;" *faciās*, "do it." See Obs. 5.

145.—*Obs.* 5. When this mood is used in independent propositions, in a potential, optative, or imperative sense, still it ought to be regarded as strictly subjunctive, having the primary or leading clause evidently understood, on which the meaning of the mood in each case depends. Thus, "I may write," *licet mihi ut*, or *est ut scribam;* "I shall, or will write," *futūrum est*, or *ĕrit ut scribam;* "I should write," *oportet, æquum est ut*, or *est cur scribĕrem;* "I should have written," *oportĕbat*, &c., *ut scripsissem;* "O that they were wise," *peropto utinam sapĕrent;* "may it turn out well,"

prĕcor quod bĕne vertat; "do it," *fac ut facias;* "let me do it," *sĭne ut faciam*, &c.

Hence, it follows that the particular English auxiliary by which this mood should be translated, depends, not upon the form of the Latin verb, seeing *scribĕrem* for example, means equally, "I might, could, would, or should write," but upon the ellipsis to be supplied. What this is, must always be gathered from the connection and sense of the passage.

146.—*Obs.* 6. From these observations, it will be manifest that the Latin subjunctive is in much more extensive use than either the subjunctive and potential mood in English, or the subjunctive and optative mood in Greek. Indeed, the proper use and management of this mood, constitute one of the greatest difficulties in this language. For the construction of this mood, see § 139.

147.—*Obs.* 7. When the ideas of *liberty*, *power*, *will*, *obligation*, *duty*, &c., involved in the auxiliaries *may*, *can*, *will*, *shall*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, &c., are to be expressed in an absolute, independent, and emphatic manner, the subjunctive mood is not used, but separate verbs expressing these ideas in the indicative mood. These are such as *lĭcet*, *vŏlo*, *nōlo*, *possum*, *debeo*, &c., thus:

We will go,	*Ire volŭmus.*
They will not go,	*Ire nōlunt.*
I may come,	*Mihi venīre lĭcet.*
I can read,	*Legĕre possum.*
Thou shouldst read,	*Legĕre dēbes.* *Tĭbĭ legendum est.* *Te legĕre oportet.*
It might have been done, (*absolutely* and sometimes *contingently.*)	*Fĭĕri potuit.*

148.—*Obs.* 8. The future indicative is frequently used in dependent and hypothetical clauses, and consequently in a subjunctive sense; as, *si jubēbis făciam*, "if you order me, I will do it;" equivalent to *si jubeas*, &c.

149.—III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits; as, *scrībe*, "write thou;" *īto*, "let him go."

150.—*Obs.* 9. The present subjunctive is very often used instead of the imperative, especially in forbidding, after *ne*,

nēmo, nullus, &c.; as, *valeas*, "farewell;" *ne noceas puĕro*, "hurt not the boy." Obs. 4 and 5. Besides this, the future and future perfect indicative, and the perfect subjunctive, are also used imperatively. See 167–1, 169–3, and 173–4.

151.—*Obs.* 10. The imperative mood has two forms in the second person, both singular and plural, distinguished in their meaning as present and future. The first, or shorter form commands to do presently; as, *scrībe*, "write now;"—the second, or longer form commands to do afterwards, or when something else shall have been done; as, *scribīto*, "write hereafter." This distinction, however, is not always observed.

152.—IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD expresses the meaning of the verb in a general manner, without any distinction of person or number; as, *scribĕre*, "to write;" *scripsisse*, "to have written;" *scrībi*, "to be written."

---

§ 43. TENSES.

153.—TENSES are certain forms of the verb which serve to point out the distinctions of time.

154.—Time is naturally divided into the *Present*, *Past*, and *Future;* and an action may be represented either as *incomplete* and *continuing*, or as *completed* at the time spoken of. This gives rise to six tenses, which are expressed in Latin by distinct forms of the verb; thus,

PRESENT.	Action continuing; as, *scrībo*, "I write, I am writing."	*Present.*
	Action completed; as, *scripsi*, "I have written."	*Perfect.*
PAST.	Action continuing; as, *scribēbam*, "I was writing."	*Imperfect.*
	Action completed; as, *scripsĕram*, "I had written."	*Pluperfect.*
FUTURE.	Action continuing; as, *scrībam*, "I shall or will write."	*Future.*
	Action completed; as, *scripsĕro*, "I shall have written."	*Fut.-Perf.*

155.—In order better to express the time and the state of the action by one designation, these tenses, arranged in this order, might properly be denominated the *Present*, the *Present-perfect;* the *Past*, the *Past-perfect;* the *Future*, and the *Future-perfect.* An. and Pr. Gr. 400.

§ 44. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

156.—The tenses of the indicative mood, in Latin, are six: the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, the *Pluperfect*, the *Future*, and the *Future-perfect*.

157.—I. The PRESENT tense expresses what is going on at the present time; as, *scrībo*, "I write," or "I am writing;" *dŏmus ædificātur*, "the house is building."

This tense is rendered with all the variety of the present tense in English; as, *I write, do write, am writing;*—interrogatively, *do I write? am I writing?* Like the English present also it is used:

1. To express what is habitual or always true; as, QUI *cĭto dat, bis dat*, "HE who gives promptly, gives twice."

2. To express a general custom, if still existing; as, *ăpud Parthos signum dătur tympăno*, "among the Parthians, the signal is given by the drum."

3. In historical narration, it is used with great effect for the past tense, to represent a past event as if it were present before us; thus (LIVY), *dicto parŭēre, desiliunt ex ĕquis, provŏlant in prīmum*, &c., "they obeyed, they dismount, they fly forward to the front," &c.

4. To denote an action which has continued for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bella gĕro*, "for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war." Also after *dum* it is used to express a past event which had some continuance; as, *dum in Sicilia sum, nulla statua dejecta est*, "so long as I was in Sicily," &c.

5. With certain adverbs of time, it is sometimes used, as in English, to denote what is yet future; as, *quam mox navigo Ephĕsum*, "as soon as I sail, *or* shall sail, for Ephesus."

6. In the passive voice, the present tense represents its subject as at present acted upon, or as the object of an action present and continuing, and is usually rendered into English by the verb *to be*, and the perfect participle, as *amātur*, "he is loved," and this rendering will always be correct when the

English verb in the present passive expresses *continuance;* as, *he his loved, feared, hated, respected,* &c.

158.—*Obs.* But there are many verbs in which this rendering of the present would be incorrect, as it does not express the present receiving of an action, but rather the present and continuing *effect* of an act, which act itself is now past. In all such cases, it is more properly the rendering of the *perfect* than of the *present,* and it is often so used. Thus, *domus ædificāta est; ŏpus peractum est; epistŏla scripta est,* may be properly rendered, "the house is built;" "the work is finished;" "the letter is written;" because in the English, as well as in Latin, the building of the house, the finishing of the work, and the writing of the letter, are represented as acts now past, and which are present only in their effects. The proper rendering of such verbs in the present passive, in English, is by the verb *to be,* and the present participle in *ing* in the passive sense; thus, *dŏmus ædificātur,* "the house is building;" *ŏpus peragĭtur,* "the work is finishing;" *epistŏla scribĭtur,* "the letter is writing." When this mode of expression is not authorized, and when the other would be improper, it will be necessary to express the precise idea of the present by some other form of expression. See An. and Pr. Eng. Gr., App. V, I and II, p. 235.—Principles of Eng. Gr., App. XIX, p. 211.

159.—II. The IMPERFECT tense represents an action or event as passing and still unfinished at a certain time past, expressed or implied; as, *dŏmum ædificābat,* "he was (then) building a house;" *ībam forte viâ sacrâ,* "I was accidentally (viz. at the time spoken of,) going along the *via sacra.*"

160.—This tense, strictly speaking, corresponds to the past-progressive in English (An. and Pr. Eng. Gr., 474–2.—Principles of Eng. Gr., 199–2). It is often rendered, however, by the past tense in its ordinary form, and should always be so, when the verb expresses a *continued* act or state; as, *amābat,* "he loved;" *timēbat,* "he feared." It is used in a variety of ways, as follows:

1. It is used to denote what was usual or customary at some past time; as, *scribēbam,* "I was accustomed to write."

2. It is used to denote an action which had existed for some time, and was still existing at a certain past time; as, *tot an-*

nos bella gerēbam, "for so many years I had been, and then still was waging war."

3. Sometimes it denotes an action desired, intended, or attempted, but not accomplished; as, *Porsĕna eum terrēbat*, "Porsena *attempted to frighten* him."

4. It is sometimes used hypothetically, instead of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive; as, *anceps certamen erat, nĭsi equĭtes supervenissent*, "the battle would have been doubtful, unless, &c." 141, and 624–5.

5. The same observations made in 158, in reference to the present passive, are applicable in all their extent to the imperfect; as, *amabātur*, "he was loved;" *dŏmus ædificabātur*, "the house was building," not "was built," nor "was being built;" *ŏpus peragebātur*, "the work was finishing," &c.

161.—III. The PERFECT tense is used in two different senses, *Definite* and *Indefinite*.

162.—The *Perfect-definite* represents an action or event as completed at the present time, or in a period of time of which the present forms a part; as, *scripsi*, "I have written;" *hujus ad memoriam nostram monumenta mansērunt duo*, "two monuments of him have remained to our time."

163.—The *Perfect-indefinite* represents an action or event simply as past; as, *scripsi*, "I wrote."

164.—The first, or *Perfect-definite*, corresponds to the English present perfect (An. and Pr. Gr., 407);—the second, or *Perfect-indefinite*, corresponds to the English past tense (An. and Pr. Gr., 415). In this sense, it is commonly used in historical narratives like the Greek aorist; thus, *Cæsar exercĭtum finĭbus Italiæ admōvit, Rubĭcon transiit, Rōmam occupāvit*, "Cæsar marched his army," &c.

1. This tense, used indefinitely, is sometimes coupled with the imperfect, the former denoting a transitory, the latter a continued action; thus, *Conticuēre omnes, intentīque ōra* TENEBANT, "All were silent, and with eager attention *kept their eyes fixed* upon him." VIRG.

2. It is sometimes used like the present, to express what is

true at any time; thus, *Fēlix qui potuit rērum cognoscĕre causas*, "Happy that man who was able to investigate the causes of things!" VIRG.

3. It is sometimes used in the sense of the pluperfect, viz. in narratives after such conjunctions as *postquam*, *ŭbi*, *ŭbi prīmum*, *ut* (when), *ut prīmum*, *quum*, *quum prīmum*, *sīmul ut*, *sīmul ac*, &c., having the general meaning of the English "as soon as," when followed by a verb denoting past time; as, *Quæ postquam evolvit—ligāvit*, "After he had separated these things,—he bound them," &c. OVID.

4. It is also used poetically for the imperfect and the pluperfect of the subjunctive; as, *nec vēni*, *nīsi*, &c., "nor would I have come, unless," &c. (141, and 624–5.)

5. In the passive form, this tense is compound, consisting of the perfect participle of the verb, and the present or perfect tense of *sum* as an auxiliary; as, *amātus sum*, or *amātus fui*, "I have been loved."

Note.—In all compound tenses, the participle must be in the same gender and number with the nominative to the verb.

165.—IV. The PLUPERFECT tense represents an action as completed at, or before, a certain past time expressed or implied; as, *scripsĕram*, "I had written."

166.—This tense corresponds to the past-perfect in English, and is rendered by it. It bears the same relation to the perfect, that the imperfect does to the present.

1. The pluperfect is sometimes used, especially by the poets, for the perfect indicative, and also for the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *dixĕram a principio*, *ut de republĭcâ silerētur*, CIC., "I have said from the beginning," &c.; *Si mens non læva fuisset*, IMPULERAT, &c., VIRG., "*he would have impelled.*" (141, & 624–5.) The same idiom is found in English, "*he had impelled*," for "he would have impelled."

2. In the passive form, this tense, like the perfect, is compound, consisting of the perfect participle, and the imperfect or pluperfect of *sum* used as an auxiliary; as, *amātus ĕram*, or *amātus fuĕram*, "I had been loved."

Note.—In these compound forms, the participle seems to be considered sometimes as little different from an adjective. In such cases, *sum* becomes the verb, and is rendered by its own tense; as, *ŏpus peractum* EST, "the work *is* finished;" *finītus jam lăbor* ERAT, "the labor *was* now finished."

167.—V. The FUTURE tense expresses what will take place in *future time;* as, *scrībam*, "I shall, *or* will write."

1. This tense is sometimes used in the sense of the imperative; as, *līques vīna*, "filtrate the wine." HOR.

2. The participle in *rus*, with the verb *sum*, is frequently used instead of the future, especially if purpose or intention is signified; as, *scriptūrus sum*, "I am going to write." (214–8.)

3. In the passive voice, the future tense expresses the future enduring of an act that will be going on hereafter; as, *dŏmus ædificabĭtur*, "the house will be building."

168.—VI. The FUTURE-PERFECT intimates that an action or event will be completed at, or before, a certain time yet future; as, *scripsĕro*, "I shall have written;" viz, at, or before, some future time or event.

1. This tense, sometimes called the future subjunctive, properly belongs to the indicative mood, both in signification and construction. For the future subjunctive, see 170–1.

2. Though the proper rendering of this tense be *shall have*, yet, generally, the *have*, or the *shall*, and frequently both, are omitted; as, *qui Antonium oppressĕrit, is bellum confecĕrit*, "he who shall cut off Antony, shall put an end to the war."

3. This tense is also used imperatively; as, *memĭnĕris tu*, "remember thou;" *ille viděrit*, "let him see to it."

4. The future perfect, in the passive voice, has two forms, made up of the perfect participle, and *ĕro*, or *fuĕro*. The first denotes the enduring of an act that will be completed in future time indefinitely; as, *dŏmus ædificāta ĕrit*, "the house will be built;" the second denotes the enduring of an act to be completed at, or before, a certain future time; as, *dŏmus ædificāta fuĕrit*, "the house will have been built."

---

§ 45. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

169.—The tenses of the subjunctive mood are the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, and the *Pluperfect*.

170.—1. There is no distinct form of a future in the subjunctive; all the tenses of this mood sometimes incline to a future signification. But, when a future subjunctive is required, the future participle in *rus*, with the verb *sum* in the subjunctive present, is used; as, *haud dubĭto quin factūrus sit*, "I doubt not that he will do it."

2. The tenses of the subjunctive mood, in Latin, like those of the potential, in English, are much less definite, in respect of time, than the tenses of the indicative, being modified by the time and meaning of the verbs, with which they stand connected.

3. All the tenses of the subjunctive mood, are often rendered like the corresponding tenses of the indicative, 142, 1st. and 3d.

171.—I. The PRESENT subjunctive is generally rendered by *may* or *can*, expressing present liberty, or ability; as, *scrībam*, "I may write." But,

1. This tense is often used in the sense of the imperative mood, to express a command, entreaty, or exhortation; as, *ămem*, "let me love." This use is commonly elliptical, 144, and 145.

2. After *quăsi*, *tanquam*, and the like, it is sometimes rendered as the imperfect, or perfect indefinite of the indicative; as, *quăsi intellĭgant*, "as if they understood."

3. When a question is asked, it is frequently rendered as the indicative; as, *Ĕlŏquar an sileam?* "shall I speak, or be silent?" Sometimes by *should;* as, *singŭla quid refĕram*, "why should I relate every thing?" Sometimes by *would;* as, *In facĭnus jurāsse pŭtes*, "you would think they had sworn to commit wickedness."

172.—II. The IMPERFECT subjunctive is commonly rendered by the signs *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*, expressing past *liberty*, *power*, *will*, or *obligation;* as, *scribĕrem*, "I might, could, would, *or* should write."

1. This tense may relate either to what is past, or present, or future; as, *si fāta fuissent ut cadĕrem*, "if my destiny had been that I should fall;" *si possem, sanior essem*, "If I could, I

would be wiser;" *post hæc præcipĭtem dărem*, "afterwards, I would throw him down headlong."

2. Sometimes, the imperfect is rendered as the pluperfect; as, *si quis dicĕret, nunquăm putārem*, &c., "if any one had said it, I never would have thought," &c.

3. After a verb or clause denoting hindrance, the subjunctive imperfect, and sometimes the present, with *quōmĭnus, ne*, may often be rendered by *from* with the present participle; as,

Si te tua infirmĭtas valetudĭnis tenuit, QUO MINUS *ad lūdos* VENIRES, "If your weak state of health has prevented you *from coming to* the games." So, *Ne quis impedīrētur* QUO MINUS *ejus rēbus* FRUERETUR, "That no one might be hindered from enjoying," &c. NEP.—*Impedītus ne portāret*, "Being hindered from carrying." SALL. Jug., 39.—*Me impedĭet quo mĭnus—vestrum jus defendam*, "Shall hinder me from defending your right." CIC.

4. In historical narration, after *ut* or *quum* (*cum*), "when," or other words denoting time, the imperfect subjunctive is translated like the perfect indefinite or aorist; or, when it expresses a continued action, like the perfect indicative; as, *cum ab his quærĕret*, "when he inquired of these;" *cum id ultro pollicerētur*, "since of his own accord he promised that;" *cum summus mons tenerētur*, "when the top of the mountain was occupied."

173.—III. The PERFECT subjunctive is used to denote an act or event spoken of as already past, or which will be past at some future time, but about which there is at present some contingency or uncertainty, in the mind of the speaker.

This tense is commonly rendered by the signs *may have;* as, *fortasse scripsĕrim*, "perhaps I may have written," implying, "if so, I have at present forgotten it."

This general idea is expressed with much variety in English, according as the tense stands connected with other words in the sentence. This will be best explained by a few examples.

1. It is sometimes rendered like the present; as, *ut sic dixĕrim*, "that I may so speak." Sometimes like the imperfect; as, *ŭbi ĕgo audivĕrim?* "where should I have heard it?" *fortasse erravĕrim*, "perhaps I might be in an error."

2. This tense sometimes inclines very much to a future

signification, and is rendered by *should, would, could, can, will, shall;* as, *Citius crediděrim,* "I should sooner believe." Juv.—*Libenter audiěrim,* "I would gladly hear." Cic.—*Cicerōnem cuicunque eōrum facĭle opposuĕrim,* "I could easily match Cicero with any of them;"—*non facĭle dixĕrim,* "I cannot well tell;"—*nec tămen exclusĕrim alios,* "and yet I will not exclude others."—*Si paulŭlum mŏdo quid te fugĕrit, ĕgo periĕrim,* "If any thing however trifling escape you, I shall be undone." Ter.

3. After *quăsi, tanquam,* and the like, it is sometimes rendered by *had;* as, *quăsi affuĕrim,* "as if I had been present;" *perinde ac si jam vicĕrint,* "just as if they had already conquered."

4. It is sometimes used in concessions; as, *parta sit pecunia,* "suppose the money were gotten." Sometimes as the imperative, with the idea of urgency; as, *hæc dicta sint patrĭbus,* "let these things be told quickly to the fathers."

174.—IV. The Pluperfect subjunctive denotes an action or event contingent at some past time, but regarded as to be perfected before another action or time subsequent to it, and connected with it; as,

Quodcunque jussisset me factūrum esse dixi, "I said (then) that I would do whatever he should order." Here his *ordering* was contingent at the time referred to, (then); but it was to take place before the doing connected with it. So, *Id respondĕrunt se factūros esse, cum ille vento Aquilōne Lemnum venisset,* "They replied that they would do that, when he should return to Lemnos with a north wind." In such constructions, the leading verb is usually in the past tense, or in the present used for the past. It is variously rendered by *would, could, might, had, might have, could have, would have, should have,* or *ought to have;* as, *si jussisset, paruissem,* "if he had commanded, I would have obeyed." Hence, observe:

1. That though the action or state is often future in respect to the time of the leading verb, yet it is past with regard to the action or state dependent on it.

2. After *quum,* it is used in the sense of the pluperfect, to express an action antecedent to another past action connected with it; as, *Cæsar quum hæc dixisset, profectus est,* "when

Cæsar had said these things, he departed." Thus used, *quum*, with the pluperfect, may be elegantly rendered by the perfect participle in English; thus the above example may be rendered, "Cæsar, *having said* these things, departed."

§ 46. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

175.—The Imperative mood, in Latin, has only one tense, namely, the present. Still the act from the nature of this mood is necessarily future; as, *scribe*, "write thou." The command is present; the act commanded, future. Still the two forms of the second person mark a distinction of time. See 151, Obs. 10.

The other tenses used imperatively, are the future and future-perfect indicative, and the present and perfect subjunctive; which see.

§ 47. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

176.—The tenses of the Infinitive are four, the *Present*, the *Perfect*, and the *Future*, and, in the active voice, the *Future-perfect*.

In Latin, the tenses of the infinitive express its action as past, present, or future, not with regard to the present time, as in the other moods, but with regard to the time of the leading verb, on which it is dependent.

177.—The infinitive is used in two different ways; viz: without a subject, or with it.

178.—I. The infinitive without a subject, follows a verb, or adjective, and is always translated in the same way, whether the preceding verb be present, past, or future; thus:

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

Dicĭtur	*scribĕre*,	He is said to write, or to be writing (now).
"	*scripsisse*,	" to have written (now).
"	*scriptūrus esse*,	" to be about to write (now).
"	*scriptūrus fuisse*,	" to have been about to write (before now).

PAST.

Dicebātur scrībĕre,	He was said to write, or to be writing (then).
" *scripsisse,*	" to have written, &c.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

Dŏmus dicĭtur ædificāri,	The house is said to be building (now).
" *ædificāta esse,*	" to be built (now).
" *ædificāta fuisse,*	" to have been built (before now).
" *ædificātum īri.*	" to be about to be built (now).

PAST.

Dŏmus dicebātur ædificāri, The house was said to be building (then), &c.

Note.—When the participle in *ing*, of the English verb, has not a passive sense, the present infinitive passive must be translated differently; as, *amāri*, "to be loved."

179.—II. The infinitive, with a subject, is usually translated by a distinct proposition, dependent on the preceding verb; and the translation of the same tense of the infinitive must differ according to the tense of the verb on which it depends, as follows:

1. The PRESENT Infinitive represents the action, or state, expressed by the verb, as present and going on at the time of the leading verb, and, consequently, must be rendered into English, in the time of the leading verb; as, *dicit se scribĕre*, "he says that he *is* writing;"—Pass., *dŏmum ædificāri*, "that the house *is* building;"—*dixit se scribĕre*, "he said that he *was* writing;"—Pass., *dŏmum ædificāri*, "that the house *was* building." As an exception, see No. 5 below.

2. The PERFECT Infinitive represents the action, or state, expressed by the verb, as past at the time of the leading verb, and must be rendered accordingly; i. e., after the present, by the English present-perfect, or past; as, *dicit se scripsisse*, "he says that he has written," or, "that he wrote;"—Pass., *dŏmum ædificātam esse*, "that the house is built;—*ædificātam fuisse*, "has been built:"—After a past tense (or the present used for the past, 143–3), by the English pluperfect; as, *dixit se scripsisse*, "he said that he *had* written."—Pass., by the imperfect, or pluperfect; as, *dŏmum ædificātam esse*, "that the house *was* built;" *ædificātam fuisse*, "*had been* built."

3. The FUTURE Infinitive represents the action, or state, expressed by the verb as future at the time of the leading

verb, and must be rendered accordingly; as, *dicit se scriptūrum esse*, "he says that he *will* write;"—Pass., *dŏmum ædificātum īri*, "that the house *will* be built;"—*dixit se scriptūrum esse*, "he said that he *would* write;"—Pass., *dŏmum ædificātum īri*, "that the house *would* be built." For all these, see 180.

4. The future infinitive active is compound, being made up of *esse*, or *fuisse*, and the participle in *rus*, agreeing in gender, number, and case, with the accusative before it, or with the nominative of the leading verb. With *esse*, it corresponds to the future indicative; with *fuisse*, to the future-perfect; as,

Dicit eos scriptūros esse,	He says that they will write.
Dixit se scriptūrum esse,	He said that he would write.
Dicit se scripturum fuisse,	He says that he would have written.
Dixit eam scriptūram fuisse,	He said that she would have written.
Dicĭtur scripturus esse,	He is said to be about to write.

Note 1.—*Esse* and *fuisse*, in the future infinitive, are generally understood; thus, *dixit se scriptūrum;* and so of others.

5. When the leading verb is in the future tense, the infinitive mood will be properly translated in its own tense, not in that of the leading verb; as, *dīcet se scrĭbĕre*, "he will say that he is writing," *dīcet se scripsisse*, "he will say that he has written;" *dīcet se scriptūrum esse*, "he will say that he will write;" *se scriptūrum fuisse*, "that he will have written." So also in the passive voice.

6. The perfect infinitive passive is made up of *esse* or *fuisse*, and the perfect participle in *us*, agreeing in gender, number and case with the accusative before it, or with the nominative of the leading verb, when that is in the passive voice; as, *dīcit lĭtĕras scriptas esse*, "he says that letters were written;" *lĭtĕræ dicuntur scriptæ esse*, "letters are said to have been written," &c. *Esse* and *fuisse* are sometimes understood. See Note 1 above.

7. The future infinitive passive is also a compound tense, consisting of the former supine, and *īri*, the present infinitive passive of *eo;* as, *scriptum īri*, "to be about to be written."

8. The future infinitive of deponent verbs (207) is made with *esse* or *fuisse*, and the participle in *rus*, as in the active voice (No. 4 above), and not like the future infinitive passive.

9. When the verb in the active voice has no supine, and consequently no participle in *rus*, there can, of course, be no future infinitive. In this case, the want of it is supplied by

the future infinitive of *sum;* viz. *futūrum esse*, or *fŏre* followed by *ut*, and the subjunctive in the present or imperfect, as the leading verb may require. Thus, *dixit fŏre ut lugĕret*, "he said that he would mourn;" *dicit fŏre ut lugeat*, "he says that he will mourn." 678.

Note 2.—This form of expression is often used in both the active and the passive voice, even when the verb has the regular form of the future infinitive.

10. *Fŏre*, the infinitive of *sum*, is used with all participles in *us;* as, *Commissum cum equitātu prœlio fŏre vidĕbat.* Cæs.—*Deinde addis, te fŏre ventūrum.* Cic.—*Mittendos fŏre legātos.* Liv.

11. The infinitive mood with a subject, i. e. with an accusative before it, is usually rendered as the indicative, the particle *that* being commonly placed before it. The following examples will illustrate the method of translating the different tenses of the infinitive, when preceded by the leading verb in present, past, or future time.

180.—INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

1 *Dicit me scribĕre,*	He says that I write, *or* am writing.
2 *Dixit me scribĕre,*	He said that I wrote, *or* was writing.
3 *Dicet me scribĕre,*	He will say that I am writing.
4 *Dicit me scripsisse,*	He says that I wrote, *or* did write.
5 *Dixit me scripsisse,*	He said that I had written.
6 *Dicet me scripsisse,*	He will say that I have written, *or* did write.
7 *Dicit me scriptūrum esse,*	He says that I will write.
8 *Dixit me scriptūrum esse,*	He said that I would write.
9 *Dicet me scriptūrum esse,*	He will say that I will write.
10 *Dicit me scriptūrum fuisse,*	He says that I would have written.
11 *Dixit me scriptūrum fuisse,*	He said that I would have written.
12 *Dicet me scriptūrum fuisse,*	He will say that I would have written.

INFINITIVE PASSIVE.

13 *Dicit litĕras scrībi,*	He says that letters are written, *or* writing.
14 *Dixit litĕras scrībi,*	He said that letters were written, *or* writing.
15 *Dicet litĕras scrībi,*	He will say that letters are written, *or* writing.
16 *Dicit litĕras scriptas esse,*	He says that letters are, *or* were written.
17 *Dixit litĕras scriptas esse,*	He said that letters were, *or* had been written.
18 *Dicet litĕras scriptas esse,*	He will say that letters are, *or* were written.

19 *Dicit litĕras scriptas fuisse*, He says that letters have been written.
20 *Dixit litĕras scriptas fuisse*, He said that letters had been written
21 *Dicet litĕras scriptas fuisse*, He will say that letters have been written.

22 *Dicit litĕras scriptum īri*, He says that letters will be written.
23 *Dixit litĕras scriptum īri*, He said that letters would be written.
24 *Dicet litĕras scriptum īri*, He will say that letters would be written.

Note 3.—When the preceding verb is of the imperfect, or pluperfect tense, the English of the infinitive is the same as when it is of the perfect indefinite, i. e. is the same as the infinitive after *dixit*, in the preceding table.

Note 4.—As the perfect definite (162) connects the action completed with the present time, the infinitive after it, in this sense, will generally be translated as it is after the present; as, DIXIT *me scribĕre*, —*scripsisse*, —*scriptūrum esse*, "*he has said* that I am writing,—was writing,—will write," i. e. as it is in Examples Nos. 1, 4, and 7. With *dixit* used *indefinitely*, the infinitive would be rendered as in Examples Nos. 2, 5, and 8.

Note 5.—Because memory always refers to something past, the infinitive present after *memini*, "I remember," is translated by the past tense; as, *memini me dicĕre*, "I remember that I said," (not "that I say"). *Memini me dixisse* is also a proper formula to express the same thing.

Exc. 1. When the present infinitive expresses that which is always true, it must be translated in the present, after any tense (157–1); as, *doctus ĕrat Deum gubernāre mundum*, "he had been taught that God *governs* the world."

Exc. 2. When the present infinitive expresses an act subsequent to the time of the governing verb, it is translated, after any tense, by the potential, with *should, would;* as, *necesse est* (*fuit, fŭĕrat*) *te īre*, "it is (was, had been) necessary that you should go."

181.—§ 48. NUMBER AND PERSON.

1. Every tense of the verb has two NUMBERS, the singular, and the plural, corresponding to the singular, and the plural of nouns and pronouns.

2. In each number, the verb has three PERSONS, called *first*, *second*, and *third*. The first asserts of the person speaking; the second, of the person spoken to; and the third, of the person or thing spoken of. In the *Imperative*, there are only two persons, the second, and the third.

TABLE OF PERSONAL ENDINGS.

The following table shows the personal endings, both singular and plural, of all regular verbs, in all conjugations in

all the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except the perfect indicative active, and the compound tenses in the passive voice:

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
1. —, m,	mus,	1. r,	mur,
2. s,	tis,	2. ris, *or* re,	mĭni,
3. t,	nt.	3. tur,	ntur.

3. The subject or nominative of the verb in the first person singular, is always *ĕgo;* in the plural, *nos;*—in the second person singular, *tu;* in the plural, *vos.* These are seldom expressed, being sufficiently indicated by the termination of the verb; as, *scrībo*, "I write;" *scrībĭmus*, "we write;" *scrībis*, "thou writest;" *scrībĭtis*, "you write."

Obs. Verbs in the first person plural, or in the second person singular, are sometimes used instead of the third person with an indefinite subject; as, *quam multa facĭmus causâ amicōrum*, "how many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends!"—*cernĕres*, "you would see," i. e. "one, a person, or any person, would see." Sall.

The subject of the verb in the third person, is any person or thing spoken of, whether it be expressed by a noun, pronoun, infinitive, gerund, or clause of a sentence; as, *vir scrībit*, "the man writes;" *illi lĕgunt*, "they read;" *ludĕre jucundum est*, "to play is pleasant;" *incertum est quam longa vīta futūra sit*, "how long our life will be, is uncertain."

4. Two or more nouns or pronouns together may be the subject of one verb. If these happen to be of different persons, the verb takes the first person, rather than the second or third, and the second rather than the third; as, *ĕgo, et tu, et ille scrībĭmus*, "I, and thou, and he write."

5. Pronouns, participles, or adjectives used substantively, or having nouns understood to them, are of the third person. *Qui* takes the person of the antecedent. *Ipse* may be joined to any person, according to the sense.

6. To verbs also belong *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*.

182.—§ 49. PARTICIPLES.

1. Participles are parts of the verb which contain no affirmation, but express the meaning of the verb considered as a general quality or condition of an object; as, *āmans*, "loving;" *doctus*, "learned."

2. Participles belong partly to the verb, and partly to the adjective. From the former, they have *signification*, *voice*, and *tense;* from the latter, *declension;* those in *ns* are of the third declension, and declined like *prūdens* (99–2): all others are of the first and second, and declined like *bŏnus* (98–1). In construction, they have the government of the verb, and the concord, or agreement of the adjective (§ 98).

3. When the idea of time is separated from the participle, it becomes a participial or verbal adjective, and is capable of comparison; as, *doctus*, *doctior*, *doctissĭmus*, "learned, more learned, most learned."

4. To the same class, also, belong participles whose meaning is reversed or modified by composition with words, or participles never combined with other parts of the same verb; as, *innōcens*, *indoctus*, *impransus*, *nefandus*, &c. The perfect participle with the negative prefix *in*, frequently denotes a passive impossibility, usually expressed in Latin by adjectives in *ĭlis* or *bĭlis;* as, *invictus mīles*, "an invincible soldier;" *incorruptus cīvis*, "an incorruptible citizen."

5. The time of the participle, like that of the infinitive, is estimated from the time of the leading verb; i. e. the accompanying action or state expressed by the participle is present, past, or future, at the time indicated by the leading verb, with which it is connected; thus, *vīdi cum venientem*, "I saw him coming;" *Nūma, Curĭbus nātus, rex creātus est*, "Numa, born at Cures, was made king;" *elephantes amnem transitūri minĭmos præmittunt*, "elephants, about to cross a river, send the smallest first."

Note 1.—The perfect participle, both of deponent and common verbs, often expresses an action nearly, or entirely, contemporaneous with that of the leading verb. In such cases, it is better rendered, into English, by the present participle in *ing*, than by its ordinary rendering; as, *Hoc facinus rex mirātus juvĕnem dimīsit*, "The king, *admiring* this act, dismissed the youth." Liv.—*Arbĭtratus id bellum celeriter confĭci posse, eō exercitum adduxit.* Cæs.—*Hac arte Pollux—enīxus, arces attigit igneas.* Hor.—*Columba fixamque refert delapsa sagittam.* Virg.—*Puĕri bis sēni quemque secūti, agmine partīto, fulgent.* So also the perfect participle of the active verb, see No. 8, *Note* 2.

6. The future passive participle in *dus*, sometimes expresses bare futurity; as, *his* (scil. *ventis*) *quoque habendum aĕra permīsit*, "to these also, he gave the region of the air to be possessed." But, in conjunction with the verb *sum*, and frequently also in other constructions, it denotes *necessity*, *propriety*, or *obligation*, and hence, by inference, *futurity*; as, *Delenda est Carthāgo*, "Carthage must be destroyed." *Facta narrābas dissimulanda tibi*, "you were relating facts which you should have concealed."

7. The participle in *dus*, of transitive verbs, is often used in the oblique cases, in the sense of the gerund. Thus used, it is called a *Gerundive* participle, and agrees with its substantive in gender and number, and both take the case which the gerund would have in the same place; thus, *tempus petendæ pācis*, by the gerund, is *petendi pācem*, "time of seeking peace;" *rērum repetundārum causâ*, "for the sake of demanding redress;" by the gerund, *repetundi res*.

Note 2.—Gerunds and gerundives of the third and fourth conjugations, often have *undus*, &c., instead of *endus*, as in the preceding examples.

8. The Latin language has no perfect participle in the active voice, nor present participle in the passive. The want of the former is made up in two ways: *First*, by the perfect participle passive, in the case absolute; as, *Cæsar, his dictis, profectus est*, "Cæsar (these things being said, i. e.), having said these things, departed;" and *Secondly*, by *quum*, with the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset, profectus est*, "Cæsar (when he had said, i. e.), having said these things, departed."

Note 3.—The want of the present participle passive, is made up either by the perfect participle, or by the future participle in *dus*, both of which appear to be sometimes used in a present sense; as, *Nōtus evŏlat piceā tectus caligine*, "Notus flies forth (being) *covered* with pitchy darkness." Ovid.—*Volvenda dies en attŭlit ultro*, "Lo! *revolving* time (lit. *time being rolled on*) hath of itself brought about." Virg.—Or by the gerundive form of expression, as in No. 7; see also No. 5, *Note* 1.

9. Transitive verbs have four participles, of which the present in *ns*, and the future in *rus*, belong to the active voice; the perfect in *tus*, *sus*, or *xus*, and the future in *dus*, to the passive.

10. Intransitive verbs have two participles, namely, the present in *ns*, and the future in *rus*; frequently also the future passive in *dus*, and also the perfect passive.

11. Neuter passive verbs have commonly three participles; namely, the present, perfect, and future in *rus*. 213.

12. Deponent verbs of a transitive signification, have generally four participles; those of an intransitive signification commonly want the future in *dus*, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally.

13. Common verbs have generally four participles, of which the perfect only is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *adeptus victoriam*, "having obtained the victory;" *victoriâ adeptâ*, "the victory being obtained." The rest are active. 207, Obs. 2.

14. Some intransitive verbs, though they have no passive, yet have participles of the perfect passive form, but still with an intransitive signification; such are, *cœnātus*, "having supped;" *pransus*, "having dined;" *jurātus*, "having sworn."

183.—§ 50. GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

1. The GERUND is a kind of verbal noun, used only in the singular number. It represents the action or state expressed by the verb as a thing now going on, and at the same time, if in the nominative, or in the accusative before the infinitive, as the subject of discourse; and if in the oblique cases, as the object of some action or relation. They are construed in all respects as nouns, and also govern the case of their verbs. § 147.

In meaning and use, the gerund resembles the English present participle, used as a noun (see Eng. Gr., 195; An. and Pr. Eng. Gr., 462), and the Greek infinitive with the article prefixed. See Gr. Gr., § 173.

2. SUPINES are defective verbal nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and the ablative singular.

The supine in *um* has an active signification, and governs the case of the verb. 682.

The supine in *u* has usually a passive signification, and governs no case.

184.—§ 51. CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

1. Regular Verbs are those in which the secondary parts are formed from the primary, according to certain rules, 185.

2. The Conjugation of a verb, is the regular combination and arrangement of its several *voices*, *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

3. Of regular verbs, in Latin, there are four conjugations, called the *First*, *Second*, *Third*, and *Fourth*. These are distinguished from each other, by the vowel before *re*, in the present infinitive active; thus,

The *First Conjugation* has *ā* long before *re* of the infinitive.
The *Second* " has *ē* long before *re* of the infinitive.
The *Third* " has *ĕ* short before *re* of the infinitive.
The *Fourth* " has *ī* long before *re* of the infinitive.

Exc. Dăre, and its compounds of the first conjugation, have *ă* short.

4. The primary tenses, or parts of the verb in the active voice, from which all the other parts are formed, are four; namely, *o* of the present indicative, *re* of the present infinitive, *i* of the perfect indicative, and *um* of the supine. The giving of these parts, in the order just mentioned, is called *conjugating the verb;* thus,

	Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	1*st. Supine.*
1*st Conj.*	Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum.
2*d* "	Monĕo,	monēre,	monui,	monĭtum.
3*d* "	Rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum.
4*th* "	Audĭo,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum.

The manner of conjugating each verb being accurately ascertained from the Dictionary, the other tenses may be formed with certainty by the rules laid down in the next section.*

* Though general rules may be, and have been, laid down, to form the primary tenses from the general root, or stem of the verb, yet there is such a multitude of exceptions in the third conjugation, (and some in the others also,) which it is impossible to bring under any rule, that it will be found indispensable, after all, to learn the conjugation of each verb from the dictionary, or from the table of irregular conjugations (§ 81). For this reason, they are here omitted in the text as useless for any practical purpose. The principal methods proposed are in substance the two following:

185.—§ 52. FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

I. *Indicative Mood.*

1. The *Present* is a primary tense.

2. The *Imperfect* is formed from the present by changing:

In the 1st Conjugation, *o* into *ābam;* as, *ăm-o, am-ābam,*
" 2d " *eo* into *ēbam;* as, *mon-eo, mon-ēbam,*
" 3d and 4th " *o* into *ēbam;* as, *rĕg-o, reg-ēbam, audi-o, audi-ēbam.*

3. The *Perfect* is a primary tense.

4. The *Pluperfect*, in all conjugations, is formed from the

First. The general root or stem that runs through the whole verb, consists of the letters preceding the infinitive terminations, *-āre, -ēre, -ĕre, -īre.*

To form the primary tenses, there is added to the general root as follows:

	Pr. Ind.	*Pr. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*1st. Supine.*
In the 1st Conj.	-o,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum.
" 2d "	-eo,	-ēre,	-ui,	-itum.
" 3d "	-o, & -io,	-ĕre,	-i, & -si,	-tum, & -sum.
" 4th "	-io,	-īre,	-ivi,	-itum.

In the perfect tense of the third conjugation, observe:

1. If the root of the verb ends with a vowel, the termination added is *i;* as, *acŭo*, root *acu*, perfect *acui.*

2. If the root of the verb ends with a consonant, the usual termination is *si*, which, in uniting with the root, causes the following changes, viz:

1st. If the letter preceding *si* be *c, g, h,* or *qu*, it unites with the *s*, and forms *x;* as, *dūco* (*duc-si*), *duxi; fingo* (*fing-si*), *finxi; traho* (*trah-si*), *traxi; cŏquo* (*coqu-si*), *coxi.*

2d. The letter *b* before *si* is changed into *p;* as, *scrībo, scripsi.*

3d. When *d* precedes *si*, either the *d* or the *s* is rejected; as, *defendo, defendi, claudo, clausi.*

4th. The *s* is dropped in many verbs which cannot be brought under any definite rule; as, *lĕgo, lēgi; ĕmo, ēmi.*

In the supine of the third conjugation, observe:

1. When the root of the verb ends in a vowel, the supine adds *tum*, and lengthens the vowel preceding it; as, *acuo, acūtum.*

2. When the root ends with a consonant, the supine adds *tum*, sometimes *sum.* In uniting with the root, the following changes for the sake of euphony take place, viz:

1st. The letter *b* before *tum* is changed into *p;* as, *scrībo, scriptum.*

2d. The letters *g, h,* and *qu*, before *tum*, are changed into *c;* as, *rĕgo, rectum; traho, tractum; cŏquo, coctum.*

perfect, by changing *i* into *ĕram;* as, *amāv-i, amav-ĕram; monŭ-i, monu-ĕram,* &c.

5. The *Future* is formed from the present by changing—

In the 1st Conjugation,	*o* into *ābo;*	as,	*ăm-o,*	*am-ābo.*
" 2d "	*eo* into *ēbo;*	as,	*mon-eo,*	*mon-ēbo.*
" 3d and 4th "	*o* into *am;*	as,	*rĕg-o,*	*rĕg-am.*
			audi-o,	*audi-am.*

6. The *Future-perfect,* in all conjugations, is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ĕro;* as, *amāv-i, amav-ĕro; monu-i, monu-ĕro,* &c.

II. *The Subjunctive Mood.*

7. The *Present Subjunctive* is formed from the present in-

3d. The letter *g* before *sum,* when a vowel precedes, unites with the *s,* and forms *x;* as, *f'igo* (*fig-sum*), *fixum;* when *r* precedes, the *g* is rejected; as, *tergo, tersum.*

4th. The letter *d* before *sum* is rejected; as, *defendo, defensum.*

Secondly. The general root being found as before; then, to form the *second* root, in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, (i. e. the root of the perfect tense,) add *av* for the first, *u* for the second, and *iv* for the fourth; as, *ăm, ămav; mon, monu; aud, audiv.*

To form the third *root,* (i. e. the root of the supine,) in the same conjugations, add to the general root the syllables *ātu, itu,* and *ĭtu;* as, *am, amātu; mon, monĭtu; aud, audĭtu.*

The three roots being thus found, the primary tenses are formed as follows, viz:

1. From the first root, the present indicative is formed,

In the 1st Conjugation, by adding	*-o,*	as,	*am,*	*ăm-o.*
" 2d " "	*-eo,*	as,	*mon,*	*mon-eo.*
" 3d " "	*-o,* or *-io,*	as,	*reg,*	*rĕg-o.*
" 4th " "	*-io,*	as,	*aud,*	*aud-io.*

2. From the same root, the present infinitive is formed,

In the 1st Conjugation, by adding	*-āre,*	as,	*am,*	*am-āre.*
" 2d " "	*-ēre,*	as,	*mon,*	*mon-ēre.*
" 3d " "	*-ĕre,*	as,	*reg,*	*reg-ĕre.*
" 4th " "	*-īre,*	as,	*aud,*	*aud-īre.*

3. From the second root, in all conjugations, the perfect is formed by adding *i;* as, *amāv-i, monŭ-i, audīv-i.*

4. From the third root in all conjugations, the first supine is formed by adding *m;* as, *amātu-m, monĭtu-m,* &c.

The third conjugation is so irregular in the formation of its roots, that no rules are attempted.

The first of these methods is substantially that offered in the Grammar of Zumpt. The second is the plan of Andrews and Stoddard, which they carry out by applying it to all the tenses, secondary as well as primary.

dicative,—in the first conjugation, by changing *o* into *em;* as, *ăm-o, ăm-em;*—in the second, third, and fourth, by changing *o* into *am;* as, *monĕ-o, monĕ-am; rĕg-o, rĕg-am; audi-o, audi-am.*

8. The *Imperfect Subjunctive*, in all conjugations, is formed from the present infinitive, by adding *m;* as, *amāre, amārem; monēre, monērem; regĕre, regĕrem*, &c.

9. The *Perfect Subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ĕrim;* as, *amāv-i, amav-ĕrim; monu-i, monu-ĕrim*, &c.

10. The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *issem;* as, *amāv-i, amav-issem; monu-i, monu-issem*, &c.

III. *The Imperative Mood.*

11. The *Present Imperative* is formed from the present infinitive, by taking away *re;* as, *amāre, ămā; monēre, mŏnē; regĕre, rĕgĕ; audīre, audi.*

IV. *The Infinitive Mood.*

12. *The Present Infinitive* is a primary tense.

13. The *Perfect Infinitive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *isse;* as, *amāv-i, amāv-isse; monu-i, monu-isse*, &c.

14. The *Future Infinitive* is a compound tense, made up of *esse* or *fuisse*, and the future participle in *rus;* as, *esse* or *fuisse amatūrus, -a, -um; esse* or *fuisse monitūrus, -a, -um*, &c.

V. *Participles, Gerunds*, and *Supines.*

15. The *Present Participle* is formed from the present indicative by changing,

o,	in the 1st Conjugation,	into *ans;*	as,	*ăm-o,*	*ăm-ans.*
eo,	" 2d "	into *ens;*	as,	*mon-eo,*	*mŏn-ens.*
o,	" 3d and 4th "	into *ens;*	as,	*rĕg-o,*	*rĕg-ens.*
				audi-o,	*audi-ens.*

16. The *Future Participle* is formed from the former supine by changing *um* into *ūrus;* as, *amāt-um, amat-ūrus; monĭt-um, monit-ūrus*, &c.

17. The *Gerund* is formed from the present indicative by changing,

o, in the 1st Conjugation, into *andum;* as, *ăm-o*, *am-andum.*
eo, " 2d " into *endum;* as, *mon-eo*, *mon-endum.*
o, " 3d and 4th " into *endum;* as, *rĕg-o*, *reg-endum.*; *audi-o*, *audi-endum.*

18. The *Former Supine* is a primary part of the verb.

19. The *Latter Supine* is formed from the former by dropping *m;* as, *amātum*, *amātu; monĭtum*, *monĭtu.*

186.—§ 53. FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. In the *Indicative* mood, the *present* passive is formed from the present active by adding *r;* as, *ămo*, *ămor; moneo*, *moneor*, &c.;—the imperfect and the future passive, from the same tenses in the active voice, by changing *m* into *r;* as, *amābam*, *amābar;*—or adding *r* to *bo;* as, *monēbo*, *monēbor*, &c.

2. In the *Subjunctive* mood, the *present* and the *imperfect* passive are formed from the same tenses in the active voice, by changing *m* into *r;* as, *ămem*, *ămer; moneam*, *monear*, &c.

3. The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future-perfect indicative*, and the *perfect* and *pluperfect subjunctive*, are compound tenses, made up of the perfect participle passive, and the verb *sum* as an auxiliary, as exhibited in the paradigm of these tenses.

4. The *Imperative* passive, in all verbs, is formed by adding *re* to the imperative active; as, *ămā*, *amāre; mŏnē*, *monēre*, &c. Hence, the imperative passive is like the present infinitive active.

5. The *Present Infinitive* passive is formed from the present infinitive active, by changing *re* in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *ri;* as, *amā-re*, *amā-ri; monē-re*, *monē-ri; audī-re*, *audī-ri;* and by changing *ĕre* in the third conjugation into *i;* as, *reg-ĕre*, *rĕg-i.* But *arcesso* has *arcessīri.*

The *Perfect Infinitive* is a compound tense, made up of the perfect participle, and *esse* or *fuisse* prefixed; as, *esse* or *fuisse amātus*, *a*, *um*, &c.

The *Future Infinitive* is also a compound tense, made up of the former supine and *īri*, the present infinitive passive of *eo;* as, *amātum īri*, *monĭtum īri*, &c.

6. The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine, by changing *um* into *us;* as, *amāt-um*, *amāt-us; monĭt-um*, *monĭt-us*, &c.

The *Future Participle* is formed as the active gerund (185–17), by putting *dus* instead of *dum;* as, gerund, *amandum*, participle, *amandus;* gerund, *monendum*, participle, *monendus*, &c.

187.—§ 54. THE IRREGULAR VERB SUM.*

The irregular verb *sum* is sometimes called a *substantive* verb, as it denotes being, or simple existence; as, *sum*, "I am," "I exist." Sometimes it is called *auxiliary*, because it is used as an auxiliary verb in the inflection of the passive voice. It is conjugated thus:

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*
Sum,	esse,	fui.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am.*

Sing.	1.	*Ego* Sum,†	*I am*,
	2.	*Tu* Es,	*Thou*‡ *art*, or *you are*,
	3.	*Ille* Est,	*He is;*
Plur.	1.	*Nos* Sŭmus,	*We are*,
	2.	*Vos* Estis,	*Ye*, or *you are*,
	3.	*Illi* Sunt,	*They are.*

* This verb being irregular, properly belongs to § 83, but is inserted here, because, as an auxiliary, it is much used in the inflection of regular verbs.

† In the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative moods, every part of the verb must have its nominative expressed or understood. See 181–3. The nominatives *ego*, *tu*, *ille*, of the singular, and *nos*, *vos*, *illi*, of the plural, are here prefixed in the present tense, to show their place and their use; but in the following tenses, and in the following conjugations, they are omitted. Still they are to be regarded as understood, and may be supplied at pleasure.

‡ See 118, *Note* 2. In the plural, "you" is much more common than "ye," which is now seldom used.

IMPERFECT, *was.*

Sing.	1. Eram,	*I was,*
	2. Eras,	*Thou wast,* or *you were,*
	3. Erat,	*He was;*
Plur.	1. Erāmus	*We were,*
	2. Erātis,	*Ye,* or *you were,*
	3. Erant,	*They were.*

PERFECT Definite, *have been;* Indefinite, *was.*

Sing.	1. Fui,	*I have been,*
	2. Fuisti,	*Thou hast been,*
	3. Fuit.	*He has been;*
Plur.	1. Fŭimus,	*We have been,*
	2. Fuistis,	*Ye have been,*
	3. Fuērunt, *or* fuēre,	*They have been.*

PLUPERFECT, *had been.*

Sing.	1. Fuĕram,	*I had been,*
	2. Fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been,*
	3. Fuĕrat,	*He had been;*
Plur.	1. Fuerāmus,	*We had been,*
	2. Fuerātis,	*Ye had been,*
	3. Fuĕrant,	*They had been.*

FUTURE, *shall,* or *will.*

Sing.	1. Ero,	*I shall,* or *will be,*
	2. Eris,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt be,*
	3. Erit,	*He shall,* or *will be;*
Plur.	1. Erĭmus,	*We shall,* or *will be,*
	2. Erĭtis,	*Ye shall,* or *will be,*
	3. Erunt,	*They shall,* or *will be.*

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall,* or *will have been.*

Sing.	1. Fuĕro,	*I shall,* or *will have been,*
	2. Fuĕris,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt have been,*
	3. Fuĕrit,	*He shall,* or *will have been;*
Plur.	1. Fuerĭmus,	*We shall,* or *will have been,*
	2. Fuerĭtis,	*Ye shall,* or *will have been,*
	3. Fuĕrint,	*They shall,* or *will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can*.

Sing.	1. Sim,	*I may*, or *can be*,
	2. Sis,	*Thou mayst*, or *canst be*
	3. Sit,	*He may*, or *can be;*
Plur.	1. Sīmus,	*We may*, or *can be*,
	2. Sītis,	*Ye may*, or *can be*,
	3. Sint,	*They may*, or *can be.*

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.

Sing.	1. Essem,	*I might*, &c., *be*,
	2. Esses,	*Thou mightst*, &c., *be*,
	3. Esset,	*He might*, &c., *be;*
Plur.	1. Essēmus,	*We might*, &c., *be*,
	2. Essētis,	*Ye might*, &c., *be*,
	3. Essent,	*They might*, &c., *be.*

PERFECT, *may have*.

Sing.	1. Fuĕrim,	*I may have been*,
	2. Fuĕris,	*Thou mayst have been*,
	3. Fuĕrit,	*He may have been;*
Plur.	1. Fuerĭmus,	*We may have been*,
	2. Fuerītis,	*Ye may have been*,
	3. Fuĕrint,	*They may have been.*

PLUPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have*.

Sing.	1. Fuissem,	*I might*, &c., *have been*,
	2. Fuisses,	*Thou mightst*, &c., *have been*,
	3. Fuisset,	*He might*, &c., *have been;*
Plur.	1. Fuissēmus,	*We might*, &c., *have been*,
	2. Fuissētis,	*Ye might*, &c., *have been*,
	3. Fuissent,	*They might*, &c., *have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	2. Es, *or* Esto,	*Be thou*,
	3. Esto,	*Let him be;*
Plur.	2. Este, *or* estōte,	*Be ye*,
	3. Sunto,	*Let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Esse,	*To be* (177).
Perf.	Fuisse,	*To have been.*
Fut.	Esse futūrus, a, um,	*To be about to be.*
F. Perf.	Fuisse futūrus, a, um,	*To have been about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future.	Futūrus, a, um,	*About to be.*

Synopsis of the Moods and Tenses.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imperative.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participle*
Pres.	sum,	sim,	es, *or* esto.	esse	
Imp.	ĕram,	essem,			
Perf.	fui,	fuĕrim		fuisse,	
Plup.	fuĕram,	fuissem.			
Fut.	ĕro,			esse futūrus,	futūrus.
F.-Perf.	fuĕro.			fuisse futūrus.	

Obs. 1. The compounds of *sum;* namely, *adsum*, *absum*, *dĕsum*, *insum*, *intersum*, *obsum*, *præsum*, *subsum*, *supersum*, are conjugated like the simple verb; but *insum*, and *subsum*, want the perfect, and the tenses formed from it. *Prōsum*, and *possum* from *pŏtis* and *sum*, are very irregular. 221–1, 2.

Obs. 2. Instead of *Essem*, *fŏrem* is sometimes used, and also *fŏre*, instead of *fuisse*.

Obs. 3. The participle *ens* is not in use, but appears in two compounds, *absens*, and *præsens*. Also, the supine and gerund are wanting, but the inflection in the persons and numbers is regular.

Note.—The great irregularity of this verb arises from the different parts being formed from different themes or roots, viz: the parts beginning with *e* from *eo*, the root of the Greek εἰμί, and those beginning with *f* from *fuo*, the same as the Greek φύω. In ancient times, this verb was conjugated *fuo*, *fuĕre*, *fui* (*fūvi*), *fūtum*. *Fuĕre* was contracted *fŏre*, and *fuĕrem*, *fŏrem*; and from *fūtum*, was formed *futūrus*. Hence, also, the ancient forms *fuvĕrim*, *fuvĕro*, &c.

188.—§ 55. EXERCISES ON THE VERB *SUM*.

1. *Give the designation of the verb.—conjugate it;—give the tense, mood, person, number, and translation of the following words, always observing the same order;* thus,—*Sum*, verb intransitive, irregular, found in the

present indicative, active, first person singular, "I am;"—*Fuit*, verb intransitive, irregular, found in the perfect indicative, active, third person singular: definite, "he has been;" indefinite, "he was."*

Est, ĕrat, ĕrit, fuĕram, fuĕrim, fuĕro, sit, esset, fuisti, fuĭmus, fuērunt, fuēre, ĕrunt, sint, sŭmus, ĕrant, essent, fuissent, esse, esto, sunto, fuisse, es, ĕras, fuĕras, fuĭstis, futūrus esse, futūrus, sint, &c., *ad libĭtum*.

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, naming the part of the verb used;* thus,—"I will be," *ĕro*, in the future indicative, active, first person singular. The Latin word for *I, thou, he, we, you, they*, to be omitted or inserted at pleasure.†

We are, they were, you have been, thou hast been, they will be, he may be, I shall have been, to be, be thou, let them be, about to be, to be about to be, we should be, we should have been, I may have been, they will have been, they may have been, they have been, you were, thou wast, he is, they are, &c., *ad libĭtum*.

3. The verb *sum* forms the *copula* connecting the subject and the predicate in a simple proposition, the predicate of which is not a verb. Thus in the proposition: "*Man* is *mortal*," *man* is the subject· *mortal*, the predicate; and *is*, the copula. With the verb *sum* as a copula in different tenses, and the exercises § 23–1, form simple sentences; thus, *căsa est* (*ĕrat, fuit*, &c.) *parva*, "the cottage is, (was, has been, &c.) small;" plural, *căsæ sunt parvæ*, "the cottages are small."

In this way, translate into English the following propositions (see p. 56)

Poēta ĕrat clārus,—ŏpus magnum ĕrit,—nūbes densæ sunt,—æstas callĭda fuit,—urbs antīqua fuit,—&c.

Translate the following English sentences into Latin:

Life is short,—the day was clear.—the boys are docile,—the shepherd will be faithful,—the apples are sweet,—&c.

---

* In these and all following exercises on the verb, it will be of great importance, in order to form habits of accuracy, and as a preparation for future exercises in translating and parsing, to require the pupil, in this manner, to state every thing belonging to a verb, in the order here indicated, or in any other the teacher may direct, always, however, observing the same; and also, for the saving of time and unnecessary labor, to state them in the fewest words possible, and without waiting to have every word drawn from him by questions. Let it be observed, also, that the term *active* here has no reference to the class of the verb, but only to its form, being that of the active voice. 136–2.

† *N. B.* It will be a profitable exercise to require each pupil to write out the Latin for these and other English words that may be dictated,—carefully to mark the quantity of long and short vowels, and to pronounce them correctly after they are written.

189.—§ 56. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Prcs. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	*To love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *love, do love, am loving.* 157.

Sing.	1.	Am-o,	*I love, do love, am loving,*
	2.	Am-as,	*Thou lovest, dost love, art loving,*
	3.	Am-at,	*He loves, does love, is loving;*
Plur.	1.	Am-āmus,	*We love, do love, are loving,*
	2.	Am-ātis,	*Ye,* or *you love, do love, are loving,*
	3.	Am-ant,	*They love, do love, are loving*

IMPERFECT, *loved, did love, was loving.* 159.

Sing.	1.	Am-ābam,	*I loved, did love, was loving,*
	2.	Am-ābas,	*Thou lovedst, didst love, wast loving,*
	3.	Am-ābat,	*He loved, did love, was loving;*
Plur.	1.	Am-abāmus,	*We loved, did love, were loving,*
	2.	Am-abātis,	*Ye loved, did love, were loving,*
	3.	Am-ābant,	*They loved, did love, were loving.*

PERFECT Def., *have loved;* Indef., *loved, did love.* 161.

Sing.	1.	Am-āvi,	*I have loved, loved, did love,*
	2.	Am-avisti,	*Thou hast loved, lovedst, didst love,*
	3.	Am-āvit,	*He has loved, loved, did love;*
Plur.	1.	Am-avīmus,	*We have loved, loved, did love,*
	2.	Am-avistis,	*Ye have loved, loved, did love,*
	3.	Am-avērunt, *or* -avēre,	*They have loved, loved, did love.*

PLUPERFECT, *had loved.* 165.

Sing.	1.	Am-avĕram,	*I had loved,*
	2.	Am-avĕras,	*Thou hadst loved,*
	3.	Am-avĕrat,	*He had loved;*
Plur.	1.	Am-averāmus,	*We had loved,*
	2.	Am-averātis,	*Ye had loved,*
	3.	Am-avĕrant,	*They had loved,*

FUTURE, *shall*, or *will love*. 167.

Sing.	1. Am-ābo,	*I shall*, or *will love*,
	2. Am-ābis,	*Thou shalt*, or *wilt love*,
	3. Am-ābit,	*He shall*, or *will love;*
Plur.	1. Am-abĭmus,	*We shall*, or *will love*,
	2. Am-abĭtis,	*Ye shall*, or *will love*,
	3. Am-ābunt,	*They shall*, or *will love*.

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall*, or *will have loved*. 168.

Sing.	1. Am-avĕro,	*I shall*, or *will have loved*,
	2. Am-avĕris,	*Thou shalt*, or *wilt have loved*,
	3. Am-avĕrit,	*He shall*, or *will have loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-averĭmus,	*We shall*, or *will have loved*,
	2. Am-averĭtis,	*Ye shall*, or *will have loved*,
	3. Am-avĕrint,	*They shall*, or *will have loved*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can love*. 171.

Sing.	1. Am-em,	*I may*, or *can love*,
	2. Am-es,	*Thou mayst*, or *canst love*,
	3. Am-et,	*He may*, or *can love;*
Plur.	1. Am-ēmus,	*We may*, or *can love*,
	2. Am-ētis,	*Ye may*, or *can love*,
	3. Am-ent,	*They may*, or *can love*.

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should love*. 172.

Sing.	1. Am-ārem,	*I might love*,
	2. Am-āres,	*Thou mightst love*,
	3. Am-āret,	*He might love;*
Plur.	1. Am-arēmus,	*We might love*,
	2. Am-arētis,	*Ye might love*,
	3. Am-ārent,	*They might love*.

PERFECT, *may have loved*. 173.

Sing.	1. Am-avĕrim,	*I may have loved*,
	2. Am-avĕris,	*Thou mayst have loved*,
	3. Am-avĕrit,	*He may have loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-averĭmus,	*We may have loved*,
	2. Am-averĭtis,	*Ye may have loved*,
	3. Am-avĕrint,	*They may have loved*.

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would,* OR *should have.* 174.

Sing.	1.	Am-avissem,	*I might have loved,*
	2.	Am-avisses,	*Thou mightst have loved,*
	3.	Am-avisset,	*He might have loved;*
Plur.	1.	Am-avissēmus,	*We might have loved,*
	2.	Am-avissētis,	*Ye might have loved,*
	3.	Am-avissent,	*They might have loved*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	2.	Am-ā, *or* am-āto,	*Love thou,* 149.
	3.	Am-āto,	*Let him love;*
Plur.	2.	Am-āte, *or* am-atōte,	*Love ye,*
	3.	Am-anto,	*Let them love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Am-āre,	*To love* 178 and 180.
PERF.	Am-avisse,	*To have loved,*
FUT.	Esse am-atūrus, a, um,	*To be about to love,*
F.-PERF.	Fuisse am-atūrus, a, um,	*To have been about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Am-ans,	*Loving.*
FUT.	Am-atūrus, a, um,	*About to love.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Am-andum,	*Loving,*
Gen.	Am-andi,	*Of loving,*
Dat.	Am-ando,	*To loving,*
Acc.	Am-andum,	*Loving,*
Abl.	Am-ando,	*With, from,* &c., *loving.*

SUPINES.

Former,	Am-ātum,	*To love.*
Latter,	Am-ātu,	*To be loved, to love.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imp.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Amo,	Amem,	Amā	Amāre,	Amans,
IMP.	Amābam,	Amārem,			
PERF.	Amāvi,	Amavĕrim,		Amāvisse,	
PLUP.	Amavĕram,	Amavissem.			
FUT.	Amābo,			Esse amatūrus,	Amatūrus
F.-PERF.	Amavĕro.			Fuisse amatūrus.	

After the same manner, inflect:

Cre-o,	cre-āre,	cre-āvi,	cre-ātum,	*To create.*
Rŏg-o,	rog-āre,	rog-āvi,	rog-ātum,	*To ask.*
Vŏc-o,	voc-āre,	voc-āvi,	voc-ātum,	*To call.*
Dŏm-o,	dom-āre,	dom-ŭi,	dom-ĭtum,	*To tame.*

190.—§ 57. EXERCISES ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION; ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation of the verb, conjugate it; give the tense,—mood,—voice,—person,—number, and translation of the following words, always observing the same order;* thus,—*Amo,* a verb transitive, first conjugation, *ămo, amāre, amāvi, amātum.* It is found in the present indicative active, first person singular, "I love," "I do love," "I am loving."

Amābat, amavĕrat, ămet, amaverĭtis, amābunt, creavĭmus, creavĕrat, domuĕrat, domuisset, amavĕro, domuĕro, vocavĕrim, vocă, vocāre, domă, creavisse, domuisse, amatūrus, domitūrus, ămans, amandum, amātu, domĭtum, domābam, domābo,—creat, creāret, amāret, amavisti, amavēre, domuistis, amāto, amando, amavērunt, creāre, vocavērunt, vocavĕrint, vocābunt, vocarētis, domabĭtis, &c., &c., *ad libitum.*

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, giving the part of the verb used; thus,*—"I was loving," *amābam,* in the imperfect indicative active, first person singular.

He will love, I might love, I had loved, I might have loved, he shall love, I may love, he created, I called, I may have called, he will tame, he has tamed, he would have tamed, love thou, let them love, to love, about to love, of loving, to have loved, they were loving, they have loved, thou hast created, thou hast tamed, &c., *ad libitum.*

3. *The Infinitive with a subject.* The infinitive, after another verb, and with an accusative before it as its subject, is translated, into English, in the indicative or potential mood; and the accusative in Latin is made the nominative in English; as, *dĭcit me amāre,* "he says that I love." The accusatives are thus translated:

Me, that I;	*nos,* that we;	*homĭnem,* that the man.
Te, that thou:	*vos,* that you;	*homĭnes,* that the men.
Illum, that he;	*illos,* that they;	*fœmĭnas,* that the women.

Infinitives, after verbs of the present, past, and future tenses, are rendered as in the examples, 180, or according to the following rules; viz.:

RULE I. *When the preceding verb is of the present or future tense, the present infinitive is translated as the present indicative; the perfect infinitive, as the perfect indicative; and the future infinitive, as the future indicative.* 180, *Nos.* 1, 4, 7; *also* 3, 6, 9.

RULE. II. *When the preceding verb is in past time* (*i. e. in the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect-tense*), *the present infinitive is translated as the imperfect, or perfect indicative; the perfect infinitive, as the pluperfect indicative; and the future infinitive, as the imperfect subjunctive.* 180, *Nos.* 2, 5, 8.

RULE III. *The future perfect of the infinitive with a subject, is always translated as the pluperfect subjunctive, whatever be the tense of the preceding verb.* 180, *Nos.* 10, 11, 12.

4. *According to the preceding rules, and the examples referred to, translate the following sentences into English—observing that dīcit,* "he says," *is present time; dixit,* "he said," *past; and dīcet,* "he will say," *future.*

Dīcit me vocāre,—te amāre,—nos amāvisse,—vos amatūros esse,—nos amatūros fuisse,—illos domāre,—te amatūrum esse,—illos rogatūros esse,—homĭnes rogatūros fuisse.

Dixit me vocāre,—te amāre,—nos amavisse,—nos amatūros esse,—nos amatūros fuisse,—vos domāre,—te amatūrum esse,—illum rogavisse,—vos rogāre,—illam rogatūram esse.

Dixit nos vocāre;—*dīcet* illum creāre;—*dīcit* te creatūrum esse;—*dixit* se amatūrum (179, Note 1); *dīcit* illos creatūros,—illum vocatūrum,—vos domitūros esse,—domitūros fuisse,—me rogāre,—te rogavisse,—vos rogatūros, &c.

5. *Translate the following English into Latin, taking care to put the participle of the future infinitive in the same gender, number, and case, as the accusative preceding it.*

He said that I loved,—that I was calling. *He says* that they will tame—that I would have created,—that they will call,—that he loves. *He will say* that I love,—that I have loved,—that I will love. *He said* that I had called,—that they would have called,—that they tamed,—that they would tame,—that he would have tamed. *He says* that I am asking,—that they are asking,—that they are calling,—that we did call,—that they do ask,—that we will ask, &c.

191.—§ 58. PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Amor,	amāri,	amātus,	*To be loved*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am loved.* 157–6.

S. 1.	Am-or,	*I am loved,*
2.	Am-āris, *or* -āre,	*Thou art loved,*
3.	Am-ātur,	*He is loved;*
P. 1.	Am-āmur,	*We are loved,*
2.	Am-amĭni,	*Ye are loved,*
3.	Am-āntur,	*They are loved.*

IMPERFECT, *was loved.* 160–5.

S. 1.	Am-ābar,	*I was loved,*
2.	Am-abāris, *or* -abāre,	*Thou wast loved,*
3.	Am-abātur,	*He was loved;*
P. 1.	Am-abāmur,	*We were loved,*
2.	Am-abamĭni,	*Ye were loved,*
3.	Am-abantur,	*They were loved.*

PERFECT, *have been loved, was loved, am loved.* 164–5.

S. 1.	Am-ātus*sum, *or* fui,	*I have been loved,* &c.,
2.	Am-ātus es, *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been loved,*
3.	Am-ātus est, *or* fuit,	*He has been loved;*
P. 1.	Am-āti sŭmus, *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been loved,*
2.	Am-āti estis, *or* fuistis,	*Ye have been loved,*
3.	Am-āti sunt, fuērunt, *or* fuēre,	*They have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT, *had been loved.* 166–2

S. 1.	Am-ātus ĕram, *or* fuĕram,	*I had been loved,*
2.	Am-ātus ĕras, *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been loved.*
3.	Am-ātus ĕrat, *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been loved;*
P. 1.	Am-āti erāmus, *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been loved,*
2.	Am-āti erātis, *or* fuerātis,	*Ye had been loved,*
3.	Am-āti ĕrant, *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been loved.*

* See 164–5. *Note.*—*Fui* and *fuisti*, are very seldom found with the perfect participle. *Ero*, as well as *fuĕro*, is used in the future-perfect. 168–4.

FUTURE, *shall*, or *will be loved*. 167–3.

S. 1. Am-ābor,	*I shall*, or *will be loved*,
2. Am-abĕris, *or* -abĕre,	*Thou shalt*, or *wilt be loved*,
3. Am-abĭtur,	*He shall*, or *will be loved;*
P. 1. Am-abĭmur,	*We shall*, or *will be loved*,
2. Am-abimĭni,	*Ye shall*, or *will be loved*,
3. Am-abuntur,	*They shall*, or *will be loved.*

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall*, or *will have been loved*. 168–4.

S. 1. Am-ātus fuĕro,	*I shall have been loved*,
2. Am-ātus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been loved*,
3. Am-ātus fuĕrit,	*He will have been loved;*
P. 1. Am-āti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been loved*,
2. Am-āti fuerĭtis,	*Ye will have been loved*,
3. Am-āti fuĕrint,	*They will have been loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can be loved*.

S. 1. Am-er,	*I may*, or *can be loved*,
2. Am-ēris, *or* -ēre,	*Thou mayst*, or *canst be loved*,
3. Am-ētur,	*He may*, or *can be loved;*
P. 1. Am-ēmur,	*We may*, or *can be loved*,
2. Am-emĭni,	*Ye may*, or *can be loved*,
3. Am-entur,	*They may*, or *can be loved.*

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should be loved*.

S. 1. Am-ārer,	*I might be loved*,
2. Am-arēris, *or* -arēre,	*Thou mightst be loved*,
3. Am-arētur,	*He might be loved;*
P. 1. Am-arēmur,	*We might be loved*,
2. Am-aremĭni,	*Ye might be loved*,
3. Am-arentur,	*They might be loved.*

PERFECT, *may have been loved*.

S. 1. Am-ātus sim, *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been loved*,
2. Am-ātus sis, *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayst have been loved*,
3. Am-ātus sit, *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been loved;*
P. 1. Am-āti sīmus, *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been loved*,
2. Am-āti sītis, *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye may have been loved*,
3. Am-āti sint, *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should have been loved.*

S. 1.	Am-ātus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might have been loved,*
2.	Am-ātus esses, *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightst have been loved,*
3.	Am-ātus esset, *or* fuisset,	*He might have been loved;*
P. 1.	Am-āti essēmus, *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been loved,*
2.	Am-āti essētis, *or* fuissētis,	*Ye might have been loved,*
3.	Am-āti essent, *or* fuissent,	*They might have been loved*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. 2.	Am-āre, *or* -ātor,	*Be thou loved,*
3.	Am-ātor,	*Let him be loved;*
Plur. 2.	Am-amĭni,	*Be ye loved,*
3.	Am-āntor,	*Let them be loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Am-āri,	*To be loved.* 178, and 180.
PERF.	Esse, *or* fuisse am-ātus,	*To have been loved.*
FUT.	Am-ātum īri,	*To be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Am-ātus, a, um,	*Loved, being loved, having been loved.*
FUT.	Am-andus, a, um,	*To be loved, proper,* or *necessary to be loved.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Amor,	Amer,	Āmāre.	Amāri,	
IMP.	Amābar,	Amārer,			
PERF.	Amātus sum,	Amātus sim,		Esse, *or* Fuisse amātus,	Amātus,
PLUP.	Amātus ĕram,	Amātus essem.			
FUT.	Amābor,			Amātum īri.	Amandus.
F.-PERF.	Amātus fuĕro.				

After the same manner, inflect:

Creor,	creāri,	creātus,	*To be created.*
Rŏgor,	rogāri,	rogātus,	*To be asked.*
Vŏcor,	vocāri,	vocātus,	*To be called.*
Dŏmor,	domāri,	domĭtus,	*To be tamed.*

192.—§ 59. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation of the verb,—conjugate it;—give the tense, mood, voice, person, number, and translation, of the following words, always following the same order;* thus,—*Amor*, verb transitive, first conjugation; *āmo, amāre, amāvi, amātum*,—found in the present indicative passive, first person singular, "I am loved."

Amabātur, amantur, amātus est, amabĭtur, amābar, amarētur, amentur, amātus sim, amātus fuĕro, amāti fuĕrunt, amāti essēmus, amabamĭni, amāris, amātus esset, amāti fuissent, amabuntur, amantor, amāre, amātus esse, amātus, amātum īri, amandus, amemĭni, amaremĭni, amantur, creātur, crearētur, vocabĭtur, domantur, vocātus sum; &c.

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, giving the part of the verb used;* thus, "I am loved," *āmor*, in the present indicative passive, first person singular.

He is loved, they are loved, I have been loved, they were created, he had been called, they will be tamed, I might be loved, they may have been loved, to be loved, to have been called, I had been called, being called, they are tamed, they have been tamed, he will be loved, they will have been loved, they may be called, I may be called, he might have been created, they will be loved, &c.

3. *Translate the following sentences into English, according to the rules* 190.

Dīcit eum amāri,—illos vocātos esse,—me vocātum īri,—te amātum īri,—me creāri,—eos domāri,—illum amātum fŭisse,—nos domĭtos esse,—nos domĭtum īri,—illos amāri,—illos vocātum īri.

Dixit eum amāri,—illos vocātos esse,—me vocātum īri,—te amātum īri,—me creāri,—eos domāri,—illum amātum fuisse,—nos domĭtos esse,—nos domĭtum īri,—illos amāri,—illos vocātum īri,—te amāri.

Dīcet eum amāri, &c., as in the preceding.

4. *Translate the following English into Latin, taking care that the participle of the perfect infinitive be put in the same gender, number, and case, as the accusative before it.*

He says that I am loved,—that he was loved,—that he will be called,—that they were created,—that we were tamed. *He*

said that I was called,—that we were created,—that they had been created. *He will say* that I was loved,—that I will be loved,—that they will be called,—that you are called,—that he will be called. *He said* that they had been tamed, &c.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE AND THE PASSIVE VOICE.

5. *Give the designation*, &c., *as directed* No. 1. Amābo, amārem, amarētur, amātus sim, ămant, vocātur, crearentur, domantur, domĭtum īri, creāri, ămant, amabuntur, amārent, amavissent, amavĕrat, amētis, amātis, amabātis, amavĕris, ăma, amavisse, amandum, amātur, vocātum īri, vocātus es, vocāti ĕrant, vocātus esset (*dĭcit se*, "he says that he"), amatūrum esse, (*dixit se*, "he said that he,") amāre, amāri, (*nos*, "that we,") vocātos esse, amanto, amābunt, amavistis, amavēre, amarētis, (*vos*, "that you,") rogāre, rogavisse, rogātos esse, rogatūros fuisse, rogābunt.

Conjugate and inflect the following verbs like *Amo;* viz:

Accūso, *I accuse.*	Certo, *I strive.*	Repăro, *I repair.*
Æstĭmo, *I value.*	Cogĭto, *I think.*	Rŏgo, *I ask.*
Ambŭlo, *I walk.*	Festīno, *I hasten.*	Servo, *I keep.*
Cūro, *I care.*	Navĭgo, *I sail.*	Vīto, *I shun.*

193.—§ 60. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monĭtum,	*To advise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *I advise, do advise, am advising.* 157.

S. 1.	Mon-eo,	*I advise,*
2.	Mŏn-es,	*Thou advisest,*
3.	Mŏn-et,	*He advises;*
P. 1.	Mon-ēmus,	*We advise,*
2.	Mon-ētis,	*Ye advise,*
3.	Mon-ent,	*They advise.*

IMPERFECT, *advised, did advise, was advising.* 159.

S.	1. Mon-ēbam,	*I advised,*
	2. Mon-ēbas,	*Thou advisedst,*
	3. Mon-ēbat,	*He advised;*
P.	1. Mon-ebāmus,	*We advised,*
	2. Mon-ebātis,	*Ye advised,*
	3. Mon-ēbant,	*They advised.*

PERFECT Def., *have advised;* Indef., *advised, did advise.* 161

S.	1. Monu-i,	*I have advised,*
	2. Monu-isti,	*Thou hast advised,*
	3. Monu-it,	*He has advised;*
P.	1. Monu-ĭmus,	*We have advised,*
	2. Monu-istis,	*Ye have advised,*
	3. Monu-ērunt, *or* -ēre,	*They have advised.*

PLUPERFECT, *had advised.* 165.

S.	1. Monu-ĕram,	*I had advised.*
	2. Monu-ĕras,	*Thou hadst advised,*
	3. Monu-ĕrat,	*He had advised;*
P.	1. Monu-erāmus,	*We had advised,*
	2. Monu-erātis,	*Ye had advised,*
	3. Monu-ĕrant,	*They had advised.*

FUTURE, *shall,* or *will advise.* 167.

S.	1. Mon-ēbo,	*I shall,* or *will advise,*
	2. Mon-ēbis,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt advise*
	3. Mon-ēbit,	*He shall,* or *will advise;*
P.	1. Mon-ebĭmus,	*We shall,* or *will advise,*
	2. Mon-ebĭtis,	*Ye shall,* or *will advise,*
	3. Mon-ēbunt,	*They shall,* or *will advise*

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall,* or *will have advised.* 168.

S.	1. Monu-ĕro,	*I shall,* or *will have advised,*
	2. Monu-ĕris,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt have advised,*
	3. Monu-ĕrit,	*He shall,* or *will have advised;*
P.	1. Monu-erĭmus,	*We shall,* or *will have advised,*
	2. Monu-erĭtis,	*Ye shall,* or *will have advised,*
	3. Monu-ĕrint,	*They shall,* or *will have advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can advise*. 171.

S.	1. Mon-eam,	*I may*, or *can advise*,
	2. Mon-eas,	*Thou mayst*, or *canst advise*,
	3. Mon-eat,	*He may*, or *can advise*;
P.	1. Mon-eāmus,	*We may*, or *can advise*,
	2. Mon-eātis,	*Ye may*, or *can advise*,
	3. Mon-eant,	*They may*, or *can advise*.

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would*, or *should advise*. 172.

S.	1. Mon-ērem,	*I might advise*,
	2. Mon-ēres,	*Thou mightst advise*,
	3. Mon-ēret,	*He might advise*;
P.	1. Mon-erēmus,	*We might advise*,
	2. Mon-erētis,	*Ye might advise*,
	3. Mon-ērent,	*They might advise*.

PERFECT, *may have advised*. 173.

S.	1. Monu-ĕrim,	*I may have advised*,
	2. Monu-ĕris,	*Thou mayst have advised*,
	3. Monu-ĕrit,	*He may have advised*;
P.	1. Monu-erĭmus,	*We may have advised*,
	2. Monu-erĭtis,	*Ye may have advised*,
	3. Monu-ĕrint,	*They may have advised*.

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would*, or *should have advised*. 174.

S.	1. Monu-issem,	*I might have advised*,
	2. Monu-isses,	*Thou mightst have advised*,
	3. Monu-isset,	*He might have advised*;
P.	1. Monu-issēmus,	*We might have advised*,
	2. Monu-issētis,	*Ye might have advised*,
	3. Monu-issent,	*They might have advised*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S.	2. Mŏn-e, *or* -ēto,	*Advise thou* (149),
	3. Mon-ēto,	*Let him advise*;
P.	2. Mon-ēte, *or* etōte,	*Advise ye* or *you*,
	3. Mon-ento,	*Let them advise*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mon-ēre,	*To advise* (178 and 180),
PERF.	Monu-isse,	*To have advised*,
FUT.	Esse monitūrus,	*To be about to advise*,
F.-PERF.	Fuisse monitūrus,	*To have been about to advise.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Mŏn-ens,	*Advising*,
FUT.	Mon-itūrus,	*About to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Mon-endum,	*Advising*,
Gen.	Mon-endi,	*Of advising*,
Dat.	Mon-endo,	*To advising*,
Acc.	Mon-endum,	*Advising*,
Abl.	Mon-endo,	*With*, &c., *advising.*

SUPINES.

FORMER,	Mon-ĭtum,	*To advise*,
LATTER,	Mon-ĭtu,	*To be advised*, or *to advise.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Moneo,	Moneam,	Mŏnē.	Monēre,	Mŏnens,
IMP.	Monēbam,	Monērem,			
PERF.	Monui,	Monuĕrim,		Monuisse,	
PLUP.	Monuĕram,	Monuissem.			
FUT.	Monēbo,			Esse monitūrus,	Monitūrus.
F.-PERF.	Monuĕro.			Fuisse monitūrus.	

After the same manner, inflect:

Doc-eo,	doc-ēre,	docu-i,	doc-tum,	*To teach.*
Jub-eo,	jub-ēre,	juss-i,	jus-sum,	*To order.*
Vid-eo,	vid-ēre,	vīd-i,	vī-sum,	*To see.*

194.—§ 61. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation*, &c., *as directed* 190–1.—Monēbo, monuit, monēret, monuĕrit, mŏne, monuisse, mŏnens, monendum, monēbat, mŏnent, monento, monuisti, monuēre,

monuerātis, monuissent.—Dŏcent, jubēbat, jussĕrat, vidēret, videat, vidēbit, docuĕris, dŏce, doctūrus, jussūrus, vīsum, jussu, dŏcens, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin*, &c., *as directed* 190–2. —I have advised, I will advise, he may advise, I might advise, he will have advised, they advise, they had advised, they might have advised, thou hast advised, ye have advised, I did advise, he was advising.—He teaches, they taught, we had ordered, we would have ordered, I saw, I have seen, thou wilt see, he may see, they would have ordered, &c.

3. *Translate according to the rules* 190–3, 4.—*Dīcit* (he says) me monēre,—nos monuisse,—illos monēre,—vos monitūros esse,—me monitūrum fuisse.—*Dixit* (he said) se monēre,—nos vidēre,—eum vidisse,—nos visūros esse,—me visūrum esse,—me visūrum fuisse,—vos vidisse,—se docēre,—nos docuisse,—vos doctūros esse,—illam (*that she*) visūram esse,—illum doctūrum esse, &c.

4. *As directed* 190–3 *and* 5. *He says* that I advised; *he said* that I advised,—that I had advised,—that I would advise. *He says* that I will advise,—that I would have advised. *He said* that he (*se*) saw,—had seen,—would see,—would have seen. *I advise* that you should order. *He says* that I am advising,—that we will order, &c.

195.—§ 62. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Moneor,	monēri,	monĭtus,	*To be advised.*

PRESENT TENSE, *am advised.* 157–6.

S. 1.	Mon-eor,	*I am advised,*
2.	Mon-ēris, *or* -ēre,	*Thou art advised,*
3.	Mon-ētur,	*He is advised;*
P. 1.	Mon-ēmur,	*We are advised,*
2.	Mon-emĭni,	*Ye are advised,*
3.	Mon-entur,	*They are advised.*

IMPERFECT, *was advised.* 160–5.

S.	1. Mon-ēbar,	*I was advised,*
	2. Mon-ebāris, *or* -ebāre,	*Thou wast advised,*
	3. Mon-ebātur,	*He was advised;*
P.	1. Mon-ebāmur,	*We were advised,*
	2. Mon-ebamĭni,	*Ye were advised,*
	3. Mon-ebantur,	*They were advised.*

PERFECT, *have been, was, am advised.* 164–5.

S.	1. Mon-ĭtus sum, *or* fui,	*I have been advised,*
	2. Mon-ĭtus es, *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been advised,*
	3. Mon-ĭtus est, *or* fuit,	*He has been advised;*
P.	1. Mon-ĭti sŭmus, *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been advised,*
	2. Mon-ĭti estis, *or* fuistis,	*Ye have been advised,*
	3. Mon-ĭti sunt, fuērunt, &c.,	*They have been advised.*

PLUPERFECT, *had been advised.* 166–2.

S.	1. Mon-ĭtus ĕram, *or* fuĕram,	*I had been advised,*
	2. Mon-ĭtus ĕras, *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been advised,*
	3. Mon-ĭtus ĕrat, *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been advised;*
P.	1. Mon-ĭti erāmus, *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been advised,*
	2. Mon-ĭti erātis, *or* fuerātis,	*Ye had been advised,*
	3. Mon-ĭti ĕrant, *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been advised.*

FUTURE, *shall,* or *will be advised.* 167–3.

S.	1. Mon-ēbor,	*I shall,* or *will be advised,*
	2. Mon-ebĕris, *or* -ebĕre,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt be advised,*
	3. Mon-ebĭtur,	*He shall,* or *will be advised,*
P.	1. Mon-ebĭmur,	*We shall,* or *will be advised*
	2. Mon-ebimĭni,	*Ye shall,* or *will be advised,*
	3. Mon-ebuntur,	*They shall,* or *will be advised*

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall,* or *will have been advised.* 168–4.

S.	1. Mon-ĭtus fuĕro,	*I shall have been advised,*
	2. Mon-ĭtus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been advised,*
	3. Mon-ĭtus fuĕrit,	*He will have been advised;*
P.	1. Mon-ĭti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been advised,*
	2. Mon-ĭti fuerĭtis,	*Ye will have been advised,*
	3. Mon-ĭti fuĕrint,	*They will have been advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can be advised.*

S. 1.	Mon-ear,	*I may be advised,*
2.	Mon-eāris, *or* -eāre,	*Thou mayst be advised,*
3.	Mon-eātur,	*He may be advised;*
P. 1.	Mon-eāmur,	*We may be advised,*
2.	Mon-eamĭni,	*Ye may be advised,*
3.	Mon-eantur,	*They may be advised.*

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would*, or *should be advised.*

S. 1.	Mon-ērer,	*I might be advised,*
2.	Mon-erēris, *or* -erēre,	*Thou mightst be advised,*
3.	Mon-erētur,	*He might be advised;*
P. 1.	Mon-erēmur,	*We might be advised,*
2.	Mon-eremĭni,	*Ye might be advised,*
3.	Mon-erentur,	*They might be advised.*

PERFECT, *may have been advised.*

S.	Monĭtus sim, *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been advised,*
	Monĭtus sis, *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayst have been advised,*
	Monĭtus sit, *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been advised;*
P.	Monĭti sīmus, *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been advised,*
	Monĭti sītis, *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye may have been advised,*
	Monĭti sint, *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been advised.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would*, or *should have been advised.*

S.	Monĭtus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might have been advised,*
	Monĭtus esses, *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightst have been advised,*
	Monĭtus esset, *or* fuisset,	*He might have been advised;*
P.	Monĭti essēmus, *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been advised,*
	Monĭti essētis, *or* fuissētis,	*Ye might have been advised,*
	Monĭti essent, *or* fuissent,	*They might have been advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2.	Mon-ēre, *or* -ētor,	*Be thou advised,*
3.	Mon-ētor,	*Let him be advised;*
P. 2.	Mon-emĭni,	*Be ye advised,*
3	Mon-entor,	*Let them be advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mon-ēri,	*To be advised* (178–180),
PERF.	Esse, *or* fuisse monĭtus,	*To have been advised,*
FUT.	Mon-ĭtum īri,	*To be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Mon-ĭtus, a, um,	*Advised, being advised,* or *having been advised,*
FUT.	Mon-endus, a, um,	*To be advised, proper,* or *necessary to be advised.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Moneor,	Monear,	Monēre.	Monēri,	
IMP.	Monēbar,	Monērer,			
PERF.	Monĭtus sum,	Monĭtus sim,		Esse, *or* Fuisse monĭtus,	Monĭtus,
PLUP.	Monĭtus ĕram,	Monĭtus essem.			
FUT.	Monēbor,			Monĭtum īri.	Monendus.
F.-PERF.	Monĭtus fuĕro.				

After the same manner, inflect:

Doceor,	docēri,	doctus,	*To be taught.*
Jubeor,	jubēri,	jussus,	*To be ordered.*
Videor,	vidēri,	vīsus,	*To be seen.*

196.—§ 63. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation,* &c., *as directed* 192–1. Moneor, monētur, monebātur, monebĭtur, monĭtus est, monĭti estis, moneāmur, monerētur, monĭtus fuĕro, monēre, monēri, monĭtus, monĭtus esse, monendus. Viderētur, vīsus, vīsum īri, docerentur, doceantur, docemĭni, doceamĭni, jubebĭtur, jussi fuērunt, juberentur, jubētor, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* 192–2: I was advised, he has been advised;—he may be advised, we will be advised, we were advised, I am advised, they might have been advised. Be ye advised, to be about to be advised, to be advised, he may have been seen;—they should be ordered, we will be seen, they will be taught, having been taught, necessary to be taught, let them be taught; they have been

ordered, we might have been ordered, to be about to be ordered, being ordered, they may have been ordered, &c.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

3. *Give the designation, &c., as directed* 190–1, 192–1. Monēbam, monuĕrat, monuĕrit, monēbunt, moneam, mŏne, monēbur, monĭtus es, monuit, monēri, doctus sum, docear, docērer, docebĭtur, docento, docentor, docentur, jŭbet, jussērunt, jussĕrint, jubēbo, juberentur, jussus esse, jŭbe, video, vĭdent, viderētur, vīde, vidistis, viderātis, vidērent, vidĕro, videndum, vĭdens, visūrus, vidisse, vīsum īri, vidēri, monebuntur, moneantur, viderentur, jussĕrim, jubēbam, jubērer, videntur, docuĕrunt, dŏce, dŏcens.

4. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* 190–2, 192–2: I am advised, he advises, they will advise, ye have advised, they will have advised, he will be advised, he is taught, he has taught, they will teach, I will see, they may see, they are seen, he has been seen, to order, to have been ordered, ordering, about to order, to have seen, I might see, I might have been seen, they will not (*non*) see, he will not see, I do not advise, he is teaching, he is not teaching, he will not order, I will order, &c.

5. *As directed* 190–3, 192–4. *Dicit* se monēre,—nos monuisse,—eum monitūrum esse,—vos vidēre,—eum vīsum īri. *Dixit* se monēre,—nos monuisse,—eum monitūrum esse,—vos vidēre,—eum vīsum īri. *Dicet* se monēre, &c.,—vos monuisse,—homĭnes monitūros esse,—femĭnam monitūram esse, vos jubēre.

6. *As directed* 190–5. *He says* that he advises,—that he will advise,—that we have advised. *He said* that I advised,—that he had advised,—that they would have advised,—that I would order,—would have ordered,—would have been ordered,—was taught,—had been taught,—would have been taught, &c.

197.—§ 64. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Rĕg-o,	reg-ĕre,	rex-i,	rect-um,	*To rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *rule, do rule, am ruling.* 157.

S.	1. Rĕg-o,	*I rule, do rule, am ruling,*
	2. Rĕg-is,*	*Thou rulest, dost rule, art ruling,*
	3. Rĕg-it,	*He rules, does rule, is ruling;*
P.	1. Reg-ĭmus,	*We rule, do rule, are ruling,*
	2. Reg-ītis,	*Ye rule, do rule, are ruling,*
	3. Reg-unt,	*They rule, do rule, are ruling.*

IMPERFECT, *ruled, did rule, was ruling.* 159.

S.	1. Reg-ēbam,	*I ruled, did rule, was ruling,*
	2. Reg-ēbas,	*Thou ruledst, didst rule, wast ruling,*
	3. Reg-ēbat,	*He ruled, did rule, was ruling;*
P.	1. Reg-ebāmus,	*We ruled, did rule, were ruling,*
	2. Reg-ebātis,	*Ye ruled, did rule, were ruling,*
	3. Reg-ēbant,	*They ruled, did rule, were ruling.*

PERFECT Def., *have ruled;* Indef., *ruled, did rule.* 161.

S.	1. Rex-i,	*I have ruled, ruled, did rule,*
	2. Rex-isti,	*Thou hast ruled, ruledst, didst rule.*
	3. Rex-it,	*He has ruled, ruled, did rule;*
P.	1. Rex-ĭmus,	*We have ruled, ruled, did rule,*
	2. Rex-istis,	*Ye have ruled, ruled, did rule,*
	3. Rex-ērunt, *or* -ēre,	*They have ruled, ruled, did rule.*

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled.* 165.

S.	1. Rex-ĕram,	*I had ruled,*
	2. Rex-ĕras,	*Thou hadst ruled,*
	3. Rex-ĕrat,	*He had ruled;*
P.	1. Rex-erāmus,	*We had ruled,*
	2. Rex-erātis,	*Ye had ruled,*
	3. Rex-ĕrant,	*They had ruled.*

FUTURE, *shall,* or *will rule.* 167.

S.	1. Rĕg-am,	*I shall,* or *will rule,*
	2. Rĕg-es,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt rule,*
	3. Rĕg-et,	*He shall,* or *will rule;*
P.	1. Reg-ēmus,	*We shall,* or *will rule,*
	2. Reg-ētis,	*Ye shall,* or *will rule,*
	3. Reg-ent,	*They shall,* or *will rule.*

* *C* and *g* are hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, and soft like *s* and *j* before *e* and *i*. 17–8. Soft *g* is here marked in Italics, and sounds like *j*.

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall*, or *will have ruled*. 168.

S.	1. Rex-ĕro,	*I shall*, or *will have ruled*,
	2. Rex-ĕris,	*Thou shalt*, or *wilt have ruled*,
	3. Rex-ĕrit,	*He shall*, or *will have ruled*;
P.	1. Rex-erĭmus,	*We shall*, or *will have ruled*,
	2. Rex-erĭtis,	*Ye shall*, or *will have ruled*,
	3. Rex-ĕrint,	*They shall*, or *will have ruled*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can rule*. 171.

S.	1. Rĕg-am,	*I may*, or *can rule*,
	2. Rĕg-as,	*Thou mayst*, or *canst rule*,
	3. Rĕg-at,	*He may*, or *can rule*;
P.	1. Reg-āmus,	*We may*, or *can rule*,
	2. Reg-ātis,	*Ye may*, or *can rule*,
	3. Reg-ant,	*They may*, or *can rule*.

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should rule*. 172.

S.	1. Reg-ĕrem,	*I might rule*,
	2. Reg-ĕres,	*Thou mightst rule*,
	3. Reg-ĕret,	*He might rule*;
P.	1. Reg-erēmus,	*We might rule*,
	2. Reg-erētis,	*Ye might rule*,
	3. Reg-ĕrent,	*They might rule*.

PERFECT, *may have ruled*. 173.

S.	1. Rex-ĕrim,	*I may have ruled*,
	2. Rex-ĕris,	*Thou mayst have ruled*
	3. Rex-ĕrit,	*He may have ruled*;
P.	1. Rex-erĭmus,	*We may have ruled*,
	2. Rex-erĭtis,	*Ye may have ruled*,
	3. Rex-ĕrint,	*They may have ruled*.

PLUPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have ruled*. 174.

S.	1. Rex-issem,	*I might have ruled*,
	2. Rex-isses,	*Thou mightst have ruled*,
	3. Rex-isset,	*He might have ruled*;
P.	1. Rex-issēmus,	*We might have ruled*,
	2. Rex-issētis,	*Ye might have ruled*,
	3. Rex-issent,	*They might have ruled*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2.	Rĕg-e, *or* -īto,	*Rule thou*, (149,)
3.	Reg-īto,	*Let him rule;*
P. 2.	Reg-īte, *or* itōte,	*Rule ye*,
3.	Reg-unto,	*Let them rule.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Reg-ĕre,	*To rule* (178–180),
PERF.	Rex-isse,	*To have ruled*,
FUT.	Esse rectūrus,	*To be about to rule*,
F.-PERF.	Fuisse rectūrus,	*To have been about to rule.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Rĕg-ens,	*Ruling.*
FUT.	Rect-ūrus, a, um,	*About to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Reg-endum,	*Ruling*,
Gen.	Reg-endi,	*Of ruling*,
Dat.	Reg-endo,	*To ruling*,
Acc.	Reg-endum,	*Ruling*,
Abl.	Reg-endo,	*With*, &c., *ruling.*

SUPINES.

FORMER,	Rect-um,	*To rule.*
LATTER,	Rect-u,	*To be ruled*, or *to rule.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imp.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Rĕgo,	Rĕgam,	Rĕge.	Regĕre,	Regens,
IMP.	Regēbam,	Regĕrem,			
PERF.	Rexi,	Rexĕrim,		Rexisse,	
PLUP.	Rexĕram,	Rexissem.			
FUT.	Rĕgam,			Esse rectūrus,	Rectūrus.
F.-PERF.	Rexĕro.			Fuisse rectūrus.	

After the same manner, inflect:

Lĕgo,	legĕre,	lēgi,	lectum,	*To read.*
Scrĭbo,	scrībĕre,	scripsi,	scriptum,	*To write.*
Cædo,	cædĕre,	cecīdi,	cæsum,	*To slay.*

198.—EXAMPLE OF VERBS IN *-IO*, ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Capio,	Capĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	*To take*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
Pres.	Cap-io,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-iunt.
Imp.	Capi-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Perf.	Cēp-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Plup.	Cep-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Fut.	Capi-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
F. P.	Cep-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Capi-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
Imp.	Cap-ĕrem,	-ĕres,	-ĕret;	-erēmus,	-erētis,	-ĕrent.
Perf.	Cep-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plup.	Cep-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Cāpe, *or*	-īto,	-īto;	-īte, *or*	-itōte,	-iunto.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	Cap-ĕre,	Fut.	Esse captūrus,
Perf.	Cep-isse,	F. Perf.	Fuisse captūrus.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Capiens,	Fut.	Captūrus, a, um.

GERUNDS.		SUPINES.	
Nom.	Capi-endum,	Former,	Captum,
Gen.	Capi-endi, &c.	Latter,	Captu.

So also:

Rapio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	*To seize.*
Fugio,	fugĕre,	fūgi,	fugĭtum,	*To flee.*

199.—§ 65. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation*, &c., *as directed* 190–1.—Regēbam, rexisti, rexĕram, rĕgam, regĕrem, rexĕro, rexisset, rĕge, rexisse, rĕgens. Scrībit, scribēbat, scripsit, scribēmus, scribāmus, lĕgunt, legĕret, lĕget, lĕge, legērunt, legĕrant. Capiunt, capiēbat, capiunto, capĕrem, cēpit, cepĕrim, cepĕram, cepissem, căpit, capĕre, capiendum, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* 190–2.—Hę rules, we are ruling, he has ruled, we will rule, they will have ruled, ye might rule, they may rule, we will rule, they were ruling, he had ruled, they might have ruled. He has read, they will read, we shall read, to have read, to have written, to write, writing, write thou, let them write.

3. *Translate according to the Rules* 190–3, 4. (*Dĭcit*, "he says,") me regĕre,—me scribĕre,—se rexisse,—nos rectūros esse,—illum scripsisse,—me scriptūrum fuisse,—vos lectūros esse,—me capĕre,—vos cepisse,—vos captūros esse,—vos captūros fuisse. (*Dixit*, "he said,") me regĕre,—me rexisse,—me rectūrum esse, &c.

4. *As directed* 190–5.—*He says* that I rule,—that he ruled,—that we write,—that they will write,—that he is about to write. *He writes* that he rules,—that you are reading,—that you will write. *He said* that he was writing,—that you had written,—that we would write,—would have written. He will say that I am ruling,—was ruling,—will rule, &c.

200.—§ 66. PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Rĕg-or,	rĕg-i,	rectus,	*To be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am ruled.* 157–6.

S. 1.	Rĕg-or,	*I am ruled,*
2.	Reg-ĕris, *or* -ĕre,	*Thou art ruled,*
3.	Reg-ĭtur,	*He is ruled;*
P. 1.	Reg-ĭmur,	*We are ruled,*
2.	Reg-imĭni,	*Ye are ruled,*
3.	Reg-untur,	*They are ruled.*

IMPERFECT, *was ruled.* 160–5.

S.	1. Reg-ēbar,	*I was ruled,*
	2. Reg-ebāris, *or* -ebāre,	*Thou wast ruled,*
	3. Reg-ebātur,	*He was ruled;*
P.	1. Reg-ebāmur,	*We were ruled,*
	2. Reg-ebamĭni,	*Ye were ruled,*
	3. Reg-ebantur,	*They were ruled.*

PERFECT, *have been ruled, was ruled, am ruled.* 164–5

S.	1. Rectus sum, *or* fui,	*I have been ruled,*
	2. Rectus es, *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been ruled,*
	3. Rectus est, *or* fuit,	*He has been ruled;*
P.	1. Recti sŭmus, *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been ruled,*
	2. Recti estis, *or* fuistis,	*Ye have been ruled,*
	3. Recti sunt, fuērunt, *or* fuēre,	*They have been ruled.*

PLUPERFECT, *had been ruled.* 166–2.

S.	1. Rectus ĕram, *or* fuĕram,	*I had been ruled,*
	2. Rectus ĕras, *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been ruled,*
	3. Rectus ĕrat, *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been ruled;*
P.	1. Recti erāmus, *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been ruled,*
	2. Recti erātis, *or* fuerātis,	*Ye had been ruled,*
	3. Recti ĕrant, *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been ruled.*

FUTURE, *shall,* or *will be ruled.* 167–3.

S.	1. Rĕg-ar,	*I shall,* or *will be ruled,*
	2. Reg-ēris, *or* -ēre,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt be ruled,*
	3. Reg-ētur,	*He shall,* or *will be ruled;*
P.	1. Reg-ēmur,	*We shall,* or *will be ruled,*
	2. Reg-emĭni,	*Ye shall,* or *will be ruled,*
	3. Reg-entur,	*They shall,* or *will be ruled.*

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall,* or *will have been ruled.* 168–4.

S.	1. Rectus fuĕro,	*I shall,* or *will have been ruled,*
	2. Rectus fuĕris,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt have been ruled,*
	3. Rectus fuĕrit,	*He shall,* or *will have been ruled;*
P.	1. Recti fuerĭmus,	*We shall,* or *will have been ruled,*
	2. Recti fuerĭtis,	*Ye shall,* or *will have been ruled,*
	3. Recti fuĕrint,	*They shall,* or *will have been ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can be ruled.*

S. 1.	Rĕg-ar,	*I may*, or *can be ruled*,
2.	Reg-āris, *or* -āre,	*Thou mayst*, or *canst be ruled*,
3.	Reg-ātur,	*He may*, or *can be ruled;*
P. 1.	Reg-āmur,	*We may*, or *can be ruled*,
2.	Reg-amĭni,	*Ye may*, or *can be ruled*,
3.	Reg-antur,	*They may*, or *can be ruled.*

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would*, or *should be ruled.*

S. 1.	Reg-ĕrer,	*I might be ruled*,
2.	Reg-erēris, *or* erēre,	*Thou mightst be ruled*,
3.	Reg-erētur,	*He might be ruled;*
P. 1.	Reg-erēmur,	*We might be ruled*,
2.	Reg-eremĭni,	*Ye might be ruled*,
3.	Reg-erentur,	*They might be ruled.*

PERFECT, *may have been ruled.*

S. 1.	Rectus sim, *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been ruled*,
2.	Rectus sis, *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayst have been ruled*,
3.	Rectus sit, *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been ruled;*
P. 1.	Recti sīmus, *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been ruled*,
2.	Recti sītis, *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye may have been ruled*,
3.	Recti sint, *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been ruled.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would*, or *should have been ruled.*

S. 1.	Rectus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might have been ruled*,
2.	Rectus esses, *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightst have been ruled*,
3.	Rectus esset, *or* fuisset,	*He might have been ruled;*
P. 1.	Recti essēmus, *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been ruled*,
2.	Recti essētis, *or* fuissētis,	*Ye might have been ruled*,
3.	Recti essent, *or* fuissent,	*They might have been ruled*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2.	Reg-ĕre, *or* -ĭtor,	*Be thou ruled*,
3.	Reg-ĭtor,	*Let him be ruled;*
P. 2.	Reg-imĭni,	*Be ye ruled*,
3.	Reg-untor,	*Let them be ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Rĕg-i,	*To be ruled* (178 and 180),
Perf.	Esse, *or* fuisse rectus,	*To have been ruled,*
Fut.	Rectum īri,	*To be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perf.	Rectus, a, um,	*Ruled, being ruled, having been ruled.*
Fut.	Regendus, a, um,	*To be ruled, proper,* or *necessary to be ruled.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Part.*
Pres.	Rĕgor,	Rĕgar,	Regĕre.	Rĕgi,	
Imp.	Regēbar,	Regĕrer,			
Perf.	Rectus sum,	Rectus sim,		Esse, *or* fuisse rectus,	Rectus,
Plup.	Rectus ĕram,	Rectus essem.			
Fut.	Rĕgar,			Rectum īri.	Regendus.
F.-Perf.	Rectus fuĕro.				

After the same manner, inflect:

Lĕgor,	lĕgi,	lectus,	*To be read.*
Scrībor,	scrībi,	scriptus,	*To be written.*
Cædor,	cædi,	cæsus,	*To be slain.*

201.—EXAMPLE OF VERBS IN *-IO.*—PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Capior,	căpi,	captus,	*To be taken.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Pres.	Cap-ior,	-ĕris, *or* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-imĭni,	-iuntur.
Imp.	Capi-ēbar,	-ebāris, *or* -ebāre,	-ebātur;	-ebāmur,	-ebamĭni,	-ebantur

Perf. Captus sum, *or* fui; captus es, *or* fuisti, &c.

Plup. Captus ĕram, *or* fuĕram; captus ĕras, *or* fuĕras, &c.

Fut.	Cap-iar,	-ēris, *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emĭni,	-entur

F.-P. Captus fuĕro, captus fuĕris, captus fuĕrit, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
PRES.	Cap-iar,	-āris, *or* -āre,	-ātur,	-āmur,	-amĭni,	-antur.
IMP.	Cap-ĕrer,	-erēris, *or* -erēre,	-erētur;	-erēmur,	-eremĭni,	-erentur.

PERF. Captus sim, *or* fuĕrim; captus sis, *or* fuĕris, &c.
PLUP. Captus essem, *or* fuissem; captus esses, *or* fuisses, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
PRES.	Cap-ĕre, *or* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-imĭni,	-iuntor.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
PRES. Căp-i,	PERF. Captus, a, um.
PERF. Esse, *or* fuisse captus,	FUT. Capiendus, a, um.
FUT. Captum īri.	

So also: Rapior, răpi, raptus, *To be seized.*

202.—§ 67. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation*, &c., *as directed* 192–1.—Regĭtur, regētur, regimĭni, rectus est, rectus fuĕrit, regĕrer, rĕgar, rĕgor, regĕre, reguntor, rectus, rectum īri, rectus esse, rĕgi, regebātur, reguntur, regentur, rectus sim, rectus esset. Capiar, capiuntur, capiuntor, capiebātur, captus sum, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* 192–2.—He is ruled, I was ruled, they will be ruled, they have been ruled, we might be ruled, he might have been ruled, they were ruled, ye had been ruled, to have been ruled, being ruled, to be ruled, let them be ruled. They are taken, they will be taken, let them be taken, they have been taken, he will be taken, they might be taken, be thou taken, &c.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

3. *Give the designation*, &c., *as directed*, 190–1 *and* 192–1.—Regēbat, rexērunt, rexĕrat, rĕget, rexit, rexĕrint, lĕgit, lēgit,

lĕget, lĕgat, legĕrit, scripsĕrit, scripsisse, scribĭtur, scriptus est, scriptum īri, lĕgi, legĕre, legisse, rexisse, lectus esse, legĭtor, rectus, rĕgens, scriptūrus, scribendus, lectu, scribĕre, scripsēre, legĕre, legēre, legimĭni, capiunt, capiuntor, captus sum, capĭtur, capĭtor, cepērunt, cepĕrint, scriptum esse, rexi, rĕgi, rĕgam, regĕret, &c.

4. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* 190–2, 192–2.—I rule, I am ruled, he rules, they are ruled, they have ruled, they have been ruled, they will rule, he might rule, they might be ruled, we will read, he may have been taken, they will have been ruled, he might have written, to be ruled, rule thou, let him be ruled, they were writing, they might write, to have written, to have read, to have ruled, to have taken, they had written, had ruled, had read, had taken.

203.—§ 68. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum,	*To hear*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *hear, do hear, am hearing.* 157.

S. 1.	Aud-io,	*I hear, do hear, am hearing,*
2.	Aud-is,	*Thou hearest, dost hear, art hearing,*
3.	Aud-it,	*He hears, does hear, is hearing;*
P. 1.	Aud-īmus,	*We hear, do hear, are hearing,*
2.	Aud-ītis,	*Ye hear, do hear, are hearing,*
3.	Aud-iunt,	*They hear, do hear, are hearing.*

IMPERFECT, *heard, did hear, was hearing.* 159.

S. 1.	Audi-ēbam,	*I heard, did hear, was hearing,*
2.	Audi-ēbas,	*Thou heardst, didst hear, wast hearing,*
3.	Audi-ēbat,	*He heard, did hear, was hearing;*
P. 1.	Audi-ebāmus,	*We heard, did hear, were hearing,*
2.	Audi-ebātis,	*Ye heard, did hear, were hearing,*
3.	Audi-ēbant,	*They heard, did hear, were hearing.*

PERFECT Def., *have heard;* Indef., *heard, did hear.* 161.

S.	1. Audīv-i,	*I have heard, heard, did hear,*
	2. Audiv-isti,	*Thou hast heard, heardst, didst hear,*
	3. Audīv-it,	*He has heard, heard, did hear;*
P.	1. Audiv-ĭmus,	*We have heard, heard, did hear,*
	2. Audiv-istis,	*Ye have heard, heard, did hear,*
	3. Audiv-ērunt, *or,* -ēre,	*They have heard, heard, did hear.*

PLUPERFECT, *had heard.* 165.

S.	1. Audiv-ĕram,	*I had heard,*
	2. Audiv-ĕras,	*Thou hadst heard,*
	3. Audiv-ĕrat,	*He had heard;*
P.	1. Audiv-erāmus,	*We had heard,*
	2. Audiv-erātis,	*Ye had heard,*
	3. Audiv-ĕrant,	*They had heard.*

FUTURE, *shall,* or *will hear.* 167.

S.	1. Audi-am,	*I shall,* or *will hear,*
	2. Audi-es,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt hear,*
	3. Audi-et,	*He shall,* or *will hear;*
P.	1. Audi-ēmus,	*We shall,* or *will hear,*
	2. Audi-ētis,	*Ye shall,* or *will hear,*
	3. Audi-ent,	*They shall,* or *will hear.*

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall,* or *will have heard.* 168.

S.	1. Audiv-ĕro,	*I shall* or *will have heard,*
	2. Audiv-ĕris,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt have heard,*
	3. Audiv-ĕrit,	*He shall,* or *will have heard;*
P.	1. Audiv-erĭmus,	*We shall,* or *will have heard,*
	2. Audiv-erĭtis,	*Ye shall,* or *will have heard,*
	3. Audiv-ĕrint,	*They shall,* or *will have heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may,* or *can hear.* 171.

S.	1. Audi-am,	*I may,* or *can hear,*
	2. Audi-as,	*Thou mayst,* or *canst hear,*
	3. Audi-at,	*He may,* or *can hear;*
P.	1. Audi-āmus,	*We may,* or *can hear,*
	2. Audi-ātis,	*Ye may,* or *can hear,*
	3. Audi-ant,	*They may,* or *can hear.*

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should hear.* 172

S.	1.	Aud-īrem,	*I might hear,*
	2.	Aud-īres,	*Thou mightst hear,*
	3.	Aud-īret,	*He might hear;*
P.	1.	Aud-irēmus,	*We might hear,*
	2.	Aud-irētis,	*Ye might hear,*
	3.	Aud-īrent,	*They might hear.*

PERFECT, *may have heard.* 173.

S.	1.	Audiv-ĕrim,	*I may have heard,*
	2.	Audiv-ĕris,	*Thou mayst have heard,*
	3.	Audiv-ĕrit,	*He may have heard;*
P.	1.	Audiv-erĭmus,	*We may have heard,*
	2.	Audiv-erĭtis,	*Ye may have heard,*
	3.	Audiv-ĕrint,	*They may have heard.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should hear.* 174.

S.	1.	Audiv-issem,	*I might have heard,*
	2.	Audiv-isses,	*Thou mightst have heard,*
	3.	Audiv-isset,	*He might have heard;*
P.	1.	Audiv-issēmus,	*We might have heard,*
	2.	Audiv-issētis,	*Ye might have heard,*
	3.	Audiv-issent,	*They might have heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S.	2.	Aud-i, *or* -īto,	*Hear thou* (149),
	3.	Aud-īto,	*Let him hear;*
P.	2.	Aud-īte, *or* -itōte,	*Hear ye,* or *you,*
	3.	Aud-iunto,	*Let them hear.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Aud-īre,	*To hear* (178–180),
PERF.	Audiv-isse,	*To have heard,*
FUT.	Esse auditūrus,	*To be about to hear,*
F.-PERF.	Fuisse auditūrus,	*To have been about to hear.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Audiens,	*Hearing,*
FUT.	Aud-itūrus, a, um,	*About to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Aud-iendum,	*Hearing,*
Gen.	Aud-iendi,	*Of hearing,*
Dat.	Aud-iendo,	*To hearing,*
Acc.	Aud-iendum,	*Hearing,*
Abl.	Aud-iendo,	*With,* &c., *hearing.*

SUPINES.

Former,	Audīt-um,	*To hear,*
Latter,	Audīt-u,	*To be heard,* or *to hear.*

Synopsis of the Moods and Tenses.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles*
Pres.	Audio,	Audiam,	Audi.	Audīre,	Audiens,
Imp.	Audiēbam,	Audīrem,			
Perf	Audīvi,	Audīvĕrim,		Audivisse,	
Plup.	Audivĕram,	Audivissem.			
Fut.	Audiam,			Esse auditūrus,	Auditūrus.
F.-Perf.	Audivĕro.			Fuisse auditūrus.	

After the same manner, inflect:

Munio,	munīre,	munīvi,	munītum,	*To fortify.*
Venio,	venīre,	vēni,	ventum,	*To come.*
Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	*To bind.*

204.—§ 69. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation,* &c., *as directed* 190–1.—Audio, audiunt, audīvit, audiet, audīrent, audi, audivisse, audivĕrant, audivērunt, muniant, munient, munivērunt, munivĕrint, muniunto, muniunt, venĕrat, venisset, vinxisti, vinxisse, vinciet, vincīrent, vinciēbam, veniens, ventum, ventūrus, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin,* &c., *as directed* 190–2.—I have heard, he heard, they were hearing, we will hear, you might hear, they could have heard, hear thou, let them hear, to have heard, hearing, to be about to hear, he shall have come, they will bind, let them bind, to have bound, binding, of binding, with binding, he had come, he had bound, they will fortify, I was hearing, they would have heard, the men

(*homĭnes*) may have heard, about to hear, of hearing, they had bound—may have bound—will have bound; bind ye, I have bound, to bind, to have bound, about to bind, binding, to have been about to fortify, to have fortified, &c.

3. *Translate according to the rule* 190–3, 4.—*Dĭcit* (*he says*) me audīre,—vos audīre,—eos audivisse,—hominem auditūrum esse,—hominem auditūrum fuisse,—homĭnes auditūros esse,—femĭnam, f., (*that the woman*) ventūram esse,—ventūram fuisse. *Dixit* (*he said*) se (*that he himself*) ventūrum esse —eum (*that he*, viz. some other person, not himself) ventūrum fuisse,—nos ventūros esse,—&c.

4. *As directed* 190–5.—*He says* that I hear,—that we hear, —that they have heard.—that they will hear,—that he (*himself*) will come,—that he (*some other*) will come,—that the men will come,—that the women will come. *He said* that he (*himself*) came,—that he (*another*) came,—that they had come,—that they would come,—that they would have come, —that the women would come,—would have come, &c. *He will say* that I hear,—that I heard,—that I will hear

---

205.—§ 70. PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Audĭor,	audīri,	audītus,	*To be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am heard.* 157–6.

S.	1. Aud-ĭor,	*I am heard,*
	2. Aud-īris, *or* -īre,	*Thou art heard,*
	3. Aud-ītur,	*He is heard;*
P.	1. Aud-īmur,	*We are heard,*
	2. Aud-īmĭni,	*Ye are heard,*
	3. Aud-iuntur,	*They are heard.*

IMPERFECT, *was heard.* 160–5.

S.	1. Audi-ēbar,	*I was heard,*
	2. Audi-ebāris, *or* -ebāre,	*Thou wast heard,*
	3. Audi-ebātur,	*He was heard;*
P.	1. Audi-ebāmur,	*We were heard,*
	2. Audi-ebamĭni,	*Ye were heard,*
	3. Audi-ebantur,	*They were heard.*

PERFECT, *have been heard, was heard, am heard.* 164–5.

S.	1. Audītus* sum, *or* fui,	*I have been heard,*
	2. Audītus es, *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been heard,*
	3. Audītus est, *or* fuit,	*He has been heard;*
P.	1. Audīti sumus, *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been heard,*
	2. Audīti estis, *or* fuistis,	*Ye have been heard,*
	3. Audīti sunt, fuērunt, *or* fuēre,	*They have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT, *had been heard.* 166–2.

S.	1. Audītus* ĕram, *or* fuĕram,	*I had been heard,*
	2. Audītus ĕras, *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been heard,*
	3. Audītus ĕrat, *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been heard;*
P.	1. Audīti erāmus, *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been heard,*
	2. Audīti erātis, *or* fuerātis,	*Ye had been heard,*
	3. Audīti ĕrant, *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been heard.*

FUTURE, *shall,* or *will be heard.* 167–3.

S.	1. Audi-ār,	*I shall,* or *will be heard,*
	2. Audi-ēris, *or* -ēre,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt be heard,*
	3. Audi-ētur,	*He shall,* or *will be heard;*
P.	1. Audi-ēmur,	*We shall,* or *will be heard,*
	2. Audi-emĭni,	*Ye shall,* or *will be heard,*
	3. Audi-entur,	*They shall,* or *will be heard.*

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall,* or *will have been heard.* 168–4.

S.	1. Audītus fuĕro,	*I shall* or *will have been heard,*
	2. Audītus fuĕris,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt have been heard,*
	3. Audītus fuĕrit,	*He shall,* or *will have been heard;*
P.	1. Audīti fuerĭmus,	*We shall,* or *will have been heard,*
	2. Audīti fuerĭtis,	*Ye shall,* or *will have been heard,*
	3. Audīti fuĕrint,	*They shall,* or *will have been heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may,* or *can be heard.*

S.	1. Audi-ar,	*I may,* or *can be heard,*
	2. Audi-āris, *or* -āre,	*Thou mayst,* or *canst be heard,*
	3. Audi-ātur,	*He may,* or *can be heard;*
P.	1. Audi-āmur,	*We may,* or *can be heard,*
	2. Audi-amĭni,	*Ye may,* or *can be heard,*
	3. Audi-antur,	*They may,* or *can be heard.*

* See 164–5, and Note.

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should be heard.*

S. 1.	Aud-īrer,	*I might be heard,*
2.	Aud-irēris, *or* -irēre,	*Thou mightst be heard,*
3.	Aud-irētur,	*He might be heard;*
P. 1.	Aud-irēmur,	*We might be heard,*
2.	Aud-iremĭni,	*Ye might be heard,*
3.	Aud-irentur,	*They might be heard.*

PERFECT, *may have been heard.*

S. 1.	Audītus sim, *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been heard,*
2.	Audītus sis, *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayst have been heard,*
3.	Audītus sit, *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been heard;*
P. 1.	Audīti sīmus, *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been heard,*
2.	Audīti sītis, *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye may have been heard,*
3.	Audīti sint, *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should have been heard.*

S. 1.	Audītus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might have been heard,*
2.	Audītus esses, *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightst have been heard,*
3.	Audītus esset, *or* fuisset,	*He might have been heard;*
P. 1.	Audīti essēmus, *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been heard,*
2.	Audīti essētis, *or* fuissētis,	*Ye might have been heard,*
3.	Audīti essent, *or* fuissent,	*They might have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2.	Aud-īre, *or* -ītor,	*Be thou heard,*
3.	Aud-ītor,	*Let him be heard;*
P. 2.	Aud-imĭni,	*Be ye heard,*
3.	Aud-iuntor,	*Let them be heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Aud-īri,	*To be heard* (178–180),
PERF.	Esse, *or* fuisse audītus,	*To have been heard,*
FUT.	Audītum īri,	*To be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Audītus, a, um,	*Heard, being heard, having been heard.*
FUT.	Audiendus, a, um,	*To be heard, proper,* or *necessary to be heard.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Audĭor,	Audiar,	Audīre.	Audīri,	
IMP.	Audiēbar,	Audīrer,			
PERF.	Audītus sum,	Audītus sim,		{ Esse, *or* fuisse audītus,	{ Audītus,
PLUP.	Audītus ĕram,	Audītus essem.		Audītum īri.	
FUT.	Audiar,				Audiendus.
F.-PERF.	Audītus fuĕro.				

After the same manner, inflect:

Munior,	munīri,	munītus,	*To be fortified.*
Polior,	polīri,	polītus,	*To be polished.*
Vincior,	vincīri,	vinctus,	*To be bound.*

206.—§ 71. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation*, &c., *as directed* 192–1.—Audior, audiar, audiēbatur, audītus sum, audiētur, audimĭni, audiemĭni, audiamĭni, audiremĭni, audītus fuĕris, audīre, audīri, audiuntur, audiuntor, audientur, audiantur, audīti sunt, audītus ĕrat, muniebantur, munītus fuĕrit, munītus esse, munītus, munītur, vincītur, vinciētur, vinciātur, vincītor, venītur.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* 192–2.—He is heard, we were heard, he has been heard, they will be heard, ye may be heard, he should be heard, hear ye, to be heard, to be about to be heard, I was bound, he will be bound, they would be bound, we may have been bound, to be fortified, being fortified, to be about to be fortified, to have been fortified, &c.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

3. *Give the designation*, &c., *as directed* 190–1, 192–1.—Audīvit, audivēre, audiebātur, audirētur, audiuntur, audiuntor, munient, munivĕrint, mūni, munīre, munītor, muniens; veniat, ventum, veniendi, vēni, venēre, ventum ĕrat, vinciunt, vinciuntor, vincīrent, vinxisset, vinctus esset, vinctus fuĕrit, vēnit, vĕnit, &c.

4. *Translate the following words into Latin, as directed* 190–2, 192–2.—I was heard, he heard, he has heard, we were heard.

ye had been heard, they will be heard, they may be heard, they might have been heard, let them come, they should come, they will come, they will have come, I might have been bound, thou hast been bound, thou wilt be bound, thou art bound, thou wast bound, to be about to be bound, being bound, necessary to be bound, binding, &c.

5. *As directed* 190-3.—*Dīcit* (*he says*) se audīre,—se audīvisse,—eum auditūrum esse,—eos auditūros fuisse,—eum auditum esse,—nos audītum īri. *Dixit* (*he said*) nos audīri,—vos audītos esse,—illos auditūros esse,—feminas auditūras fuisse,—feminas audītum īri,—vos vincīre, —vos vincīri, &c.

6. *Translate as directed* 190–5.—*He says* (*dīcit*) that he was heard,—that he will hear,—that he bound,—that he was bound,—that he will come,—that we will not (*non*) come. *He said* (*dixit*) that he (*himself*) heard,—that he (*some other*) heard,—that we would hear,—that they would have been heard,—that we are bound,—that we have been bound,—that we would be bound,—that he has polished,—has been polished,—might have polished,—might have been polished;—to have been polished,—bound,—fortified,—proper to be fortified. *He will say* (*dīcet*) that we will hear,—will be heard,—would have been bound,—polished, &c.

207.—§ 72. DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

1. DEPONENT VERBS* are those which, under a passive form, have an active signification; as, *lŏquor*, "I speak;" *morior*, "I die."

2. COMMON VERBS are those which, under a passive form, have an active or passive signification; as, *crimĭnor*, "I accuse," *or* "I am accused."

Obs. 1. All deponent verbs seem to have been originally passives. Hence, there are many verbs which, though found in the active voice, are used as deponents in the passive.

Obs. 2. In common verbs, the passive sense is generally

* So called from *depōno*, "I lay aside," because, though in the passive form, they have *laid aside* the passive sense.

confined to the perfect participle; thus, we can say *adeptus victoriam*, "having obtained the victory;" or, *victoriâ adeptâ*, "the victory being obtained." Hence, *adipiscor* is called a common verb, though in all its parts, except the perfect participle, it is usually deponent, or has an active signification.

Obs. 3. Deponent verbs are conjugated and inflected like the passive voice of the conjugations to which they belong; except that they have also the participles, gerunds, supines and future of the infinitive, like the active voice. 182–12, 13.

208.—§ 73. EXAMPLE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Mīror,	mirāri,	mirātus,	*To admire.*

[Inflected like *Amor*, 191.]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Mīr-or, -āris, *or* -āre, &c.,	*I admire, am admiring*, &c.
Imp.	Mir-ābar, -abāris, *or* -abāre,	*I admired, was admiring.*
Perf.	Mirātus sum, *or* fui, &c.,	*I have admired, I admired.*
Plup.	Miratus ĕram, *or* fuĕram,	*I had admired.*
Fut.	Mir-ābor, -abĕris, *or* -abĕre,	*I shall*, or *will admire.*
F.-Perf.	Mirātus fuĕro, &c.,	*I shall*, or *will have admired.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Mīr-er, -ēris, *or* -ēre, &c.,	*I may*, or *can admire.*
Imp.	Mir-ārer, -arēris, *or* -arēre,	*I might admire.*
Perf.	Mirātus sim, *or* fuĕrim, &c.,	*I may have admired.*
Plup.	Mirātus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might*, &c., *have admired.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Mir-āre, *or* -ātor, &c.,	*Admire thou*, &c. 149.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Mirāri,	*To admire.* 178–80.
Perf.	Mirātus esse, *or* fuisse,	*To have admired.*
Fut.	Miratūrus esse,	*To be about to admire.*
F.-Perf.	Miratūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to admire.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Mīrans,	*Admiring.*
Perf.	Mirātus,	*Having admired.*
F. Act.	Miratūrus, a, um,	*About to admire.*
F. Pass.	Mirandus, a, um,	*To be admired, deserving,* or *proper to be admired.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Mirandum,	*Admiring.*
Gen.	Mirandi, &c.,	*Of admiring.*

SUPINES.

Former,	Mirātum,	*To admire.*
Latter,	Mirātu,	*To be admired.*

Synopsis of the moods and tenses, as in *Amor.* 191.

209.—§ 74. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Deponents of the second conjugation are few in number. Of these, *medeor*, "to heal," has no participle of its own. Instead of the perfect participle, *medicātus* is used. *Mereor* has *merui*, as well as *meritus sum*, in the perfect indicative. *Reor* has no imperfect subjunctive.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Polliceor,	pollicēri,	pollicĭtus,	*To promise.*

[Inflected like *Moneor.* 195.]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Pollic-eor, -ēris, *or* -ēre, &c.,	*I promise*, &c.
Imp.	Pollic-ēbar, -ebāris, *or* -ebāre, &c.,	*I promised*, &c.
Perf.	Pollicĭtus sum, *or* fui, &c.,	*I have promised*, &c.
Plup.	Pollicĭtus ĕram, *or* fuĕram, &c.,	*I had promised*, &c.
Fut.	Pollic-ēbor, -ebĕris, *or* -ebĕre, &c.,	*I shall*, or *will promise.*
F.-Perf.	Pollicĭtus ĕro, *or* fuĕro, &c.,	*I shall*, or *will have promised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Pollice-ar, -āris, *or* -āre, &c.,	*I may*, or *can promise*, &c.
Imp.	Pollic-ērer, -erēris, *or* -erēre,	*I might*, &c., *promise.*
Perf.	Pollicĭtus sim, *or* fuĕrim, &c.,	*I may have promised*, &c.
Plup.	Pollicĭtus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might*, &c., *have promised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Pollic-ēre, *or* -ētor, &c.,	*Promise thou*, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Pollicēri,	*To promise.* 178–180.
Perf.	Pollicĭtus esse, *or* fuisse,	*To have promised.*
Fut.	Pollicĭtūrus esse,	*To be about to promise.*
F.-Perf.	Pollicitūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to promise*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Pollĭcens,	*Promising.*
Perf.	Pollicĭtus,	*Having promised.*
F. Act.	Pollicitūrus, a, um,	*About to promise.*
F. Pass.	Pollicendus, a, um,	*To be promised*, &c.

	GERUNDS.	SUPINES.
Nom.	Pollicendum, *Promising.*	1. Pollicĭtum, *To promise.*
Gen.	Pollicendi, &c.	2. Pollicĭtu, *To be promised.*

Synopsis of the moods and tenses, as in 195.

210.—§ 75. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Utor,	ūti,	ūsus,	*To use.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Ut-or, -ĕris, *or* -ĕre, &c.,	*I use, do use, am using*, &c.
Imp.	Ut-ēbar, -ebāris, *or* -ebāre,	*I used, did use, was using*, &c.
Perf.	Usus sum, *or* fui, &c.,	*I have used, used, did use*, &c.
Plup.	Usus ĕram, *or* fuĕram, &c.,	*I had used*, &c.
Fut.	Ut-ar, -ēris, *or* -ēre, &c.,	*I shall*, or *will use*, &c.
F.-Perf.	Usus ĕro, *or* fuĕro, &c.,	*I shall*, or *will have used*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Ut-ar, -āris, *or* -āre, &c.,	*I may*, or *can use*, &c.
Imp.	Ut-ĕrer, -erēris, *or* -erēre, &c.,	*I might, could* &c., *use.*
Perf.	Usus sim, *or* fuĕrim, &c.,	*I may have used*, &c.
Plup.	Usus essem, *or* fuissem, &c.,	*I might have used*, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Ut-ĕre, *or* -ĭtor, &c.,	*Use thou*, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Uti,	*To use.* 178–180.
Perf.	Usus esse, *or* fuisse,	*To have used.*
Fut.	Usūrus esse,	*To be about to use.*
F.-Perf.	Usūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to use.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Utens,	*Using.*
Perf.	Usus,	*Having used.*
F. Act.	Usūrus, a, um,	*About to use.*
F. Pass.	Utendus, a, um,	*To be used*, &c.

	GERUNDS.	SUPINES.
Nom.	Utendum, *Using.*	1. Usum, *To use.*
Gen.	Utendi, *of using*, &c.	2. Usu, *To be used, to use.*

Synopsis of the moods and tenses, as in 200.

211.—§ 76. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Metior,	metīri,	mensus,	*To measure.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Met-ior, -īris, *or* -īre, &c.,	*I measure, am measuring.*
Imp.	Meti-ēbar, -ebāris, *or* -ebāre,	*I measured, was measuring.*
Perf.	Mensus sum, *or* fui, &c.,	*I have measured, measured.*
Plup.	Mensus ĕram, *or* fuĕram, &c.,	*I had measured.*
Fut.	Meti-ar, -ēris, *or* -ēre, &c.,	*I shall*, or *will measure.*
F.-Perf.	Mensus ĕro, *or* fuĕro, &c.,	*I shall*, or *will have measured.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Meti-ar, -āris, *or* -āre, &c.,	*I may*, or *can measure.*
IMP.	Metī-rer, -rēris, *or* -rēre,	*I might*, &c., *measure.*
PERF.	Mensus sim, *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have measured.*
PLUP.	Mensus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might*, &c., *have measured.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Metī-re, *or* -itor, &c.,	*Measure thou*, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Metīri,	*To measure.* 178–180.
PERF.	Mensus esse, *or* fuisse,	*To have measured.*
FUT.	Mensūrus esse,	*To be about to measure.*
F.-PERF.	Mensūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to measure.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Metiens,	*Measuring.*
PERF.	Mensus,	*Having measured.*
F. ACT.	Mensūrus, a, um,	*About to measure.*
F. PASS.	Metiendus, a, um,	*To be measured*, &c.

	GERUNDS.	SUPINES.
Nom.	Metiendum, *Measuring.*	1. Mensum, *To measure.*
Gen.	Metiendi, *Of measuring*, &c.	2. Mensu, *To be measured.*

SYNOPSIS of the moods and tenses, as in 205.

212.—§ 77. EXERCISES ON DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Mīror, *I admire.*
2. Polliceor, *I promise.*
3. Utor, *I use.*
4. Metior, *I measure.*

1. *Give the designation* of the verb,—conjugate it;—give the tense, mood, person, number, and translation of the following words, always observing the same order;* thus,—*Mīror*, verb transitive, deponent, first conjugation;

* In parsing deponent verbs, it is necessary, in giving the designation, to state whether the verb, as there used, is *transitive* or *intransitive*. But in stating the part of the verb used, it is unnecessary to mention the *voice*, because deponent verbs have only the passive form.

Miror, mirāri, mirātus. It is found in the present indicative, first person singular; "*I admire, do admire, am admiring.*"

Mirabātur, mirabĭtur, mirantur, mirabuntur, mirarentur, pollicĭtus sum, pollicĭtus ĕrat, pollicĭtus fuĕrit, pollicerentur, utĭtur, ūsus est, ūti, usūrus, ūtens, utendum, uterētur, ūtar, metīris, metiuntur, metiuntor, metimĭni, mensus ĕrat, mensus sit, mensi fuērunt, utĕre, utēre, pollicĕre, pollicĭtus, pollĭcens.

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, naming the part of the verb used;* thus, "I have admired," *mirātus sum,* in the perfect indicative, first person singular.

They will use, we shall measure, let them measure, about to use, we have used, they may have used, he will have used, they will prŏmise, they would have promised, we might admire, I would have used, use thou, let them use, promise ye, let us use (171–1), let us admire, they have promised, promising, having promised, to measure, let us measure.

3. *Translate the following into English, according to the rules and examples* 190–3, 4.—*Dicit* (*he says*) me mirāri,—vos pollicēri,—nos mirātos esse,—eos pollicitūros esse,—homĭnes mensūros esse,—femĭnas pollicitūras esse,—te ūti,—se mirāri,—eum mirāri,—me mensūrum esse,—vos usūros (179, Note 1). *Dicĭtur* (*he is said*) pollicĭtus esse (179–6). *Dixit* (*he said*) se mirāri,—nos pollicĭtos esse,—eos pollicitūros,—vos mensos esse,—femĭnas mensūras,—eum pollicĭtum.

4. *Translate the following into Latin, according to direction* 190–5.—*He says* (*dīcit*) that I am using,—that thou admirest,—that he has measured,—that we will promise,—that the men will measure,—that the women will use,—that you will measure,—that I would have used,—that they would have admired,—that they admired. *He said* (*dixit*) that I was using—had been using,—that you were measuring,—that he measured,—that they had promised,—that they would use.

213.—§ 78. NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

1. Neuter Passive Verbs are those which, with an intransitive meaning throughout, have a passive form in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative, and in the

perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; but an active form in the other tenses. They are the following:

Second Conjugation.

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus,	*To dare.*
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavīsus,	*To rejoice.*
Soleo,	solēre,	solĭtus,	*To be wont.*

Third Conjugation.

Fīdo,	fidĕre,	fīsus,	*To trust.*

So also the compounds of *fido*, *confido*, "I trust," and *diffido*, "I distrust," which have also *confidi*, and *diffidi*, in the perfect. Neuter-passives are inflected thus

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Audeo,	audēre,	ausus,	*To dare.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Aud-eo, -es, -et, &c.,	*I dare, do dare, am daring.*
Imp.	Aud-ēbam, -ēbas, ēbat, &c.,	*I dared, was daring*, &c.
Perf.	Ausus sum, *or* fui, &c.,	*I have dared, dared, did dare*
Plup.	Ausus ĕram, *or* fuĕram,	*I had dared.*
Fut.	Aud-ēbo, -ēbis, -ēbit, &c.,	*I shall*, or *will dare.*
F.-Perf.	Ausūs fuĕro, &c.,	*I shall have dared.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Aud-eam, -eas, -eat, &c.,	*I may*, or *can dare.*
Imp.	Aud-ērem, -ēres, -ēret, &c.,	*I might, could*, &c., *dare.*
Perf.	Ausus sim, *or* fuĕrim, &c.,	*I may have dared.*
Plup.	Ausus essem, *or* fuissem, &c.,	*I might*, &c., *have dared.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Aud-ē, *or* -ēto, &c.,	*Dare thou*, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Audēre,	*To dare.* 178–180.
Perf.	Ausus esse, *or* fuisse,	*To have dared.*
Fut.	Ausūrŭs esse,	*To be about to dare.*
F.-Perf.	Ausūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to dare.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Audens,	*Daring.*
Perf.	Ausus, a, um,	*Having dared.*
F. Act.	Ausūrus, a, um,	*About to dare.*
F. Pass.	Audendus, a, um,	*To be dared*, &c. (*seldom used.*)

GERUNDS.		SUPINES.	
Nom.	Audendum, *Daring.*	1. Ausum,	*To dare.*
Gen.	Audendi, &c., *Of daring.*	2. Ausu,	*To be dared, to dare*

2. The following verbs are called *Neutral Passives*, namely, *fĭo*, "I am made," or "I become;" *vapŭlo*, "I am beaten;" *veneo*, "I am sold." They have an active form, but a passive signification, and serve as passives to *facio*, *verbĕro*, and *vendo*. *Fĭo* has the passive form in the preterite tenses. 221.

214.—§ 79. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

1. The perfect and pluperfect active, in both the indicative and subjunctive, are often shortened by a syncope, as follows:

1st. In the first conjugation, *avi* and *ave* often drop *vi* and *ve* before *s* or *r*, and circumflect the *a*; thus, for *amavisti*, *amavissem*, *amavĕram*, *amavĕro*, *amavĕrim*, &c., we often have *amâsti*, *amâssem*, *amâram*, *amâro*, *amârim*, &c. Also in the second and third conjugations, *evi* drops *vi* in the same situation; as *complêsti*, for *complēvisti*; *delêram*, for *delevĕram*; *de crêssem*, for *decrevissem*; &c. But *ovi* is syncopated only in the preterite verb *nōvi*, and the compounds of *moveo*; as, *nôrant*, for *novĕrant*; *nôsse*, for *novisse*; *commôssem*, for *commovissem*, &c.

2d. In the fourth conjugation, *īvi* frequently loses *vi* before *s*; as, *audisti*, for *audivisti*; *audissem*, for *audivissem*. Sometimes the *v* only is dropped between two vowels; as, *audii*, for *audīvi*; *audiĕram*, for *audivĕram*; &c. And so also with other preterites of the same form, with the tenses derived from them; as, *petii*, for *petīvi*; *ièram*, for *ivĕram*; &c.

2. The perfect indicative active, third person plural, has two forms, *ērunt*, *ēre*. Both forms have the same meaning; the first is more common with the earlier, and the second, with the later writers.

3. In the passive voice, there are two forms of the second person singular, namely *ris* and *re*. The termination *re* is rarely used in the present indicative; in the other tenses, *re* is more common than *ris*, especially in Cicero.

4. The imperatives of *dīco*, *dūco*, *facio*, and *fĕro*, are usually written *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, *fer*; also in their compounds, except in those of *facio*, which change *a* into *i*; as, *confĭce*, *perfĭce*, &c.

5. In the old forms of the language, the present infinitive passive was lengthened, especially among the poets, by adding *er*; as, *amarier*, for *amāri*; *legier*, for *lĕgi*; &c.

6. The terminations *rĭmus* and *rĭtis* in the future-perfect indicative, and perfect subjunctive, have the *i* sometimes long, and sometimes short. It is marked short in the preceding paradigms. The pupil may be accustomed to give it both ways.

7. In the passive voice, the perfect and pluperfect have two forms. Of these, the perfect participle with *fui* and *fŭeram* expresses the completion of past action more emphatically than when joined with *sum* and *ĕram*. Thus, *pransus sum*, means "I have dined, I have just dined;" *pransus fui*, means "I have dined some time ago." 182–14.

8. The verb *sum*, through all its tenses, with the future participle in *rus*, is used to express the intention, at the time referred to, of doing a thing presently; or that the action is, or was, or will be, on the point of being done. When this idea is to be conveyed, this form of expression is used in preference to the future, which simply denotes that an act will be effected in future time. This, which is inflected as follows, is sometimes called the—

FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Amatūrus (a, um) sum,	*I am about to love.*
Imp.	Amatūrus ĕram,	*I was about to love.*
Perf.	Amatūrus fui,	*I have been about to love.*
Plup.	Amatūrus fŭeram,	*I had been about to love.*
Fut.	Amatūrus ĕro,	*I shall be about to love.*

(*Amatūrus fŭero* is not used.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Amatūrus sim,	*I may be about to love.*
IMP. Amatūrus essem,	*I might*, &c., *be about to love.*
PERF. Amatūrus fuĕrim,	*I may have been about to love.*
PLUP. Amatūrus fuissem,	*I might*, &c., *have been about to love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Amatūrus esse,	*To be about to love.*
PERF. Amatūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to love.*

9. In like manner, the future participle in *dus*, expressing *propriety* or *necessity* of doing at the time referred to, is joined with all the tenses of the verb *sum*, and thus forms what is called the—

SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

Thus, PRES. Amandus sum, *I deserve*, or *ought to be loved*, &c.
IMP. Amandus ĕram, *I deserved*, or *ought to be loved*, &c.

And so forth through all the other tenses, as with the participles in *rus*, No. 8. In analyzing such expressions, however, it is better to parse each word of the compound separately, and combine them by the rules of syntax. A stronger necessity is expressed by the gerund, with the verb *est;* thus, *scribendum est mihi epistŏlam*, is "I MUST write a letter," i. e. I am COMPELLED to do it; whereas, *scribenda est mihi epistŏla*, means simply, "I should write a letter." See Syntax, 700.

10. The future infinitive passive is a compound of *īri*, the present infinitive passive of *eo*, "to go," used impersonally, and the supine in *um;* so that *amātum īri*, literally is "to be going to love."

11. The verbal adjective in *bundus* is rendered like the present participle, but with increased strength; thus, *errans*, "wandering;" *errabundus*, "wandering to and fro;" *moriens*, "dying;" *moribundus*, "in the agonies of death;" &c.

12. The meaning and use of the gerundive participle already mentioned 182–7, will be more fully explained in Syntax, 707–711.

§ 80. COMPOUND VERBS.

215.—Verbs are compounded chiefly with prepositions, which modify the simple verb according to their respective meanings; thus, *eo*, "I go," in composition with different prepositions, is modified by them; as, *adeo*, "I go to;" *abeo*, "I go from;" *exeo*, "I go out;" *ineo*, "I go in;" &c. In the formation of compounds, due regard must be paid to the following—

General Rules.

1. Compound verbs form the perfect and supine in the same manner as simple verbs; as, *ămo, amāre, amāvi, amātum; red-ămo, red-amāre, red-amāvi, red-amātum.*

2. Simple verbs which double the first syllable in the perfect, drop the reduplication in the compounds; as, *pello, pepŭli; re-pello, re-pŭli.* Except *præ-curro, re-pungo,* and the compounds of *do, sto, disco,* and *posco.*

3. Compound verbs which change *a* of the present into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *facio, per-ficio*; supine, *perfectum.* Except verbs ending in *do, go;* with the compounds of *habeo, placeo, salio, sapio,* and *statuo.*

4. Verbs which are defective in the perfect, likewise want the supine.

5. The following changes, which happen to the preposition, and to the simple verb, in a state of composition, merit attention.

1st. *A* is used in composition before *m* and *r*. *Ab* is used before vowels, and *d, f, h, j, l, n, r, s.* Before *fĕro* and *fugio*, it becomes *au;* as, *auf ĕro, aufugio. Abs* is used before *c* and *t;* as, *abscēdo, abstŭli.*

2d. *Ad* changes *d* into the first letter of the simple verb beginning with *c, f, g, l, n, p, r, s, t;* as, *accurro, afficio, aggĕro.* In some writers, it remains unaltered; as, *adficio.*

3d. *Am* (i. e. *ambi*, from ἀμφί, *circum*), before *c, q, f, h,* is changed into *an;* as, *anquīro, anhĕlo.* Sometimes it assumes its own *b;* as, *ambio.*

4th. *Circum* remains unaltered. The *m* is sometimes changed; as, *circundo* for *circumdo;* or omitted; as, *circueo* for *circumeo.*

5th. *Con*, before a vowel or *h*, drops the *n;* as, *coaleo, cohibeo;* before *l*, its *n* becomes *l;* and before *b, m, p*, it becomes *m;* and before *r*, it changes *n* into *r;* as, *collĭgo, combĭbo, commeo, compăro, corripio.* With *ūro, b* is inserted after *con*, making *combūro.*

6th. *Di* is used before *d, g, l, m, n, v*; as, *didūco, digladior.* *Dis* and sometimes *di* are used before *r*; as, *disrumpo, dirumpo*; likewise before *j*; as, *disjudĭco, dijudĭco.* *Dis* is used before *c, p, q, s, t*; as, *discumbo, dispello.* Before *sp* and *st*, *s* is removed; and before *f*, it is changed into *f*; as, *dispicio, disto, diffiteor.* Before a vowel, it assumes *r*; as, *dirĭmo*, from *ămo.*

7th. *E* is found before *b, d, g, l, m, n, r*, and before *j* and *v*; as, *ebĭbo, edūco, ejicio, evĕho.* *Ex* is used before vowels, and also before *h, c, p, q, t, s*; as, *exăro, exhibeo, excutio*; before *f*, *x* becomes *f*; as, *effĭcio.*

8th. *In* sometimes changes *n* into the first letter of the simple verb; as, *illūdo*; but before *b, m, p*, it changes *n* into *m*; as, *imbĭbo, immineo, impleo.*

9th. *Ob* generally remains unaltered. The *b* is sometimes omitted, as in *omitto*; or changed into the first letter of the simple verb, as *offĕro.*

10th. *Re* assumes *d* before *d*, also before a vowel, or *h*; as, *reddo, redĭmo, redeo, redhibeo.* *Pro*, likewise, sometimes inserts *d*, as in *prodeo.*

11th. *Sub* changes *b* into the initial consonant of the simple word, before *c, f, g, m, p, r*; as, *succēdo, suffĕro, suggĕro.* *Submitto* and *summitto, submoveo* and *summoveo*, are both used.

12th. *Trans* is generally contracted into *tra*, before *d, j, n*; as, *trādo, trajicio, trāno*; and sometimes before *l* and *m*; as, *traluceo, trameo.* *Post* becomes *pos* in *postŭli.* Few if any changes take place in the other prepositions. Other prefixes consist of verbs, as in *calefacio*, of *valeo*; of adverbs, as in *benefacio*, from *bĕne*; of participles and adjectives, as in *mansuefacio* from *mansuētus, magnifĭco* from *magnus*; of substantives, as in *signifĭco*, from *signum*; of a preposition and noun, as in *animadverto*, from *ad* and *animus*, with *verto.*

---

§ 81. LIST OF VERBS IRREGULAR IN THE PERFECT AND SUPINE.

[Owing to the irregularity of many verbs in the perfect and supine in the third conjugation, and of not a few in the other conjugations also, no rules that could be given would be of much practical utility. The only effectual way to attain accuracy and readiness in the conjugation of verbs, is, to commit the primary parts, or the conjugation accurately from the Dictionary. To be able to do this, as soon as possible, is of great importance to every scholar; and it is not a task of so great difficulty as might be supposed. The following list contains all the simple verbs that vary, in the perfect and supine;

from the general rule. By committing a portion of these to memory every day, to be recited with the ordinary lesson, and repeating this exercise in revisals till the whole is inwrought into the memory, much future labor will be saved; and this can be done in a few weeks, without at all interfering with the regular recitations. When the composition of a verb changes its form, it is noticed at the foot of the page, to which reference is made by numbers.].

FIRST CONJUGATION.

216.—Rule. Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvi* in the perfect, and *ātum* in the supine; as,

Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	*To love.*
Mūto,	mutāre,	mutāvi,	mutātum,	*To change.*

Exceptions.

The tenses of some verbs included in the lists of Exceptions are also found, especially in the earlier authors, conjugated according to the General Rules. The form here given is that which is in common use

Pres	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Do,[1]	dăre,	dĕdi,	dătum,	*To give.*
Sto,[2]	stāre,	stĕti,	stātum,	*To stand.*
Lăvo,	lavāre, / lavĕre,	lāvi,	lōtum, / lautum, / lavātum,	*To wash.*
Pōto,	potāre,	potāvi,	pōtum, *or* / potātum,	*To drink.*
Jŭvo,[3]	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	*To assist.*
Cŭbo,[4]	cubāre,	cubui,	cubĭtum,	*To lie.*

[1] *Circumdo*, "to surround;" *pessundo*, "to ruin;" *satisdo*, "to give surety;" and *venundo*, "to sell," are conjugated like *do*. The other compounds belong to the third conjugation, and have *didi* in the perfect, and *ditum* in the supine; as, *abdo, abdĕre, abdĭtum, abdĭdi*, "to hide;" *reddo, reddĭdi, redditum*, "to give back."

[2] The compounds of *sto* have *stiti* in the perfect, and *stătum* in the supine; as, *consto, constĭti, constătum*, "to stand together." Some of the compounds have occasionally *stĭtum* in the supine; as, *præsto, præstĭti, præstĭtum*, or *præstātum*, "to stand before," "to excel." *Adsto*, "to stand by;" *insto*, "to urge on," and *resto*, "to remain over and above," have no supine. *Antesto*, "to stand before;" *circumsto*, "to stand round;" *intersto*, "to stand between;" and *supersto*, "to stand over," have *stĕti* in the perfect; and the first two, and probably the others also, want the supine. *Disto*, "to be distant," and *substo*, "to stand under," have neither perfect nor supine.

[3] The supine *jūtum* is doubtful, as the future participle is *juvatūrus*. *Adjŭvo* has *adjūtum* only, and *adjutūrus*.

[4] In the same manner, those compounds are conjugated which do not assume an *m*; as, *accŭbo*, "to lie next to;" *excŭbo*, "to watch;" *incŭbo*, "to lie upon;" *recŭbo*, "to lie down again;" *secŭbo*, "to lie apart." The compounds which assume an *m* belong to the third conjugation, and have *ui* and *itum* in the perfect and supine; as, *incumbo, incŭbui, incŭbĭtum*, "to lie upon."

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Dŏmo,	domāre,	domŭi,	domĭtum,	*To subdue.*
Sŏno,[5]	sonāre,	sonŭi,	sonĭtum,	*To sound.*
Tŏno,[6]	tonāre,	tonŭi,	tonĭtum,	*To thunder.*
Vĕto,[7]	vetāre,	vetŭi,	vetĭtum,	*To forbid.*
Crĕpo,[8]	crepāre,	crepŭi,	crepĭtum,	*To make a noise.*
Mĭco,[9]	micāre,	micŭi,	———	*To glitter.*
Frĭco,[10]	fricāre,	fricŭi,	frictum,	*To rub.*
Sĕco,	secāre,	secŭi,	sectum,	*To cut.*
Nĕco,[11]	necāre,	necāvi, *or* necŭi,	necātum,	*To kill.*
Lăbo,	labāre,	———	———	*To fall,* or *faint.*
Nexo,	nexāre,	———	———	*To bind.*
Plĭco,[12]	plicāre,	———	———	*To fold.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

217.—Rule. Verbs of the Second Conjugation have *ŭi* in the perfect, and *ĭtum* in the supine; as,

Moneo,	monēre,	monŭi,	monĭtum,	*To advise.*
Habeo,[1]	habēre,	habŭi,	habĭtum,	*To have.*

Exceptions.

Intransitives which have *ŭi* in the perfect, want the supine; as, *splendeo, splendŭi,* "to shine;" *madeo, madŭi,* "to be wet."

---

[5] The future participle is *sonatūrus.*

[6] *Intŏno* has *intonātus* in the perfect participle.

[7] *Vĕto* has sometimes *vetŭi* in the perfect.

[8] *Discrĕpo,* "to differ," and *increpo,* "to chide," have sometimes *āvi* and *ātum,* as well as *ŭi* and *ĭtum. Increpo* seldom has the latter form.

[9] *Emico,* "to shine forth," has *emicŭi, emicātum;* and *dimico,* "to fight," has *dimicāvi* (rarely *dimicŭi*), *dimicātum.*

[10] Some of the compounds of *frico* have the participles formed from the regular supine in *ātum;* as, *confricātus, infricātus.*

[11] *Enĕco,* "to kill," and *internĕco,* "to destroy," have also *ŭi* and *ectum;* the participle of *enĕco* is usually *enectus.*

[12] *Duplico,* "to double;" *multiplico,* "to multiply;" *replico,* "to unfold;" and *supplico,* "to entreat humbly," have *āvi* and *ātum.* The other compounds of *plico* have either *ŭi* and *ĭtum,* or *āvi* and *ātum;* as, *applico,* "to apply," *applicŭi, applicĭtum,* or *applicāvi, applicātum. Explico,* in the sense of *explain,* has *āvi* and *ātum;* in the sense of *unfold,* it has *ŭi* and *ĭtum.*

[1] The compounds of *habeo* change *a* into *i;* as, *adhibeo, adhibŭi, adhibĭtum,* "to admit;" *prohibeo, prohibŭi, prohibĭtum,* "to forbid."

The following Intransitives have *ŭi* and *ĭtum*, according to the general rule:

Caleo, *to be hot.*	Coaleo, *to grow together.*
Careo, *to want.*	Doleo, *to grieve.*
Jaceo, *to lie.*	Noceo, *to hurt.*
Lateo,[2] *to lie hid.*	Pareo, *to appear.*
Liceo, *to be valued.*	Placeo, *to please.*
Mereo, *to deserve.*	Valeo, *to be in health.*

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Docĕo,	docēre,	docŭi,	doctum,	*To teach.*
Teneo,[3]	tenēre,	tenŭi,	tentum,	*To hold.*
Misceo,	miscēre,	miscŭi,	mistum, *or* mixtum,	*To mix.*
Censeo,[4]	censēre,	censŭi,	censum,	*To think, to judge.*
Torreo,	torrēre,	torrŭi,	tostum,	*To roast.*
Sorbeo,[5]	sorbēre,	sorbŭi,	sorptum,	*To sup.*
Timeo,	timēre,	timŭi,	———	*To fear.*
Sĭleo,	silēre,	silŭi,	———	*To be silent.*
Arceo,[6]	arcēre,	arcŭi,	———	*To drive away.*
Taceo,[7]	tacēre,	tacŭi,	tacĭtum,	*To be silent.*
Prandeo,[8]	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	*To dine.*
Video,	vidēre,	vīdi,	vīsum,	*To see.*
Sedeo,[9]	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	*To sit.*
Stridĕo,	stridēre,	strīdi,	———	*To make a noise.*
Frendeo,	frendēre,	frendi,	fressum,	*To gnash the teeth.*
Mordeo,[10]	mordēre,	momordi,	morsum,	*To bite.*
Pendeo,	pendēre,	pependi,	pensum,	*To hang.*

[2] The compounds of *lateo* want the supine; as, *delĭteo, delĭtŭi*, "to lurk;" *perlateo, perlatŭi*, "to lie hid."

[3] The compounds of *teneo* change *e* into *i*; as, *contineo, continŭi, contentum*, "to hold together." *Attineo*, "to hold;" and *pertineo*, "to belong to," have no supine; and *abstineo*, "to abstain from," seldom.

[4] *Censeo* has also *census sum* in the perfect, and *censĭtum* in the supine. *Ascenseo*, "to reckon with," and *percenseo*, "to recount," want the supine; and *recenseo*, "to review," has *recensum*, and *recensĭtum*.

[5] *Absorbeo*, "to sup up," and *exsorbeo*, "to sup out," have sometimes *absorpsi*, and *exsorpsi* in the perfect. The latter, with *resorbeo*, "to draw back," has no supine.

[6] The compounds of *arceo* have *ĭtum* in the supine; as, *exerceo, exercŭi, exercĭtum*, "to exercise."

[7] The compounds of *taceo* want the supine; as, *conticeo, conticŭi*, "to keep silence;" *reticeo, reticŭi*, "to remain silent," "to conceal."

[8] The participle *pransus* is used in the active sense of *having dined*.

[9] *Desideo*, "to sit idle;" *dissideo*, "to disagree;" *persideo*, "to continue;" *præsideo*, "to sit before;" *resideo*, "to sit down," "to rest;" and *subsideo*, "to subside," want the supine.

[10] The compounds of *mordeo, pendeo, spondeo*, and *tondeo*, do not double the first syllable of the perfect. See 215–2. *Impendeo*, "to overhang," has no perfect or supine.

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Spondeo,	spondēre,	spopondi,	sponsum,	*To promise.*
Tondeo,	tondēre,	totondi,	tonsum,	*To clip.*
Moveo,[11]	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	*To move.*
Foveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	*To cherish.*
Voveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	*To vow.*
Faveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	*To favor.*
Caveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	*To beware of.*
Paveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	———	*To be afraid.*
Ferveo,[12]	fervēre,	ferbui,	———	*To boil.*
Conniveo,	connivēre,	connīvi, *or* -ixi,	———	*To wink.*
Deleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	*To destroy.*
Compleo,[13]	complēre,	complēvi,	complētum,	*To fill.*
Fleo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	*To weep.*
Neo,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	*To spin.*
Vieo,	viēre,	viēvi,	viētum,	*To hoop a vessel.*
Cieo,[14]	ciēre,	(cīvi,)	cītum,	*To stir up.*
Oleo,[15]	olēre,	olui,	(olĭtum,)	*To smell.*
Suadeo,	suadēre,	suāsi,	suāsum,	*To advise.*
Rideo,	ridēre,	rīsi,	rīsum,	*To laugh.*
Maneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	*To stay.*
Hæreo,	hærēre,	hæsi,	hæsum,	*To stick.*
Ardeo,	ardēre.	arsi,	arsum,	*To burn.*
Tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	*To wipe.*
Mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	*To stroke.*
Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,	mulsum, *or* mulctum,	*To milk.*
Jubeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	*To order.*
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	*To indulge.*
Torqueo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	*To twist.*
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum,	*To increase.*
Urgeo,	urgēre,	ursi,	———	*To press.*
Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi,	———	*To shine.*
Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi,	———	*To swell.*
Algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	———	*To be cold.*

[11] Verbs in *veo* undergo a contraction in the supine. Intransitive verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, *pāveo, pāvi*, "to be afraid."

[12] *Fervo, fervi*, another form of this verb belonging to the third conjugation, is used in a few persons, and in the present infinitive.

[13] The other compounds of the obsolete verb *pleo* are conjugated in the same way; as, *expleo, impleo, repleo, suppleo.*

[14] *Cīvi* is the perfect of *cio* of the fourth conjugation, having *citum* or *ĭtum* in the supine. The compounds, in the sense of *calling*, are generally conjugated according to this form; as, *excio, excītum.*

[15] The compounds of *oleo*, which retain the sense of the simple verb, have *ŭi* and *ĭtum*; as, *oboleo, obolui, obolĭtum*, "to smell strongly." The compounds which adopt a different signification, have *ēvi* and *ētum*; as, *exŏleo, exolēvi, exolētum*, "to fade;" *obsoleo, obsolēvi, obsolētum*, "to grow out of use;" *inoleo, inolēvi, inolētum*, or *inolĭtum*, "to come into use." *Aboleo*, "to abolish," has *abolēvi, abolĭtum*; and *adoleo*, to grow up," "to burn" (as a sacrifice), *adolēvi, adultum.*

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Lugeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	———	*To mourn.*
Lucĕo,	lucēre,	luxi,	———	*To shine.*
Frīgeo,	frigēre,	frixi,	———	*To be cold.*

The following verbs want both perfect and supine:

Aveo, *to desire.*
Denseo, *to grow thick.*
Flaveo, *to be yellow.*
Glabreo, *to be smooth.*
Hebeo, *to be blunt.*
Lacteo, *to grow milky.*
Liveo, *to be black and blue.*
Mœreo, *to be sorrowful.*
Renideo, *to shine.*
Polleo, *to be powerful.*
Scateo, *to flow out.*

218.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation form the perfect and supine variously.

IO.

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Facio,[1]	facĕre,	fēci,	factum,	*To do, to make.*
Jacio,[2]	jacĕre,	jēci,	jactum,	*To throw.*
Aspĭcio,[3]	aspicĕre,	aspexi,	aspectum,	*To behold.*
Allĭcio,	allicĕre,	allexi,	allectum,	*To allure.*
Fodio,	fodĕre,	fōdi,	fossum,	*To dig.*
Fugio,	fugĕre,	fūgi,	fugĭtum,	*To fly.*
Capio,[4]	capĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	*To take.*
Rapio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	*To seize.*
Sapio,	sapĕre,	sapui,	———	*To taste, to be wise.*
Cupio,	cupĕre,	cupīvi,	cupītum,	*To desire.*
Pario,[5]	parĕre,	pepĕri,	partum, *or* parĭtum,	*To bring forth.*

[1] *Facio*, when compounded with a preposition, changes *a* into *i*; as, *afficio, affēci, affectum*, "to affect." In the other compounds, the *a* is retained. A few compounds end in *fico* and *ficor*, and belong to the first conjugation; as, *amplifico*, "to enlarge;" *sacrifico*, "to sacrifice;" *gratificor*, "to gratify;" and *ludificor*, "to mock."

[2] The compounds of *jacio* change *a* into *i*; as, *abjicio, abjēci, abjectum.*

[3] The compounds of the obsolete verbs *specio* and *lacio* have *exi* and *ectum*; except *elicio*, "to draw out," which has *elicui* and *elicitum.*

[4] The compounds of *capio, rapio*, and *sapio*, change *a* into *i*; as, *accipio, accēpi, acceptum*, "to receive;" *abripio, abripui, abreptum*, "to carry off;" *consipio, consipui*, "to be in one's senses."

[5] The compounds of *pario* have *perui* and *pertum*, and belong to the fourth conjugation; as, *aperio, aperīre, aperui, apertum*, "to open." So *operio*, "to shut," "to cover." But *comperio* (which also has a deponent form in the present indicative and infinitive, *comperior, comperīri*), "to know a thing for certain," has *compĕri, compertum*; and *reperio*, "to find," has *repĕri, repertum.*

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Quatio,[6]	quatĕre,	(quassi),	quassum,	*To shake.*
		UO.		
Acuo,	acuĕre,	acui,	acūtum,	*To sharpen.*
Arguo,	arguĕre,	argui,	argūtum,	*To show, to prove.*
Batuo,	batuĕre,	batui,	batūtum,	*To beat.*
Exuo,	exuĕre,	exui,	exūtum,	*To put off clothes.*
Imbuo,	imbuĕre,	imbui,	imbūtum,	*To moisten, to wet.*
Induo,	induĕre,	indui,	indūtum,	*To put on clothes.*
Minuo,	minuĕre,	minui,	minūtum,	*To lessen.*
Spuo,[7]	spuĕre,	spui,	spūtum,	*To spit.*
Statuo,	statuĕre,	statui,	statūtum,	*To set, to place.*
Sternuo,	sternuĕre,	sternui,	sternūtum,	*To sneeze.*
Suo,	suĕre,	sui,	sūtum,	*To sew, to stitch.*
Tribuo,	tribuĕre,	tribui,	tribūtum,	*To give, to divide.*
Fluo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	*To flow.*
Struo,	struĕre,	struxi,	structum,	*To build.*
Luo,[8]	luĕre,	lui,	luĭtum,	*To pay, to wash.*
Ruo,[9]	ruĕre,	rui,	ruĭtum,	*To rush, to fall.*
Metuo,	metuĕre,	metui,	———	*To fear.*
Pluo,	pluĕre,	plui,	———	*To rain.*
Congruo,	congruĕre,	congrui,	———	*To agree.*
Ingruo,	ingruĕre,	ingrui,	———	*To assail.*
Annuo,[10]	annuĕre,	annuĭ,	———	*To assent.*
		BO.		
Bĭbo,	bibĕre,	bĭbi,	bibĭtum,	*To drink.*
Scăbo,	scabĕre,	scābi,	———	*To scratch.*
Lambo,	lambĕre,	lambi,	———	*To lick.*
Scrībo,	scribĕre,	scripsi,	scriptum,	*To write.*
Nūbo,[11]	nubĕre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	*To veil, to be married.*
Glūbo,	glubĕre,	———	———	*To strip, to flay.*
		CO.		
Dīco,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	*To say.*
Dūco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	*To lead.*

[6] The compounds of *quatio* take the form *cŭtio*, and have *cussi* and *cussum*; as, *concutio*, "to shake violently," *concussi*, *concussum*.

[7] *Respuo*, "to spit out," "to reject," has no supine.

[8] The compounds of *luo* have *ūtum* in the supine; as, *abluo*, *ablui*, *ablūtum*, "to wash away," "to purify."

[9] The compounds of *ruo* have *ŭtum* in the supine; as, *diruo*, *dirui*, *dirŭtum*, "to overthrow." *Corruo*, "to fall together," and *irruo*, "to rush in furiously," have no supine.

[10] The other compounds of the obsolete *nuo*, as *abnuo*, "to refuse;" *innuo*, "to nod with the head;" and *renuo*, "to deny," likewise want the supine. *Abnuitūrus*, future participle from *abnuo*, is found.

[11] *Nupta sum*, another form of the perfect, is sometimes used instead of *nupsi*.

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Vinco,	vincĕre,	vīci,	victum,	*To overcome.*
Parco,[12]	parcĕre,	peperci, *or* parsi,	parsum, *or* parcĭtum,	*To spare.*
Ico,	icĕre,	īci,	ictum,	*To strike.*

SCO.

Cresco,	crescĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	*To grow.*
Nosco,[13]	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	*To know.*
Quiesco,	quiescĕre,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	*To rest.*
Scisco,	sciscĕre,	scīvi,	scītum,	*To ordain.*
Suesco,	suescĕre,	suēvi,	suētum,	*To be accustomed.*
Pasco,[14]	pascĕre,	pāvi.	pastum,	*To feed.*
Disco,	discĕre,	didĭci,	———	*To learn.*
Posco,	poscĕre,	poposci,	———	*To demand.*
Glisco,[15]	gliscĕre,	———	———	*To glitter, to grow.*

DO.

Accendo,	accendĕre,	accendi,	accensum,	*To kindle.*
Cūdo,	cudĕre,	cūdi,	cūsum,	*To forge.*
Defendo,	defendĕre,	defendi,	defensum,	*To defend.*
Edo,[16]	edĕre,	ēdi,	ēsum,	*To eat.*
Mando,	mandĕre,	mandi,	mansum,	*To chew.*
Prehendo,	prehendĕre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	*To take hold of.*
Scando,	scandĕre,	scandi,	scansum,	*To climb.*
Dīvĭdo,	dividĕre,	divīsi,	divīsum,	*To divide.*
Rādo,	radĕre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	*To shave.*
Claudo,[17]	claudĕre,	clausi,	clausum,	*To close.*
Plaudo,[18]	plaudĕre,	plausi,	plausum,	*To applaud.*
Lūdo,	ludĕre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	*To play.*
Trūdo,	trudĕre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	*To thrust.*
Lædo,[19]	lædĕre,	læsi,	læsum,	*To hurt.*

[12] The forms *parsi* and *parcitum* are seldom used.

[13] The future participle is *noscitūrus*, from *noscitum*, the old form of the supine. *Agnosco*, "to own," has *agnōvi*, *agnitum*; and *cognosco*, "to know," has *cognōvi*, *cognitum*.

[14] *Compesco*, "to feed together," "to restrain;" and *dispesco*, "to separate," have *compescui*, and *dispescui*, without the supine.

[15] *Fatisco*, "to be weary," likewise wants both perfect and supine; and also all inceptive verbs, unless when they adopt the tenses of their primitives; as, *ardesco*, "to grow hot," *arsi*, *arsum*. 227, Obs. 4.

[16] All the compounds of *ĕdo* are conjugated in the same manner, except *comĕdo*, "to eat up," which has *comēsum*, or *comestum*, in the supine. See § 83, 9.

[17] The compounds of *claudo* change *au* into *u*; as, *conclūdo*, *conclūsi*, *conclūsum*, "to conclude." *Circumclaudo* is found in Cæsar.

[18] The compounds of *plaudo*, except *ap-plaudo* and *circum-plaudo*, change *au* into *o*; as, *explōdo*, *explōsi*, *explōsum*, "to reject."

[19] The compounds of *lædo* change *æ* into *i*; as, *allīdo*, *allīsi*, *allīsum*, "to dash against."

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Rōdo,	rodĕre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	*To gnaw.*
Vādo,[20]	vadĕre,	———	———	*To go.*
Cēdo,	cedĕre,	cessi,	cessum,	*To yield.*
Pando,	pandĕre,	pandi,	passum, *or* pansum,	*To open.*
Fundo,	fundĕre,	fūdi,	fūsum,	*To pour forth.*
Scindo,	scindĕre,	scĭdi,	scissum,	*To cut.*
Findo,	findĕre,	fĭdi,	fissum,	*To cleave.*
Tundo,[21]	tundĕre,	tutŭdi,	tunsum, *or* tūsum,	*To beat.*
Cădo,[22]	cadĕre,	cecĭdi,	cāsum,	*To fall.*
Cædo,[23]	cædĕre,	cecīdi,	cæsum,	*To cut, to kill.*
Tendo,[24]	tendĕre,	tetendi,	tensum, *or* tentum,	*To stretch.*
Pendo,	pendĕre,	pependi,	pensum,	*To hang.*
Crēdo,[25]	credĕre,	credĭdi,	credĭtum,	*To believe.*
Vendo,	vendĕre,	vendĭdi,	vendĭtum,	*To sell.*
Abscondo,	abscondĕre,	abscondi,	abscondĭtum,	*To hide.*
Strīdo,	stridĕre,	strīdi,	———	*To creak.*
Rūdo,	rudĕre,	rūdi,	———	*To bray* (as an ass).
Sīdo,[26]	sidĕre,	sīdi,	———	*To sink down.*

GO.

Cingo,	cingĕre,	cinxi,	cinctum,	*To surround.*
Fligo,[27]	fligĕre,	flixi,	flictum,	*To dash.*
Jungo,	jungĕre,	junxi,	junctum,	*To join.*
Lingo,	lingĕre,	linxi,	linctum,	*To lick.*
Mungo,	mungĕre,	munxi,	munctum,	*To wipe the nose.*
Plango,	plangĕre,	planxi,	planctum,	*To beat.*

[20] The compounds of *vādo* have the perfect and supine; as, *evādo, evāsi, evāsum*, "to escape."

[21] The compounds of *tundo* have *tŭdi* and *tūsum*; as, *contundo*, "to bruise," *contŭdi, contūsum*. See 215, Rule 2. Some of the compounds have also a perfect participle formed from *tunsum*; as, *obtunsus* and *retunsus*, from *obtundo* and *retundo*.

[22] The compounds of *cădo* want the supine; as, *accido, accidi*, "to happen;" except *incido, incidi, incāsum*, "to fall in;" *occido, occidi, occāsum*, "to fall down;" and *recido, recidi, recāsum*, "to fall back."

[23] The compounds of *cædo* change *æ* into *i*; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīsum*, "to cut about;" *decīdo, decīdi, decīsum*, "to cut off."

[24] The compounds of *tendo* have generally *tentum* in the supine, except *extendo*, "to stretch out," and *ostendo*, "to show," which have also *tensum*; the latter, almost always.

[25] The other compounds of *do* which belong to the third conjugation have also *didi*, and *ditum*; as, *condo, condidi, conditum*, "to build." *Abscondo* has sometimes *abscondĭdi*. See page 167, Note 1.

[26] The compounds of *sīdo* adopt the perfect and supine of *sedeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, consessum*, "to sit down."

[27] The compounds of *flĭgo* are conjugated in the same way, except *profligo*, "to dash down," which is a regular verb of the first conjugation.

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Rĕgo,[28]	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum,	*To rule.*
Stinguo,[29]	stinguĕre,	stinxi,	stinctum,	*To dash out.*
Sūgo,	sugĕre,	suxi,	suctum,	*To suck.*
Tĕgo,	tegĕre,	texi,	tectum,	*To cover.*
Tinguo,	tinguĕre,	tinxi,	tinctum,	*To dip.*
Unguo,	unguĕre,	unxi,	unctum,	*To anoint.*
Surgo,	surgĕre,	surrexi,	surrectum,	*To rise.*
Pergo,	pergĕre,	perrexi,	perrectum,	*To go forward.*
Stringo,	stringĕre,	strinxi,	strictum,	*To bind.*
Fingo,	fingĕre,	finxi,	fictum,	*To feign.*
Pingo,	pingĕre,	pinxi,	pictum,	*To paint.*
Frango,[30]	frangĕre,	frēgi,	fractum,	*To break.*
Ago,[31]	agĕre,	ēgi,	actum,	*To do, to drive.*
Tango,	tangĕre,	tetĭgi,	tactum,	*To touch.*
Lĕgo,[32]	legĕre.	lēgi,	lectum,	*To gather, to read.*
Pungo,[33]	pungĕre,	pupŭgi,	punctum,	*To prick.*
Pango,[34]	pangĕre,	panxi,	pactum,	*To drive in.*
Spargo,[35]	spargĕre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	*To spread.*
Mergo,	mergĕre,	mersi,	mersum,	*To dip, to plunge.*
Tergo,	tergĕre,	tersi,	tersum,	*To wipe.*
Figo,	figĕre,	fixi,	fixum,	*To fix.*
Frīgo,	frigĕre,	frixi,	frixum, *or* frictum,	*To fry.*
Vergo,	vergĕre,	———	———	*To lie toward.*

[28] The compounds of *rĕgo* change *e* into *i*; as, *dirigo, direxi, directum*, "to direct;" *corrĭgo, correxi, correctum*, "to correct."

[29] *Stinguo, tinguo*, and *unguo*, are also written *stingo, tingo, ungo*.

[30] The compounds of *frango* and *tango* change *a* into *i*; as, *confringo, confrēgi, confractum*, "to break to pieces;" *attingo, attigi, attactum*, "to touch gently."

[31] *Circumăgo*, "to drive round;" *perăgo*, "to finish;" and *coăgo* (contracted *cōgo*), "to collect," retain the *a*; the other compounds change *a* into *i*; as, *abĭgo, abēgi, abactum*, "to drive away." *Dĕgo* (for *deăgo*), "to live," "to dwell;" *prodigo*, "to lavish" or "squander;" and *satăgo*, "to be busy," want the supine. *Ambigo*, "to doubt," has neither perfect nor supine.

[32] *Lĕgo*, when compounded with *ad, per, præ, re*, and *sub*, retains the *e*; as, *allĕgo*, "to choose." The other compounds change *e* into *i*; as, *colligo*, "to collect." *Diligo*, "to love;" *intelligo*, "to understand," and *negligo*, "to neglect," have *exi* and *ectum*. *Negligo* has sometimes *neglēgi* in the perfect.

[33] The compounds of *pungo* have *punxi* in the perfect; as, *compungo*, "to sting," *compunxi, compunctum*. *Repungo*, "to prick again," has *repupŭgi* and *repunxi*.

[34] *Pango*, in the sense of "to bargain," has *pepigi*; the present is rarely used in this meaning; but instead of it, *paciscor* is commonly employed. The compounds which change *a* into *i* have *pēgi* and *pactum*; as, *compingo*, "to fasten together," *compēgi, compactum*. *Oppango*, "to fasten to," has also *pēgi* and *pactum*. Of the other compounds which retain *a*, the perfect and supine are not found.

[35] The compounds of *spargo* change *a* into *e*; as, *aspergo, aspersi, aspersum*, "to besprinkle."

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Clango,	clangĕre,	clanxi,	———	*To sound a trumpet.*
Ningo,	ningĕre,	ninxi,	———	*To snow.*
Ango,	angĕre,	anxi,	———	*To vex.*

HO.

Trăho,	trahĕre,	traxi,	tractum,	*To draw.*
Vĕho,	vehĕre,	vexi,	vectum,	*To carry.*
Mejo,[36]	mejĕre,	mixi,	mictum,	*To make water.*

LO.

Cŏlo,[37]	colĕre,	colui,	cultum,	*To till, to inhabit.*
Consŭlo,	consulĕre,	consului,	consultum,	*To consult.*
Alo,	alĕre,	alui,	alĭtum, *or* altum,	*To nourish.*
Mŏlo,	molĕre,	molui,	molĭtum,	*To grind.*
Antecello,[38]	antecellĕre,	antecellui,	———	*To excel.*
Pello,	pellĕre,	pepŭli,	pulsum,	*To drive away.*
Fallo,[39]	fallĕre,	fefelli,	falsum,	*To deceive.*
Vello,[40]	vellĕre,	velli, *or* vulsi,	vulsum,	*To pull.*
Sallo,	sallĕre,	salli,	salsum,	*To salt.*
Psallo,	psallĕre,	psalli,	———	*To play on an instrument.*
Tollo,[41]	tollĕre,	sustŭli,	sublātum,	*To lift up.*

MO.

Frĕmo,	fremĕre,	fremui,	fremĭtum,	*To rage, to roar.*
Gĕmo,	gemĕre,	gemui,	gemĭtum,	*To groan.*
Vŏmo,	vomĕre,	vomui,	vomĭtum,	*To vomit.*
Trĕmo,	tremĕre,	tremui,	———	*To tremble.*
Dēmo,	demĕre,	dempsi,	demptum,	*To take away.*
Prōmo,	promĕre	prompsi,	promptum,	*To bring out.*
Sūmo,	sumĕre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	*To take up.*
Cōmo,	comĕre,	compsi,	comptum,	*To deck, to dress.*
Emo,[42]	emĕre,	ēmi,	emptum,	*To buy.*

---

[36] *Mingo* is also used as the present of *minxi*.

[37] *Cŏlo*, when compounded with *ob*, changes *o* into *u*; as, *occŭlo*, "to hide." *Accŏlo*, "to dwell near," and *circumcŏlo*, "to dwell round," have no supine.

[38] The other compounds of the obsolete *cello* likewise want the supine; except *percello*, *percŭli*, *perculsum*, "to strike," "to astonish." *Excello*, likewise, wants the perfect.

[39] *Refello*, *refelli*, "to confute," wants the supine.

[40] *Vello*, when compounded with *de*, *di*, or *per*, has usually *velli* in the perfect. The other compounds take either form indifferently.

[41] *Attollo* and *extollo*, "to raise up," have no perfect or supine of their own; but those of *affĕro* and *effĕro*, which agree with them in meaning, are sometimes assigned to them.

[42] *Dēmo*, *prōmo*, and *sūmo*, are compounds of *ĕmo*. The other compounds change *e* into *i*, and are conjugated like the simple verb; as, *adimo*, *ademi*, *ademptum*, "to take away."

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Prĕmo,[43]	premĕre,	pressi,	pressum,	*To press.*
		NO.		
Pōno,	ponĕre,	pŏsui,	posĭtum,	*To place.*
Gigno,	gignĕre,	genui,	genĭtum,	*To beget.*
Căno,[44]	canĕre,	cecĭni,	cantum,	*To sing.*
Temno,[45]	temnĕre,	———	———	*To despise.*
Sperno,	sperněre,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	*To disdain.*
Sterno,[46]	sternĕre,	strāvi,	strātum,	*To lay flat.*
Sĭno,	sinĕre,	sīvi, *or* sii,	sĭtum,	*To permit.*
Lĭno,	linĕre,	līvi, *or* lēvi,	lĭtum,	*To anoint.*
Cerno,[47]	cernĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	*To see, to decree.*
		PO, QUO.		
Carpo,[48]	carpĕre,	carpsi,	carptum,	*To pluck.*
Clĕpo,	clepĕre,	clepsi,	cleptum,	*To steal.*
Rēpo,	repĕre,	repsi,	reptum,	*To creep.*
Scalpo,	scalpĕre,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	*To engrave.*
Sculpo,	sculpĕre,	sculpsi,	sculptum,	*To carve.*
Serpo,	serpĕre,	serpsi,	serptum,	*To creep.*
Strĕpo,	strepĕre,	strepui,	strepĭtum,	*To make a noise*
Rumpo,	rumpĕre,	rūpi,	ruptum,	*To break.*
Cŏquo,	coquĕre,	coxi,	coctum,	*To boil.*
Linquo,[49]	linquĕre,	līqui,	———	*To leave.*
		RO.		
Quæro,[50]	quærĕre,	quæsīvi,	quæsītum,	*To seek.*
Tĕro,	terĕre,	trīvi,	trītum,	*To wear.*
Verro,	verrĕre,	verri,	versum,	*To sweep.*
Uro,	urĕre,	ussi,	ustum,	*To burn.*

[43] The compounds of *prĕmo* change *e* into *i*; as, *comprimo, compressi, compressum*, "to press together."

[44] The compounds of *căno* have *cinui* and *centum*; as, *concino, concinui, concentum*, "to sing in concert." Of *accino*, "to sing to," and *intercino*, "to sing between *or* during," no perfect or supine is found.

[45] *Contemno*, "to despise," has *contempsi, contemptum.*

[46] *Consterno* and *exterro*, when they signify "to alarm," are regular verbs of the first conjugation. The other compounds are conjugated like *sterno*; as, *insterno, instrāvi, instrātum*, "to spread upon."

[47] The perfect *crēvi* is used in the sense of "to declare one's self heir," or "enter on an inheritance." In the sense of "seeing," *cerno* has properly neither perfect nor supine.

[48] The compounds of *carpo* change *a* into *e*; as, *discerpo, discerpsi, discerptum*, "to tear in pieces."

[49] The compounds of *linquo* have *lictum* in the supine; as, *relinquo, reliqui, relictum*, "to forsake;" so *delinquo*, "to fail."

[50] The compounds of *quæro* change *æ* into *i*; as, *acquiro, acquisīvi, acquisitum*, "to acquire."

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Curro,[51]	currĕre,	cucurri,	cursum,	*To run.*
Gĕro,	gerĕre,	gessi,	gestum,	*To carry.*
Fŭro,[52]	furĕre,	———	———	*To be mad.*
Sĕro,[53]	serĕre,	sēvi,	sătum,	*To sow.*

SO.

Arcesso,	arcessĕre,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	*To call*, or *send for.*
Capesso,	capessĕre,	capessīvi,	capessītum,	*To take.*
Facesso,	facessĕre,	facessīvi,	facessītum,	*To do, go away.*
Lacesso,	lacessĕre,	lacessīvi,	lacessītum,	*To provoke.*
Vīso,	visĕre,	vīsi,	———	*To go to visit.*
Incesso,	incessĕre,	incessi,	———	*To attack.*
Depso,	depsĕre,	depsui,	depstum,	*To knead.*
Pinso,	pinsĕre,	pinsui, *or* pinsi,	pinsum, pistum, *or* pinsītum,	*To bake.*

TO.

Flecto,	flectĕre,	flexi,	flexum,	*To bend.*
Plecto,	plectĕre,	plexi & plexui,	plexum,	*To plait.*
Necto,	nectĕre,	nexi & nexui,	nexum,	*To tie*, or *knit.*
Pecto,	pectĕre,	pexi & pexui,	pexum,	*To dress*, or *comb.*
Mĕto,	metĕre,	messui,	messum,	*To reap.*
Pĕto,	petĕre,	petīvi,	petītum,	*To seek.*
Mitto,	mittĕre,	mīsi,	missum,	*To send.*
Verto,[54]	vertĕre,	verti,	versum,	*To turn.*
Sterto,	stertĕre,	stertui,	———	*To snore.*
Sisto,[55]	sistĕre,	stĭti,	stătum,	*To stop.*

VO, XO.

Vīvo,	vivĕre,	vixi,	victum,	*To live.*
Solvo,	solvĕre,	solvi,	solūtum,	*To loose.*

---

[51] *Curro*, when compounded with *circum*, *re*, *sub*, and *trans*, seldom takes the reduplication. The other compounds sometimes take the reduplication, and sometimes not.

[52] See 222–4.

[53] The compounds of *sĕro* which retain the sense of "planting" and "sowing," have *sēvi* and *situm*; as *consĕro, consēvi, consitum*, "to plant together." Those which adopt a different signification have *serui* and *sertum*; as, *asĕro, asserui, assertum*, "to claim." The latter class of compounds properly belongs to the old verb *sĕro*, "to knit," "to plait."

[54] The compounds of *verto* are conjugated in the same manner, except *revertor*, "to return," which is often used as a deponent verb; and *divertor*, "to turn aside," and *prævertor*, "to outrun," which are likewise deponent, but want the perfect participle.

[55] *Sisto*, "to stand still" (an intransitive verb), has neither perfect nor supine. The compounds have *stĭti* and *stitum*; as, *assisto, astĭti, astitum*, "to stand by." But these are seldom found in the supine.

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Volvo,	volvĕre,	volvi,	volūtum,	*To roll.*
Texo,	texĕre,	texui,	textum,	*To weave.*

219.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

RULE.—Verbs of the fourth conjugation have **īvi** in the perfect, and **ītum** in the supine; as,

Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Sup.*	
Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum,	*To hear.*
Munio,	munīre,	munīvi,	munītum,	*To fortify.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Singultio,	singultīre,	singultīvi,	singultum,	*To sob.*
Sepelio,	sepelīre,	sepelīvi,	sepultum,	*To bury.*
Venio,	venīre,	vēni,	ventum,	*To come.*
Veneo,[1]	venīre,	venii,	———	*To be sold.*
Salio,[2]	salīre,	salui, *or* salii,	saltum,	*To leap.*
Amicio,	amicīre,	amicui, *or* amixi,	amictum,	*To clothe.*
Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	*To tie.*
Sancio,	sancīre,	sanxi, *or* sancīvi,	sanctum, *or* sancītum,	*To ratify.*
Cambio,	cambīre,	campsi,	campsum,	*To change money.*
Sepio,	sepīre,	sepsi,	septum,	*To enclose.*
Haurio,	haurīre,	hausi,	haustum, *or* hausum,	*To draw out.*
Sentio,	sentīre,	sensi,	sensum,	*To feel.*
Raucio,	raucīre,	rausi,	rausum,	*To be hoarse.*
Sarcio,	sarcīre,	sarsi,	sartum,	*To mend,* or *repair.*
Farcio,[3]	farcīre,	farsi,	fartum,	*To cram.*
Fulcio,	fulcīre,	fulsi,	fultum,	*To prop.*
Ferio,	ferīre,	———	———	*To strike.*

The following verbs have the perfect formed regularly, but want the supine:

Cæcutio, *to be dim-sighted.*
Dementio, *to be mad.*
Ferocio, *to be fierce.*
Glocio, *to cluck as a hen.*
Gestio, *to show one's joy by the gestures of the body.*
Ineptio, *to play the fool.*

(For desiderative verbs which belong to this conjugation, see 227–3.)

---

[1] *Veneo* is a compound of *venum* and the irregular verb *eo*, the tenses of which it follows in its inflection. 221–3.

[2] The compounds of *salio* have generally *silui*, sometimes *silii*, or *silīvi*, in the perfect, and *sultum* in the supine; as, *transilio, transilui, transilii*, or *transilīvi, transultum*, "to leap over." *Absultum, circumsultum*, and *prosultum*, are scarcely used.

[3] The compounds of *farcio* change *a* into *e;* as, *refercio, refersi, refertum*, "to fill up."

§ 82. LIST OF DEPONENT VERBS IRREGULAR IN THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

220.—Rule. Deponent and common verbs form the perfect participle in the same manner as if the active voice existed. 207, *Obs.* 3.

To this rule, there are no exceptions in the first conjugation.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Reor,	rēri,	rātus,	*To think.*
Misereor,[1]	miserēri,	misertus,	*To pity.*
Fateor,[2]	fatēri,	fassus,	*To confess.*
Medeor,	medēri,	———	*To heal.*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Lăbor,	lăbi,	lapsus,	*To slide.*
Ulciscor,	ulcisci,	ultus,	*To revenge.*
Utor,	ūti,	ūsus,	*To use.*
Lŏquor,[3]	lŏqui,	loquūtus (locūtus),	*To speak.*
Sĕquor,	sĕqui,	sequūtus (secūtus),	*To follow.*
Quĕror,	quĕri,	questus,	*To complain.*
Nītor,[4]	nīti,	nīsus, *or* nixus,	*To strive.*
Paciscor,	pacisci,	pactus,	*To bargain.*
Gradior,	grădi,	gressus,	*To go.*
Proficiscor,	proficisci,	profectus,	*To go a journey.*
Nanciscor,	nancisci,	nactus,	*To obtain.*
Patior,	păti,	passus,	*To suffer.*
Apiscor,[5]	apisci,	aptus,	*To get.*
Comminiscor,	comminisci,	commentus,	*To devise.*
Fruor,	frui,	fruĭtus, *or* fructus,	*To enjoy.*
Obliviscor,	oblivisci,	oblītus,	*To forget.*
Expergiscor,	expergisci,	experrectus,	*To awake.*
Morior,[6]	mŏri,	mortuus,	*To die.*

---

[1] *Misereor* has also *miseritus* in the perfect participle.

[2] The compounds of *fāteor* change *a* into *i*, and have *fessus*; as, *confiteor*, *confessus*, "to confess." *Diffiteor*, "to deny," wants the perfect participle.

[3] *Lŏquor* and *sĕquor* have likewise *locūtus* and *secūtus* in the perfect participle.

[4] *Nītor*, when compounded with *con*, *in*, *ob*, *re*, *sub*, has *nixus* oftener than *nīsus*. *Adnītor*, "to lean to," has either, indifferently. *Enītor*, in the sense of "to bring forth," generally takes *enixa* in the participle.

[5] *Adipiscor* and *indipiscor*, "to obtain," have *adeptus* and *indeptus*.

[6] *Morior* seems to have originally belonged to the fourth conjugation. The infinitive *morīri* occurs in Plautus and Ovid; and *morīmur*, with the penult long, is also found. The imperative is *morĕre*. This verb, with *nascor* and *orior*, has *-ītūrus* in the future participle; as, *moritūrus*, *nascitūrus*, *oritūrus*.

Nascor,[7]	nasci,	nātus,	*To be born.*
Orior,[8]	orīri,	ortus,	*To rise.*

The following verbs want the perfect participle:

Defetiscor, -i, *to be weary.*	Reminiscor, -i, *to remember.*
Irascor, -i, *to be angry.*	Ringor, -i, *to grin like a dog.*
Līquor, -i, *to melt.*	Vescor, -i, *to feed.*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Metior,	metīri,	mensus,	*To measure.*
Ordior,	ordīri,	orsus,	*To begin.*
Experior,	experīri,	expertus,	*To try.*
Opperior,	opperīri,	opertus,	*To wait.*

§ 83. IRREGULAR VERBS.

221.—Irregular Verbs are those in which some of the secondary parts are not formed from the primary, according to the rules for regular verbs.

The irregular verbs are six; namely, *sum*, *eo*, *queo*, *vŏlo*, *fĕro*, and *fio*. Their compounds are irregular, also.

Sum has been inflected already, 186. After the same manner are inflected its compounds, *ad-*, *ab-*, *de-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-sum*; as, *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfui*, &c. *Insum* wants the perfect.

1. Prosum, "to do good," inserts *d* where the simple verb begins with *e*. It is inflected thus:

Prōsum, prodesse, profui, *To do good.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Prōsum,	prōdes,	prōdest;	prosŭmus,	prodestis,	prōsunt.
Imp.	Prod-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Per.	Profu-ī,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Plu.	Profu-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Fut.	Prod-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrunt.
F.-P.	Profu-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

[7] *Nascor* is passive in signification. It has not the active voice.

[8] *Orior* has *orīrer*, and always *orīrētur* in the imperfect subjunctive, according to the fourth conjugation. Likewise in the compounds *adorirētur*, *exorirētur*; and not *adorerētur*, *exorerētur*. The present follows the third, though *orĭris* and *orĭtur*, with the penult long, are also found.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Prō-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
Imp.	Prod-essem,	-esses,	-esset;	-essēmus,	-essētis,	-essent.
Per.	Profu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	Profu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr. 2. Prōd-es, *or* prod-esto, 2. Prod-este, *or* prod-estōte,
3. Prod-esto; 3. Pro-sunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Prod-esse. Fut. Esse pro-futūrus, a, um.
Per. Pro-fuisse. F.-P. Fuisse pro-futūrus, a, um.

PARTICIPLES.

Pro-futūrus, a, um.

---

2. Possum is compounded of *pŏtis*, "able," and *sum*, "I am." It is thus inflected:

Possum, posse, potui, *I can, I am able.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Possum,	pŏtes,	pŏtest;	possŭmus,	potestis,	possunt.
Imp.	Pot-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Per.	Potu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Plu.	Potu-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Fut.	Pot-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrunt.
F.-P.	Potu-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
Imp.	Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
Per.	Potu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	Potu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Posse. Per. Potuisse. (*The rest wanting.*)

3. Eo, īre, īvi, ĭtum, *To go.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Eo,	is,	it;	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
Imp.	Ibam,	ības,	ībat;	ībāmus,	ībātis,	ībant.
Per.	Ivi,	ivisti,	īvit;	ivĭmus,	ivistis,	ivērunt, *or* ivēre.
Plu.	Ivĕram,	ivĕras,	ivĕrat;	iverāmus,	iverātis,	ivĕrant.
Fut.	Ibo,	ībis,	ībit;	ibĭmus,	ibĭtis,	ībunt.
F.-P.	Ivĕro,	ivĕris,	ivĕrit;	iverĭmus,	iverĭtis,	ivĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Eam,	eas,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
Imp.	Irem,	īres,	īret;	irēmus,	irētis,	īrent.
Per.	Ivĕrim,	ivĕris,	ivĕrit;	iverĭmus,	iverĭtis,	ivĕrint.
Plu.	Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissēmus,	ivissētis,	ivissent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr. { I, *or* Ito, } ītō; { īte, *or* itōte, } eunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Ire.	Fut. Esse itūrus, a, um.
Per. Ivisse.	F.-P. Fuisse itūrus, a, um.

PARTICIPLES.	GERUNDS.	SUPINES.
Pr. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.	Eundum.	1. Itum.
Fut. Itūrus, a, um.	Eundi, &c.	2. Itu.

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-*, *ab-*, *ex-*, *co-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *re-d-*, *sub-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *ante-*, *pro-d-eo;* only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *adeo*, *adīre*, *adii* (seldom *adīvi*), *adĭtum*, "to go to;" perf. *adii*, *adiisti*, or *adīsti*, &c., *adiĕram*, *adiĕrim*, &c. So likewise VENEO, *venii*, ——, "to be sold" (compounded of *vēnum* and *eo*). But AMBIO, *-īre*, *-īvi*, *-ītum*, "to surround," is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, like other intransitive verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, "he is going;" *īvit*, "he is gone;" *ivĕrat*, "he was gone;" *ivĕrit*, "he may be gone," or "shall be gone." So, *vĕnit*, "he is coming;" *vēnit*, "he is

come;" *venĕrat*, "he was come;" &c. In the passive voice, these verbs, for the most part, are used only impersonally; as, *ĭtur ab illo*, "he is going;" *ventum est ab illis*, "they are come." We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *pericŭla adeuntur*, "—are undergone." Cic. *Libri sibyllīni adĭti sunt*, "—were looked into." Liv. *Flūmen pedĭbus transīri potest.* Cæs. *Inimicitiæ subeantur.* Cic.

Queo, "I can," and *nequeo*, "I cannot," are conjugated in the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds, and the participles are seldom used.

---

4. Vŏlo, velle, volui, *To will, to be willing, to wish.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Vŏl-o,	vis,	vult;	volŭmus,	vultis,	vŏlunt.
Imp.	Vol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	Volu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Plu.	Volu-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Fut.	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
F.-P.	Volu-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Vĕlim,	vĕlis,	vĕlit;	velīmus,	velītis,	velint.
Imp.	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
Per.	Volu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	Volu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD. PARTICIPLE.

Pr. Velle. Per. Voluisse. Pr. Vŏlens.

---

5. Nōlo, nolle, nolui, *To be unwilling* (from *non vŏlo*).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolŭmus,	non-vultis,	nōlunt.
Imp.	Nol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	Nolu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Plu.	Nolu-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Fut.	Nōl-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
F.-P.	Nolu-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Nōlim,	nōlis,	nōlit;	nolīmus,	nolītis,	nōlint.
Imp.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollēmus,	nollētis,	nollent.
Per.	Nolu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	Nolu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis.	-issent.

	IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pr.	Nōli, *or* Nolīto,	nolīte, *or* nolītōte.	Pr. Nolle. Per. Noluisse.	Pr. Nōlens. (*The rest wanting.*)

6. Mālo, malle, malui, *To be more willing* (*māgis vŏlo*).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Māl-o,	māvis,	māvult;	malŭmus,	mavultis,	mālunt.
Imp.	Mal-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	Malu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Plu.	Malu-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Fut.	Māl-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
F.-P.	Malu-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erītis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Mālim,	mālis,	mālit;	malīmus,	malītis,	mālint.
Imp.	Mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallēmus,	mallētis,	mallent.
Per.	Malu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	Malu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Malle. Per. Maluisse. (*The rest not used.*)

7. Fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *To carry, to bring*, or *suffer*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Fĕro,	fers,	fert;	ferĭmus,	fertis,	fĕrunt.
Imp.	Fer-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	Tŭl-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Plu.	Tul-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Fut.	Fĕr-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
F.-P.	Tul-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erītis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Fĕr-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	ant.
Imp.	Fer-rem,	-res,	-ret;	-rēmus,	-rētis,	-rent.
Per.	Tul-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	Tul-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Fer, *or* ferto,	ferto;	ferte, *or* fertōte,	ferunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Ferre.	Fut.	Esse latūrus, a, um.
Per.	Tulisse.	F.-P.	Fuisse latūrus, a, um.

PARTICIPLES.	GERUNDS.	SUPINES.
Pr. Fĕrens.	*N.* Ferendum.	1. Lātum.
Fut. Latūrus, a, um.	*G.* Ferendi, &c.	2. Lātu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fĕror, ferri, lātus, *To be brought.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Fĕror,	ferris, *or* ferre,	fertur;	ferĭmur,	ferimĭni,	feruntur.
Imp.	Fer-ēbar,	-ebāris, *or* -ebāre,	-ebātur;	-ebāmur,	-ebamĭni,	-ebantur.

Per. Lātus sum, *or* fui, lātus es, *or* fuisti, lātus est, *or* fuit, &c.
Plu. Lātus ĕram, *or* fuĕram, lātus ĕras, *or* fuĕras, &c.

Fut.	Fĕrar,	ferēris, *or* ferēre,	ferētur;	ferēmur,	feremĭni,	ferentur.

F.-P. Lātus fuĕro, lātus fuĕris, lātus fuĕrit, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Fĕrar,	ferāris, *or* ferāre,	ferātur;	ferāmur,	feramĭni,	ferantur.
Imp.	Ferrer,	ferrēris, *or* ferrēre,	ferrētur;	ferrēmur,	ferremĭni,	ferrentur.

Per. Lātus sim, *or* fuĕrim, lātus sis, *or* fuĕris, &c.
Plu. Lātus essem, *or* fuissem, lātus esses, or fuisses, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Ferre, *or* fertor,	fertor;	ferimĭni,	feruntor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.	PARTICIPLES.
Pr. Ferri.	Per. Lātus, a, um.
Per. Esse, *or* fuisse lātus, a, um.	Fut. Ferendus, a, um.
Fut. Lātum īri.	

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fĕro;* as, *affĕro, attŭli, allātum; auffĕro, abstŭli, ablātum; differo, distŭli, dilātum; confero, contŭli, collātum; infero, intŭli, illātum; offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum; effĕro, extŭli, elātum.* So, *circum-, per-, trans-, de-, pro-, ante-, præ-, re-fĕro.* In some writers, we find *adfĕro, adtŭli, adlātum; conlātum; inlātum; obfĕro,* &c., for *affĕro,* &c.

Obs. 1. The greater part of the preceding verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nōlo* is contracted for *non vŏlo; mālo,* for *măgis vŏlo; fĕro, fers, fert,* &c., for *fĕris, fĕrit,* &c. *Fĕror, ferris* or *ferre, fertur,* for *ferrĕris,* &c.

---

8. Fio, fiĕri, factus, *To be made,* or *done; to become.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Fio,	fis,	fit;	fĭmus,	fĭtis,	fiunt.
Imp.	Fiēbam,	fiēbas,	fiēbat;	fiebāmus,	fiebātis,	fiēbant.
Per.	Factus sum, *or* fui, factus es, *or* fuisti, &c.					
Plu.	Factus ĕram, *or* fuĕram, factus ĕras, *or* fuĕras, &c.					
Fut.	Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiēmus,	fiētis,	fient.
F.-P.	Factus fuĕro, factus fuĕris, &c.					

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Fiam,	fias,	fiat;	fiāmus,	fiātis,	fiant.
Imp.	Fiĕrem,	fiĕres,	fiĕret;	fierēmus,	fierētis,	fiĕrent.
Per.	Factus sim, *or* fuĕrim, factus sis, *or* fuĕris, &c.					
Plu.	Factus essem, *or* fuissem, factus esses, *or* fuisses, &c.					

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr. { Fi, *or* / Fĭto, } fĭto; { fĭte, *or* / fitōte, } fiunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Fiĕri.
Per. Esse, *or* fuisse factus, a, um.
Fut. Factum īri.

PARTICIPLES.	SUPINE.
Fut. Faciendus, a, um.	2. Factu.
Per. Factus, a, um.	

Obs. 2. The third person singular of *fio* is often used impersonally; as, *fit,* "it happens;" *fiēbat,* "it happened."

Obs. 8. *Fio* is used as the passive of *facio*, from which it takes the participles. The compounds of *facio* which retain *a* have *fio* in the passive; as, *calefacio*, "I warm;" *calefio*, "I become warm," "I am warmed," &c. But those compounds which change *facio* into *ficio* have the regular passive in *ficior*; as, *conficio*, *conficior*, &c.

9. To irregular verbs may be added *ĕdo*, "to eat." Though this is a regular verb of the third conjugation, it has an irregular form resembling *sum* in the present indicative, imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, and the present infinitive; thus,

Edo, ederĕ, *or* esse, ēdi, ēsum, *To eat.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr. Edo, { ĕdis, *or* es, } { ĕdit, *or* est; } edĭmus, { edĭtis, *or* estis, } ĕdunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Imp. { Ederem, ederes, ederet, ederēmus, ederētis, ederent. *or* essem, esses, esset; essēmus, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr. { Ede, *or* edĭto, edĭto; edīte, *or* editōte, } edunto. { Es, *or* esto, esto; este, *or* estōte, }

---

§ 84. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

222.—Defective Verbs are those in which some of the parts are wanting.

1. These three, *ōdi*, *cœpi*, and *memĭni*, are used only in the preterite tenses, that is, in the perfect, and the tenses derived from it; and for this reason, they are called Preterite Verbs.

Obs. 1. *Cœpi* has a present, as well as a perfect signification; and hence *cœpĕram* has the sense of the imperfect, as well as of the pluperfect; and *cœpĕro*, of the future, as well as of the future perfect; thus, *cœpi*, "I begin," *or* "I have begun;" *cœpĕram*, "I began," *or* "I had begun;" *cœpĕro*, "I shall begin," *or* "I shall have begun;" and so of the subjunctive.

Obs. 2. *Odi* and *memĭni* have the sense only of the present, imperfect, and future; as, *ōdi*, "I hate;" *oděram*, "I hated;" *oděro*, "I will hate."

2. The parts of these verbs in use are as follows, through all their persons and numbers; viz:

Odi,	oděram,	oděro,	oděrim,	odissem,	odisse.
	Participles, ōsus, osūrus.				
Cœpi,	cœpĕram,	cœpĕro,	cœpĕrim,	cœpissem,	cœpisse.
	Participles, cœptus, cœptūrus.				
Memĭni,	meminĕram,	meminĕro,	meminĕrim,	meminissem,	meminisse.
	Imperative, memento, mementōte.				

3. The verb *nōvi* is also used as a preterite, having like *ōdi* and *memĭni* only the sense of the present, the imperfect, and future. It differs from the others, however, in having a present, *nosco*, which properly has an inceptive sense, meaning "I begin to know," "I learn;" hence *nōvi*, "I have learned," that is, "I know."

The parts of *nōvi* in use are as follows; viz;

Nōvi,	novĕram,	novĕro,	novĕrim,	novissem,	novisse;
Contracted,	nôram,	———	nôrim,	nôssem,	nôsse.

4. There are many verbs, not usually considered among defectives, which want certain tenses, or numbers, or persŏns; thus, *do*, "I give," has neither *dor* nor *der*. *Fāri*, "to speak," with its compounds, is used only by the poets, and by them chiefly in the third person, *fātur;* the imperative *fāre;* and the participle *fātus*. The ablative gerund, *fando*, occurs in a passive sense.

Furĕre, "to be mad," wants the first person singular, and the second person plural of the present, and probably all the future of the indicative, the imperative, and also the perfect and supine.

5. The following defective verbs are those which most frequently occur. *Aio*, "I say;"—*inquam*, "I say," which is used only between words quoted, and never stands at the beginning;—*fŏrem*, "I should be;" the same as *essem;*—*āve*, and *salve*, "hail;"—*Cĕdo*, "tell thou," or "give me;"—*quæso*, "I beseech," originally the same as *quæro*. It is used commonly as an interjection.

The parts of these verbs remaining are the following :

1. Aio, *I say, I affirm.*

Ind.	Pr.	Aio,	aïs,	aït;	———	———	aiunt.
	Imp.	Aiēbam,	aiēbas,	aiēbat;	aiebāmus,	aiebātis,	aiēbant.
	Per.	———	aïsti,	aït.			
Sub.	Pr.	———	aias,	aiat,	———	———	aiant,
Imp.	Pr.	———	aï.				
Part.	Pr.	Aiens.					

2. Inquam, *I say.*

Ind.	Pr.	Inquam,	inquis,	inquit;	inquĭmus,	inquĭtis,	inquiunt.
	Imp.	———	———	inquiēbat;	———	———	inquiēbant.
	Per.	———	inquisti,	inquit.			
	Fut.	———	inquies,	inquiet.			
Imp.	Pr.	———	inque,	inquĭto;	———	inquĭte.	
Part.	Pr.	Inquiens.					

3. Fŏrem, *I should be.*

Sub.	Imp.	Fŏrem,	fŏres,	fŏret;	———	———	fŏrent.
Inf.	Fut.	Fŏre, *to be about to be*, same as *futūrum esse.*					

4. Ave, *hail.*

Imp. Pr. Ave, *or* avēto; avēte, *or* avetōte. *Inf.* Pr. Avēre.

5. Salve, *hail.*

Ind. Fut. Salvēbis.
Imp. Pr. Salve, *or* salvēto; salvēte, *or* salvetōte.
Inf. Pr. Salvēre.

6. Cedo, *tell, give.*

Imp. Pr. Cĕdo; cĕdo, *or* cedĭte, *contracted*, cette.

7. Quæso, *I beseech.*

Ind. Pr. Quæso; quæsŭmus.

6. *Ausim, faxim*, and *faxo*, sometimes called defective verbs, are properly old forms of tenses; *ausim* being put for *ausĕrim*, from *audeo*, "to dare;" and *faxim* and *faxo*, for *fecĕrim* and *fecĕro*, from *facio*. So also *ăge* and *agĭte*, "come," are imperatives from *ăgo*, in a somewhat different sense, just as *ăve*, "hail," is an imperative from *aveo*, "to be well."

223.—§ 85. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Impersonal Verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a personal *subject* or nominative before them.

2. Impersonal verbs, when translated literally into English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it;* as, *delectat*, "it delights;" *dĕcet*, "it becomes;" *contingit*, "it happens;" *evĕnit*, "it comes to pass;" &c. They are inflected thus:

		1st *Conj.*	2d *Conj.*	3d *Conj.*	4th *Conj.*
Ind.	Pr.	Delectat,	Dĕcet,	Contingit,	Evĕnit,
	Imp.	Delectābat,	Decēbat,	Contingĕbat,	Eveniēbat,
	Per.	Delectāvit,	Decuit,	Contĭgit,	Evēnit,
	Plu.	Delectavĕrat,	Decuĕrat,	Contigĕrat,	Evenĕrat,
	Fut.	Delectābit,	Decēbit,	Continget,	Eveniet,
	F.-P.	Delectavĕrit.	Decuĕrit.	Contigĕrit.	Evenĕrit.
Sub.	Pr.	Delectet,	Deceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat,
	Imp.	Delectāret,	Decēret,	Contingĕret,	Evenīret,
	Per.	Delectavĕrit,	Decuĕrit,	Contigĕrit,	Evenĕrit,
	Plu.	Delectavisset.	Decuisset.	Contigisset.	Evenisset.
Inf.	Pr.	Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingĕre,	Evenīre,
	Per.	Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evenisse.

3. Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, "it is fought;" *favētur*, "it is favored;" *currĭtur*, "it is run;" *venītur*, "it is come;" from *pugno*, *faveo*, *curro*, and *venio*. Thus,

		1st *Conj.*	2d *Conj.*	3d *Conj.*	4th *Conj.*
Ind.	Pr.	Pugnātur,	Favētur,	Currĭtur,	Venītur,
	Imp.	Pugnabātur,	Favebātur,	Currebātur,	Veniebātur,
	Per.	Pugnātum est,[1]	Fautum est,[1]	Cursum est,[1]	Ventum est,[1]
	Plu.	Pugnātum ĕrat,[2]	Fautum ĕrat,[2]	Cursum ĕrat,[2]	Ventum ĕrat,[2]
	Fut.	Pugnabĭtur,	Favebĭtur,	Currētur,	Veniētur,
	F.-P.	Pugnātum ĕrit.[3]	Fautum ĕrit.[3]	Cursum ĕrit.[3]	Ventum ĕrit.[3]
Sub.	Pr.	Pugnētur,	Faveatur,	Currātur,	Veniātur,
	Imp.	Pugnarētur,	Faverētur,	Currerētur,	Venirētur,
	Per.	Pugnātum sit,[3]	Fautum sit,[3]	Cursum sit,[3]	Ventum sit,[3]
	Plu.	Pugnātum esset.[4]	Fautum esset.[4]	Cursum esset.[4]	Ventum esset.[4]
Inf.	Pr.	Pugnāri,	Favēri,	Curri,	Venīri,
	Per.	Pugnātum esse,[5]	Fautum esse,[5]	Cursum esse,[5]	Ventum esse,[5]
	Fut.	Pugnātum īri.	Fautum īri.	Cursum īri.	Ventum īri.

4. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; namely,

Dĕcet, decuit, &c.,	*It becomes, it became, &c.*
Lĭbet, lĭbuit *or* **libĭtum est, &c.,**	*It pleases, it pleased, &c.*

[1] *or* fuit. [2] *or* fuĕrat. [3] *or* fuĕrit. [4] *or* fuisset. [5] *or* fuisse.

Lĭcet, licuit *or* licĭtum est, &c.,	*It is lawful, it was lawful,* &c.
Misĕret, misĕruit *or* miserĭtum est, &c.,	*It pities, it pitied,* &c.
Oportet, oportuit, &c.,	*It behooves, it was incumbent on,* &c.
Pĭget, piguit *or* pigĭtum est, &c.,	*It grieves, it grieved,* &c.
Pœnĭtet, pœnituit, &c.,	*It repents, it repented,* &c.
Pŭdet, puduit *or* pudĭtum est, &c.,	*It shames, it shamed,* &c.
Tædet, tæduit *or* tæsum est, &c.,	*It wearies, it wearied,* &c.
Lĭquet,	*It appears.* (This verb has no perf.)

But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

5. Under impersonal verbs, may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *fulgŭrat*, "it lightens;" *fulmĭnat*, *tŏnat*, "it thunders;" *grandĭnat*, "it hails;" so, *gĕlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lucescit*, *advesperascit*, &c.

6. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before personal verbs, as their nominative, after the impersonals, in the case which they govern; as,

Plăcet mihi,	*It pleases me,* or *I please.*
Plăcet tĭbi,	*It pleases thee,* or *thou pleasest.*
Plăcet illi,	*It pleases him,* or *he pleases.*
Plăcet nōbis,	*It pleases us,* or *we please.*
Plăcet vōbis,	*It pleases you,* or *you please.*
Plăcet illis,	*It pleases them,* or *they please.*

So, *pugnātur a me*,—*a te*,—*ab illo*, &c., "it is fought by me,"—"by thee,"—"by him;" that is, I fight, thou fightest, he fights, &c. Hence, as the meaning of a transitive verb may be expressed by either the active or the passive voice, so, when an intransitive verb is translated by a verb considered transitive in English (132, *Obs.* 4), the English passive form of that verb is expressed, in Latin, by the passive used impersonally: thus, actively, *faveo tĭbi*, "I favor you;" passively, *favētur tĭbi a me*, "you are favored by me," and so of others.

7. Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, "let it delight." In the passive voice, their participles are used only in the neuter gender. The gerunds and supines are but seldom used.

224.—§ 86. EXERCISES ON IMPERSONALS.

(For the meaning of the impersonals used in the following exercises, see 223, Nos. 2, 3, 4.)

1. *Give the designation, the place found, the translation;* thus, *delectat*, a verb impersonal, first conjugation, found in the present indicative, active; "it delights."

Delectābit, decēbat, decēbit, decēret, contingit, continget, contĭgit, contigĕrit, evĕnit, evēnit, eveniet, eveniat, pugnabātur, pugnātum est, pugnētur, pugnarētur, favētur, fautum sit, fautum fuĕrit, ventum est, ventum ĕrit;—lĭbet, libuit, licĭtum est, misĕret, miserĭtum est, pĭget, pŭdet, fulgŭrat, tŏnat, grandinābat, grandinābit ninxit, &c.

2. *Give the designation, &c., as in* No. 1, *and translate as the word following the impersonal requires, according to* 223–6; thus, *delectat me, delectat*, a verb impersonal, first conjugation, present indicative, active; "it delights me," or "I delight."

Delectābit me, te, illum, nos, vos, illos; dĕcet vos, decēret vos; plăcet tĭbi; favētur vōbis, favebĭtur nōbis (a te, *by you*); pugnabĭtur ab illis; venītur a te, ventum est ab illis,—a vōbis,—a nōbis,—ab illo,—a te,—a me; pĭget me; lĭcet mihi, licēbit vōbis, licĭtum est illis; misĕret me, miseruit te; placuit vōbis,—nobis,—illis; misĕret nos, &c.

3. *Render the following English into Latin, by the impersonals;* thus, "I delight," *delectat me*, literally, "it delights me."—*N. B.* The noun or pronoun, after *misĕret, pœnĭtet, pŭdet, tædet, pĭget, dĕcet, delectat*, and *oportet*, must be put in the accusative, 419 and 423. Other impersonals are followed by the dative of the object, when they have one; and when they express any thing done by another, the agent or doer, when expressed, is put in the ablative preceded by *a* or *ab*, as in 223–6.

Exercises.—It becomes, it has repented, it is fought, it pleases, it is favored; it becomes me, I repent (it repents me), I fight (it is fought by me), you are favored (it is favored to you), you are favored by me; I repented, they have repented, you will repent; they are favored by us,—by you,—by me, &c.; we are favored by them,—by you; they come (it is come by them), they have come, we will come; we run, we will run; if (*si*) you please, if they please; it was allowed to us, we were allowed; it delights us, *or* we are delighted, they are delighted; it thunders, it lightens, it hailed, &c.

§ 87. REDUNDANT VERBS.

225.—Redundant Verbs are those which have more than one form of the same part, or which have different forms to express the same sense; as, *assentio* and *assentior*, "to assent;" *fabrĭco* or *fabrĭcor*, "to frame;" *mereo* and *mereor*, "to deserve;" *ĕdis* and *es*, "thou eatest;" *ĕdit* and *est*, "he eats;" from *ĕdo*, &c.

Redundant verbs, in Latin, are chiefly those which are used in two different conjugations; for example,

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and sometimes of the third; as, *lăvo*, *lavāre;* and *lăvo*, *lavĕre*, "to wash."

2. Some are usually of the second conjugation, and sometimes of the third; as,

Ferveo, fervēre;	*and*	fervo, fervĕre, *to boil.*
Fulgeo, fulgēre;	"	fulgo, fulgĕre, *to shine.*
Strideo, stridēre;	"	strido, stridĕre, *to creak*, &c.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and sometimes of the fourth; as,

Fodio, fodĕre;	*and*	fodio, fodīre, *to dig.*
Sallo, sallĕre;	"	sallio, sallīre, *to salt*, &c.

4. *Cieo*, *cĭere* is commonly of the second conjugation, but sometimes it is *cio*, *cīre* in the fourth, "to stir up."

---

§ 88. DERIVATIVE VERBS.

Verbs are derived either from *nouns*, or from other *verbs*.

226.—I. Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominatives;* as, *cœno*, "to sup;" *laudo*, "to praise;" *fraudo*, "to defraud;" *lapĭdo*, "to throw stones;" *opĕror*, "to work," &c., from *cœna*, *laus*, *fraus*, *lăpis*, *ŏpus*, &c.

But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitatives;* as, *patrisco*, *Græcor*, *bubŭlo*, *cornĭcor*, &c., "I imitate," or "resemble my father,"—"a Grecian,"—"an owl,"—"a crow;" from *păter*, *Græcus*, *bubo*, *cornix*.

227.—II. Verbs derived from other verbs, are chiefly the following; viz.:

1. Frequentatives. These express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *ĭto*, in the verbs of the first conjugation; and *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; thus,

		Last Sup.		*Freq.*
1st.	Clāmo, *to cry;*	clamātu,	*hence*	clamĭto, *to cry frequently.*
2d.	Terreo, *to frighten;*	terrĭtu,	"	terrĭto, *to frighten often.*
3d.	Verto, *to turn;*	versu,	"	verso, *to turn frequently.*
4th.	Dormio, *to sleep;*	dormītu,	"	dormīto, *to sleep often.*

In like manner, deponent verbs form frequentatives in *or;* as, *mĭnor*, "to threaten;" of which in the active voice, the latter supine would be *minātu*, and hence *minĭtor*, "to threaten frequently," "—ever and anon."

Obs. 1. Some frequentatives are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nāto*, from *no; noscĭto*, from *nosco; scītor* or rather *sciscĭtor*, from *scio; pavĭto*, from *paveo; sector*, from *sĕquor; loquĭtor*, from *lŏquor*. So *quærĭto*, *fundĭto*, *agĭto*, *fluĭto*, &c., which formed regularly would be *quæsĭto*, *fūso*, *acto*, *fluxo*, &c.

Obs. 2. From frequentative verbs are also formed other frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursĭto; pello*, *pulso*, *pulsĭto*, or, by contraction, *pulto; capio*, *capto*, *captĭto; cănо*, *canto*, *cantĭto; defendo*, *defenso*, *defensĭto; dīco*, *dicto*, *dictĭto;* &c.

Obs. 3. Frequentatives do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning with greater force.

2. Inceptive Verbs. These mark the beginning or continued increase of an action or state. They are formed by adding *co* to the second person singular of the present indicative; thus,

1st	*Conj.*	Lăbo,	lăbas;	*Inceptive*,	labasco.
2d	"	Caleo,	cāles;	"	calesco.
3d	"	Trĕmo,	trĕmis;	"	tremisco.
4th	"	Obdormio,	obdormis;	"	obdormisco.

Note.—But all verbs in *sco* are not inceptives. Inceptives are also formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer; dulcesco*, from *dulcis; juvenesco*, from *juvĕnis*.

Obs. 4. All inceptives are intransitives, and of the third

conjugation. They properly want both the perfect and the supine, unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. Desiderative Verbs are those which signify a *desire*, or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine by adding *rio*, and shortening *u;* as, *coenaturio*, "I desire to sup," from *coeno*, last supine, *coenātu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation, and want both perfect and supine, except these three; viz.: *esurio, esurīre, esurīvi, esurītum*, "to desire to eat;" *parturio, parturīre, parturīvi*, "to be in travail;" and *nupturio, nupturīre, nupturīvi*, "to desire to be married."

4. Diminutives, which represent an action as little or insignificant. They are formed from the present by changing *o, eo*, and *io*, into *illo;* and they are all of the first conjugation; as, *canto, cantillo, conscrībo, conscribillo, sorbeo, sorbillo.*

5. Some verbs in SSO are called Intensive; as, *capesso*, "I take;" *facesso*, "I do;" *petesso*, or *petisso*, "I seek earnestly."

---

§ 89. ADVERBS.

228.—An Adverb is a word joined to a *verb*, an *adjective*, or another *adverb*, to modify it, or to denote some circumstance respecting it.

229.—Adverbs may be considered in respect of *Signification*, *Derivation*, and *Comparison.*

I. THE SIGNIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

230.—In respect of signification, adverbs may be arranged, in Latin, under the following heads;

1. Adverbs of Place, comprehending those which signify:

1st. *Motion* or *rest in a place;* as, *ŭbi*, "where;" *hic*, "here;" *illic*, "there;" *intus*, "within;" *fŏris*, "without;" *ubīque*, "every where;" &c.

2d. *Motion to a place;* as, *quo?* "whither?" *huc*, "hither;" *illuc, isthuc*, "thither;" *eŏ*, "to that place;" *alio*, "to another place;" &c.

3d. *Motion from a place;* as, *unde*, "whence;" *hinc*, "hence;" *illinc, inde*, "thence;" *superne*, "from above;" &c.

4th. *Motion through* or *by a place;* as, *quâ?* "which way?" *hâ* 'this way;" *aliâ*, "another way;" &c.

2. ADVERBS OF TIME; as, *nunc*, "now;" *hodie*, "to-day;" *tum*, "then;" *nŭper*, "lately;" *mox*, "by and by;" *semper*, "always;" &c.

3. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY; as, *părum*, "little;" *multum*, "much;" *pĕne*, "almost;" *quanto*, "how much;" &c.

4. ADVERBS OF QUALITY; as, *bĕne*, "well;" *mălè*, "ill;" *fortĭter*, "bravely;" and many others derived from adjectives or participles.

5. ADVERBS OF MANNER (viz. of action or condition), including those which express *exhortation, affirmation, negation, granting, forbidding, interrogation, doubt, contingency*, &c.; as, *profecto*, "truly;" *non, haud*, "not;" *cur?* "why?" *quāre*, "wherefore," &c.

6. ADVERBS OF RELATION, or such as express circumstances of *comparison, resemblance, order, assemblage, separation*, &c.; as, *potius*, "rather;" *ĭta, sic*, "so;" *sĭmul*, "together;" *seorsum*, "apart;" &c.

II. DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

231.—The *Simple* and *Primitive* adverbs are but few in number; as, *non*, "not;" *ĭbi*, "there;" *mox*, "presently;" *tunc*, "then;" &c.

232.—The *Derivative* adverbs are numerous, and are formed in the following manner:

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions, generally end in *e*; as, *alte*, "highly," from *altus; libĕre*, "freely," from *lĭber*. Sometimes they end in *o, um*, or *ter;* as, *tūto*, safely," from *tūtus; tantum*, "so much," from *tantus; dūre* and *durĭter*, "hardly," from *dūrus.*

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension generally end in *ter;* as, *felĭciter*, "happily," from *fēlix.* Sometimes in *e;* as, *facĭle*, "easily," from *facĭlis;* and one ends in *o*, namely, *omnĭno*, "altogether," from *omnis.*

The neuter gender of adjectives is often used adverbially; as, *rècens*, "recently," for *recenter; torva*, "sternly," for *torve; dulce*, "sweetly," for *dulcĭter;* thus, Horace, *dulce rīdens*, "sweetly smiling;" &c.

3. Adverbs derived from nouns generally end in *im* or *ĭtus;* as, *virĭtim*, "man by man," from *vir; fundĭtus*, "from the ground," from *fundus.*

Many adverbs in *im*, however, are derived from participles; as, *sensim*, "by degrees," from *sensus* (*sentio*, "I perceive"). A few in *ĭtus* are derived from adjectives; as, *antiquĭtus*, from *antīquus;* &c.

4. Adverbs are formed by composition in various ways; two or more words forming a phrase, or part of a sentence, and syntactically combined, being formed into one word; as, *hodie*, "to-day," from *hoc die; scilĭcet*, "truly," from *scīre lĭcet; quŏmŏdo*, "how," from *quo mŏdo; quamobrem*, "wherefore," from *quam ob rem; &c.*

Obs. 1. The adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express in one word what would otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, "wisely," for *cum sapientia; semper*, "always," for *in omni tempŏre; &c.* Indeed, similar phrases, used to express circumstances of time, place, manner, order, and the like, constitute what may be called adverbial phrases, or clauses, though the words of which they consist are to be parsed separately, and combined according to the rules of syntax.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs are used to denote time, place, or order, according as the connection requires; as, *ŭbi*, "where," or "when;" *inde*, "from that place," "from that time," "after that," "next;" *hactĕnus*, "hitherto," "thus far," applied indifferently to place, time, or order.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time, apply indifferently to the past, the present, or the future; as *jam*, "already," "now," "by and by;" *ōlim*, "long ago," "sometime hereafter." Some adverbs of place are equally various in their use; as, *esse peregrè*, "to be abroad;" *īre peregrè*, "to go abroad;" *redīre peregrè*, "to return from abroad."

III. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

233.—Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. The positive commonly ends in *e*, *o*, or *ter*; the comparative, in *ius*; and the superlative, in *ĭme*; as,

Positive.	*Comp.*	*Super.*
Alte, *highly;*	altius,	altissĭme.
Fortĭter, *bravely;*	fortius,	fortissĭme.
Acrĭter, *sharply;*	acrius,	acerrĭme.
Lĭbĕre, *freely;*	liberius,	liberrĭme.
Tūto, *safely;*	tutius,	tutissĭme.

234.—The following adverbs are compared irregularly, like the adjectives from which they are derived; viz:

Positive.	*Comp.*	*Super.*
Bĕne, *well;*	melius,	optĭme.
Facĭle, *easily;*	facilius,	facillĭme.
Mălе, *badly;*	pejus,	pessĭme.
Multum, *much;*	plus,	plurĭmum.
Părum, *little;*	mĭnus,	minĭme. / minĭmum.
Prŏpe, *near;*	propius,	proxĭme.

Positive wanting.

Măgis, *more*, maxĭme; ocius, *more swiftly*, ocissĭme; prius, *sooner*, prīmo *or* prīmum; potius, *rather*, potissĭmum.

Comparative wanting.

Pĕne, *almost*, penissĭme; nūper, *lately*, nuperrĭme; nŏve *or* novĭter, *newly*, novissĭme; merĭto, *deservedly*, meritissĭme.

Superlative wanting.

Sătis, *enough*, satius; sĕcus, *otherwise*, secius.

Two Adverbs not derived from adjectives are also compared; namely, *diu*, "long," *diutius*, *diutissĭme*; and *sæpe*, "often," *sæpĭus*, *sæpissĭme*.

---

§ 90. PREPOSITIONS.

235.—A PREPOSITION is a word which shows the relation between a noun or pronoun following it, and some other word in the sentence.

The preposition, as its name imports, stands before the noun or pronoun which it governs.—In Latin,

1. *Twenty-eight Prepositions govern the Accusative; viz:*

Ad, *to, at, towards.*
Apud, *at, near, with.*
Ante, *before* (of time, place, or rank).
Adversus, Adversum, } *against, towards.*
Circa, Circum, } *around, about.*
Circĭter, *about* (of time indefinitely).
Cis, Citra, } *on this side, within.*
Contra, *against, opposite.*
Erga, *towards.*
Extra, *beyond, out of.*
Infra, *beneath.*
Inter, *between, among, during.*
Intra, *within.*
Juxta, *near, beside.*
Ob, *for, on account of, before.*
Pĕnes, *in the power of.*
Per, *through, during, by.*
Pōne, *behind.*
Post, *behind, after, since.*
Præter, *besides* (passing by), *beyond, besides, except.*
Propter, *near, on account of.*
Secundum, *along, according to.*
Supra, *above.*
Trans, *across, over, beyond.*
Ultra, *beyond.*

2. *Fifteen Prepositions govern the ablative; viz:*

A, Ab, Abs, *from, by, after,* &c.
Absque, *without.*
Clam, *without the knowledge of.*
Cōram, *before, in presence of.*
Cum, *with.*
De, *concerning, of, over.*
E, Ex, *out of, from, after, by.*
Pălam, *before, with the knowledge of.*
Præ, *before, in comparison with, on account of.*
Pro, *before, for, according to.*
Sĭne, *without.*
Tĕnus, *as far as, up to.*

3. *Four Prepositions govern the Accusative or Ablative; viz:*

With the Accusative:	With the Ablative:
In, *into, towards, against.*	In, *upon, in, among.*
Sub, *under* (motion to), *about.*	Sub, *under* (motion or rest), *at, near.*
Sŭper, *above, over, beyond.*	Sŭper, *upon, concerning.*
Subter, *under.*	Subter, *under.*

236.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. *A* is used before consonants; *ab*, before vowels, and *h, j, r, s*, and sometimes *l; abs*, before *t* and *qu*. *E* is used before consonants.

2. *Tĕnus* is placed after its case; and also *cum*, when joined to *me, te, se, quo, qui*, and *quĭbus;* as, *mĕcum*, &c. *Clam* sometimes governs the accusative; as, *clam patre*, or *patrem*.

3. The adverbs *prŏpe*, "nigh;" *usque*, "as far as;" *versus*, "towards," are often followed by an accusative governed by *ad* understood, and sometimes expressed. So also *prŏcul*, "far," is followed by the ablative governed by *a*, understood.

4. Prepositions not followed by their case, are to be regarded as adverbs.

5. Prepositions are sometimes combined; as, *ex adversus eum lŏcum*. Cic. *In ante diem*, "till the day." Id. *Ex ante diem*, "from the day." But prepositions compounded together, commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, *propălam, protĭnus, insŭper*, &c.

6. A preposition with its case is often used as an adverbial phrase; as, *ex anĭmo*, "earnestly;" *ex adverso*, "opposite;" *ex improviso*, "suddenly;" *extempŏre*, "off-hand." *Quamobrem* (*quam ob rem*), "wherefore;" *quapropter* (*quæ propter*); *quocirca* (*quod circa*), &c.

7. Prepositions are either primitive; as, *ad, ăpud, ante*, &c.; or derivative; as, *adversum*, from the adjective *adversus; secundum*, from *secundus*. They are either simple; as, *ad, ante, abs;* or compound; as, *ex adversum, absque;* or inseparable; as, *am, di* or *dis*, &c. 239–2.

§ 91. PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

237.—1. Prepositions are often prefixed to other words, especially to verbs, the meaning of which they generally modify by their own; thus,

238.—1. *A, ab, abs*, "from;" as, *duco*, "I lead;" *abduco*, "I lead away," or "from;" sometimes it denotes privation; as, *āmens*, "mad."

2. *Ad*, "to;" as, *adduco*, "I lead to." It is sometimes intensive; as *adămo*, "I love greatly."

3. *De*, in composition generally signifies "downward;" as, *descendo*, "I go down;" *decĭdo*, "I fall down." Sometimes it is intensive; as, *dĕămo*, "I love greatly;" sometimes it denotes privation; as, *despĕro*, "I despair;" *dēmens*, "mad."

4. *E* or *ex*, "out of," "from;" as, *exeo*, "I go out." It is sometimes intensive; as, *exōro*, "I beg earnestly;" sometimes privative; as, *exsanguis*, "pale;" *exspes*, "hopeless."

5. *In*, "into," "in," "against;" as, *infĕro*, "I bring in," *irruo*, "I rush against *or* upon." With adjectives it generally reverses the signification; as, *infĭdus*, "unfaithful;" *indignus*, "unworthy." In some compounds, it has contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, *invocātus*, "called upon;" "not called upon;" *immutātus*, "changed," "unchanged." *Impŏtens* means "weak," sometimes "powerful."

6. *Per*, "through," is commonly intensive, especially with adjectives; as, *perfacĭlis*, "very easy." With *quam*, it is strongly intensive; as, *per quam facĭlis*, "exceedingly easy." In *perfĭdus*, "perfidious," it is negative.

7. *Præ*, "before," with adjectives is intensive; as, *præclārus*, "very clear," "very renowned."

8. *Pro* denotes "forth;" as, *prodūco*, "I lead forth."

9. *Sub* often diminishes the signification; as, *rideo*, "I laugh;" *subrideo*, "I smile;" *albus*, "white;" *subalbus*, "whitish." Sometimes it denotes motion upwards; as, *subrĭgo*, "I raise up;" sometimes concealment; as, *rapio*, "I take;" *subripio*, "I take secretly," "I steal."

Note.—Prepositions frequently seem to add nothing to the words, with which they are compounded.

Obs. 1. In combining with the simple word, some prepositions frequently undergo a change of form, chiefly for the sake of euphony, for which see 215–5.

INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.

239.—2. The following syllables, *am*, *di*, or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, are called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are never found, except in compound words. Their general signification is as follows:

Am,	*about, around;*	as Ambio,	*to surround.*
Di, *or* dis,	*asunder;*	" Divello,	*to pull asunder.*
Re,	*back, again;*	" Relĕgo,	*to read again.*
Se,	*apart,* or *aside;*	" Sepōno,	*to lay aside.*
Con,	*together;*	" Concresco,	*to grow together.*

Obs. 1. Some of these syllables, in combining with the simple word, sometimes vary their form (215–5), and, also, further modify its signification; as,

1st. *Am* adds to the verb the general idea of round, round about.

2d. *Dis*, or *di*, sometimes reverses the meaning of the simple word; as, *facĭlis*, "easy;" *difficĭlis*, "difficult;" *fīdo*, "I trust," *diffīdo*, "I distrust." Sometimes it increases it; as, *cupio*, "I desire;" *discupio*, "I desire much."

3d. *Re* sometimes reverses the meaning of the simple word; as, *claudo*, "I shut;" *reclūdo*, "I open."

4th. *Se* has little variation of meaning. With adjectives, it denotes privation; as, *secūrus*, "free from care."

5th. *Con* (for *cum*) conveys the idea of joint or combined action, and sometimes strengthens the meaning of the word with which it is compounded.

Obs. 2. The syllables *ne* and *ve* are also prefixed to words, and have a negative signification; as, *fas*, "justice;" *nĕfas*, "injustice," "impiety;"—*scio*, "I know;" *nescio*, "I know not;"—*sānus*, "healthy;" *vesānus*, "sickly."

---

§ 92. INTERJECTIONS.

240.—An Interjection is a word used in exclamations, to express an emotion of the mind; as, *Oh! hei! heu!* "Ah!" "alas!"

Nouns and adjectives, in the neuter gender, are sometimes used as interjections; as, *pax!* "be still!" *mălum!* "with a mischief!" *infandum!* "O shame!" *misĕrum!* "O wretched!" *nĕfas!* "O the villany!"

Note.—The same interjection is often used to express different emotions, according to its connection; thus, *vah*, is used to express wonder, grief, joy, or anger.

§ 93. CONJUNCTIONS.

241.—A CONJUNCTION is a word which connects words or sentences; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, "and;" *sed*, "but;" *etiam*, "also;" &c.

242.—Conjunctions, according to their different significations, may be divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVES, or such as connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *ac*, *atque*, *et*, *que*, "and;" *etiam*, *quōque*, "also;" and sometimes the negative *nec*, *nēque*, "nor," "and not;" i. e. when they stand for *et*, and continue the negation.

2. DISJUNCTIVES, or such as connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut*, *seu*, *sive*, *ve*, *vel*, "either," "or;" and the negative *nēve*, *neu*, "neither," "nor."

3. CONCESSIVES, or such as express a concession; as, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, *licet*, *quanquam*, *quamvis*, "though," "although."

4. ADVERSATIVES, or such as express a condition; as, *at*, *alĭqui*, *autem*, *cetĕrum*, *vĕrum*, "but;" *tămen*, *attămen*, *verumtămen*, "yet," "although;" *vĕro*, "truly."

5. CAUSALS, or such as express a cause or reason; as, *ĕnim*, *etĕnim*, *nam*, *namque*, "for;" *quando*, *quandoquĭdem*, "whereas," "since;" *quia*, *quippe*, *quod*, "because;" *quoniam*, *quum* (or *cŭm*), "since;" *siquĭdem*, "if," "indeed."

6. ILLATIVES, or such as express an inference; as, *ergo*, *idcirco*, *proinde*, *quapropter*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *quocirca*, "therefore."

7. FINALS, or such as denote a purpose, object or result; as, *ne*, "lest;" *quin*, "but that;" *quominus*, "that not;" *ut*, *ŭti*, "that."

8. CONDITIONALS, or such as express a condition; as, *si*, *sin*, "if;" *nisi*, or *ni*, "unless;" *dummŏdo*, or *dum mŏdo*, "provided that."

9. SUSPENSIVES, or such as express doubt; as, *an*, *anne*, *annon*, *ne*, *necne*, *num*, *utrum*, "whether," "whether or not."

Obs. 1. Some words, as, *deinde*, "thereafter;" *denique*, "finally;" *cætĕrum*, "but," "moreover;" *videlĭcet*, "to wit;" &c.; may be considered either as adverbs or conjunctions, according as their modifying or connecting power prevails.

Obs. 2. *Autem*, *ĕnim*, *vĕro*, *quōque*, *quĭdem*, are never put first in a clause or sentence. *Que*, *ve*, *ne*, are always annexed to another word. They are called *Enclitics*, because, when placed after a long syllable, they make the accent *incline* to that syllable; as, *dĭsci*, *trŏchi*; *discĭve*, *trochīve*.

Obs. 3. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque*, *idcirco*, *ideo*, *namque*, *nec*, or *nēque*, &c.

PART THIRD.

§ 94. SYNTAX.

243.—SYNTAX is that part of Grammar which treats of the proper arrangement and connection of words in a sentence.

1. A *sentence* is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *Man is mortal.*

2. A *phrase* is two or more words rightly put together, but not making complete sense; as, *in truth, in a word.*

3. *Sentences* are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound.*

4. A *simple* sentence contains only a single affirmation; as, *Life is short.*

5. A *compound* sentence contains two or more simple sentences connected together; as, *Life, which is short, should be well employed.*

6. Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the *subject* and the *predicate.*

7. The *subject* is that of which something is affirmed. It is either in the nominative case before a finite verb, or in the accusative before the infinitive.

8. The *predicate* is that which is affirmed of the subject. It is either contained in the verb itself; as, *John reads;* or it consists of an intransitive verb, with an adjective or noun following it; as, *Time is short; they became poor; he is a scholar.* An. and Pr. Gr., 594.

9. Both the subject and predicate may be attended by other words called *adjuncts,* which serve to restrict or modify the meaning of the word with which they may stand connected; as, "An inordinate *desire* of admiration, often *produces* a contemptible *levity* of deportment."

10. When a compound sentence is so framed that the meaning is suspended till the whole be finished, it is called a *period.*

11. The analysis of sentences is the same in Latin as in English. See § 152, and "Analytical and Practical English Grammar," 591—657.

244.—§ 95. GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a *verb* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood; and a *subject* expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must have a substantive expressed or understood, with which it agrees. § 98 and 146.

3. Every relative must have an antecedent, or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees. § 99.

4. Every subject-nominative has its own verb expressed or understood. § 100, 101, 102. The predicate-nominative is usually placed after the substantive verb. § 103.

5. Every finite verb, i. e. every verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood, has its own nominative, expressed or understood (§ 101, 102), and when the infinitive has a subject, it is in the accusative. § 145. The infinitive without a subject, does not form a sentence or proposition. § 143.

6. Every oblique case is governed by some word, expressed or understood, in the sentence of which it forms a part; or is used, without government, to express certain circumstances. § 127.

245.—SYNOPSIS OF THE GOVERNMENT OF CASES.

7. The GENITIVE CASE is governed:

1st. By substantives, § 106, Rules VI., VII., and VIII.

2d. By adjectives, § 107. Namely, verbals, &c., R. IX.;—partitives, R. X.;—of plenty, or want, R. XI.

3d. By verbs, § 108. Namely, *Sum*, R. XII.—*Misereor*, &c R. XIII.—*Recordor, memĭni*, &c., R. XIV.;—of accusing, &c., § 122, R. XXVII.;—of valuing, R. XXVIII.—Passive verbs, § 126, R I and II.—Impersonals, § 113, Exc. I and II.

4th. By adverbs, § 135; and—

5th. It is used to express circumstances of place. § 130, R. XXXVI and XXXIX.

8. The DATIVE is governed:

1st. By substantives, § 110.

2d. By adjectives of profit or disprofit, &c., § 111, R. XVI.

3d. By verbs, § 112. Namely, *Sum* and its compounds, R. I.—*Est*, R. II—Certain compound verbs, R. III. and IV.—Verbs signifying to profit or hurt, &c., R. V.—Impersonals, § 113.—Verbs with two datives, § 114.—Verbs of comparing, &c., § 123.—Passive verbs, § 126, R. XXXII. and XXXIII.—Gerunds § 147.

4th. By adverbs, § 135.—Interjections, § 117

9. The ACCUSATIVE is governed:

1st. By transitive verbs signifying actively, § 116, R. XX.—To these belong *recordor, memĭni*, &c., § 108.—Verbs governing two cases, § 122; namely, of accusing, R. XXVII.;—valuing, R. XXVIII.;—comparing, &c., § 123;—asking and teaching, § 124;—loading, binding, &c., § 125.—By impersonal verbs, § 113, Exc. II. and III.—By passive verbs, § 126, R. IV.

2d. By prepositions, § 136, R. XLVIII., L., LI., LII.

3d. It is used to express circumstances of limitation, § 128;—of place, § 130;—of time, § 131;—of measure, § 132.

4th. It is put before the infinitive as its subject, § 145.

10. The VOCATIVE is governed by the interjections *O, heu, proh*, &c. (§ 117); or is used without government, to denote the person addressed.

11. The ABLATIVE is governed:

1st. By nouns, § 118.

2d. By adjectives; viz. of plenty or want, § 107, R. XI.—*Dignus, indignus*, &c., § 119.—The comparative degree, § 120.

3d By verbs, § 121; viz. of plenty and scarceness, R. XXV.—*Utor, abūtor*, &c., R. XXVI.—Loading, binding, &c., § 125.—Passive verbs, § 126, R. V.

4th By prepositions, § 136, R. XLIX., LI., LII.

5th. It is used without a governing word to express circumstances; viz. of limitation, § 128;—of cause, manner, &c., § 129;—of place, § 130; namely, the place *in which*, R. XXXVI.; *from which*, R. XXXVIII. and XXXIX.;—of time, § 131, R. XL. and XLI.;—of measure, § 132, R. XLII., XLIII.—Of price, § 133.

6th. It is used as the case absolute, § 146, R. LX.

246.—CONSTRUCTION OF MOODS.

12. The *Indicative*, and the *Imperative* mood are used independently, and without government.

13. The *Subjunctive Mood* is, for the most part, dependent, and is used,

1st. After certain conjunctions, § 140.

2d. After the relative in certain connections, § 141, R. LV.

3d. In oblique discourse, § 141, R. VI.

14. The *Infinitive Mood* is used,

1st. Without a subject, or as a verbal noun, § 144, and R. LVI, LVII.

2d. With a subject in dependent and subordinate clauses, § 145, R. LVIII.

15. *Participles* are construed as adjectives; *Gerunds* and *Supines*, as nouns, §§ 146, 147, 148.

16. For the construction of adverbs and conjunctions, see § 134, and § 149.

---

§ 96. PARTS OF SYNTAX.

247.—The Parts of Syntax are commonly reckoned two: *Concord*, or agreement, and *Government.*

248.—CONCORD is the agreement of one word with another, in *gender*, *number*, *case*, or *person.*

249.—GOVERNMENT is that power which one word has in determining the *mood*, *tense*, or *case*, of another word.

I. CONCORD.

250.—CONCORD, or agreement, is fourfold; viz.:

1. Of a substantive with a substantive;
2. Of an adjective with a substantive;
3. Of a relative with its antecedent;
4. Of a verb with its nominative, or subject.

---

§ 97. A SUBSTANTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

251.—RULE I. Substantives denoting the same person, or thing, agree in *case;* as,

Cicĕro orātor,	Cicero the orator.
Cicerōnis oratōris,	Of Cicero the orator, &c.
Urbs Athēnæ,	The city Athens.
Urbi Athēnis,	To the city Athens.

252.—EXPLANATION.—Substantives thus used are said to be in APPOSITION. The second substantive is added, to express some *attribute*,

description, or *appellative*, belonging to the first, and must always be in the same member of the sentence; i. e., they must be both in the subject, or both in the predicate. A substantive predicated of another, though denoting the same thing, is not in apposition with it, and does not come under this rule. § 108.

This rule applies to all substantive words, such as personal and relative pronouns, adjectives used substantively, &c.

Nouns in apposition are often connected, in English, by such particles as *as*, *being*, *for*, *like*, &c.; as, *Pater misit me comitem*, "My father sent me *as* a companion," "*for* a companion," &c.

OBSERVATIONS.

253.—*Obs.* 1. It is not necessary that nouns in apposition agree in *gender*, *number*, or *person*. In these respects, they are often different; as, *Magnum pauperies opprobrium.* HOR. *Alexin delicias domĭni.* VIRG.

254.—*Obs.* 2. Two or more nouns in the singular, have a noun in apposition in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribūni plēbis*, "Marcus Antonius, Caius Cassius, tribunes of the people." Also if the singular nouns be of different genders, the plural in apposition will have the masculine rather than the feminine, if both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum et Cleopatram rēges* (not *reginas*), *legāti missi.* LIV.

255.—*Obs* 3. The substantive pronoun, having a word in apposition, is frequently omitted; as, *Consul dixi* (scil. *ĕgo*), "(I) the consul said."

256.—*Obs.* 4. The possessive pronoun, being equivalent to the genitive of the personal, has a noun in apposition with it in the genitive; as, *pectus tuum, hominis simplĭcis.*

257.—*Obs.* 5. Sometimes the former noun denotes a *whole*, of which the noun in apposition expresses the *parts*; as, *Onerariæ, pars ad Ægimūrum,—alĭæ adversus urbem ipsam delātæ sunt*, "*The ships of burden* were carried, *part* to Ægimurus,—*others* against the city itself." So, *Quisque pro se queruntur*, "*They* complain *each* for himself."

258.—*Obs.* 6. A sentence or clause may supply the place of one of the substantives; as, *Cogĭtet oratōrem instĭtui, rem arduam*, "Let him consider that an orator is training, a difficult matter."

259.—*Obs.* 7. A demonstrative pronoun, in the neuter gender, sometimes refers to a phrase, or a dependent clause in apposition, and, in construction, takes the place of that clause, &c., either as the subject or the object of a verb; as, *Vĕtus nobilĭtas, majōrum fortia facta, cognatōrum et affinium ŏpes, multæ clientēlæ, omnia* HÆC *præsidio adsunt.* SALL., Jug., 85. Hoc *tibi persuadeas vĕlim, me nihil omisisse. Exercĭtum supplicio cogĕre,* ID *est domĭnum, non imperatōrem esse.* SALL., Jug., 85.

EXCEPTIONS.

260.—*Exc.* 1. Sometimes the latter substantive is put in the genitive; as, *fons Timāvi*, "the fountain of Timavus;" *amnis Eridāni*, "the river Eridanus;" *arbor fĭci*, "the fig tree;" *nōmen Mercurii est mihi.* Words thus construed may be referred to 332.

261.—*Exc.* 2. A proper name after the generic term *nōmen*, or *cognōmen*, sometimes elegantly takes the case of the person in the dative; as, *Nōmen Arctūro est mihi*, "I have the name Arcturus." PLAUT. So, *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo additur.* VIRG. *Cui Egerio indītum nōmen.* LIV *Mansit Silviis postea omnibus cognōmen.* Id. (433.)

262.—*Exc.* 3. The name of a town in the genitive, denoting *at a place*, may have a noun of the third declension or plural number, in apposition with it in the ablative, and vice versa; as, *Corinthi Achaiæ urbe*, "*At Corinth, a city* of Achaia." This construction depends on the rules, 548, 549.

---

§ 98. AN ADJECTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

263.—RULE II. An adjective agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case; as,

Bŏnus vir, a good man.	*Bŏnos vĭros*, good men.
Bŏna puella, a good girl.	*Bonārum lēgum*, of good laws.
Dulce pōmum, a sweet apple.	*Tuis dōnis*, with thy gifts.

264.—EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to all adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles; and requires that they be in the same gender, number, and case, with their substantives. 250–2. It applies also, when the substantive is in the subject, and the adjective in the predicate. 322. —The word "substantive," in this rule, includes personal and relative pronouns, and all words or phrases used as substantives.

OBSERVATIONS.

265.—*Obs.* 1. Two or more substantives singular, unless taken separately, have an adjective plural; as,

Vir et puer territi lupo, A man and a boy *terrified* by a wolf.

266.—*Obs.* 2. If all the substantives be of the same gender, the adjectives will be of that gender, as in the example above. But if the substantives are of different genders, the adjective takes the masculine rather than the feminine, and the feminine rather than the neuter; as;

Pater mihi, et mater mortui sunt, My father and mother are *dead.* TER.

267.—*Obs.* 3. But if they denote things without life, the adjective is commonly neuter. And, if some of the substantives refer to things with life, and others to things without life, the adjective is either neuter, or takes the gender of the thing or things with life; as,

Labor voluptasque sunt dissimilia natūrā, Toil and pleasure are *unlike* in nature.

Nāves et captīvi quæ ad Chium capta sunt,	The ships and captives *which* were taken at Chios.
Numĭdæ atque militaria signa obscūrāti sunt,	The Numidians and their military standards were partially *concealed.*

Also, the neuter is used frequently when the nouns denoting things are of the same gender; as, *Postquam īra et avaritia imperio potentiōra ĕrant.* Liv.

268.—*Obs.* 4. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood to the rest; as, *sociis et rege recepto,* Virg., "Our companions and *king being recovered.*"

Note 1.—These observations may, and sometimes do, hold good, even when one or more of the substantives are in the ablative, and connected with the others by *cum*; as, *Filiam cum filio accĭtos.*

269.—*Obs.* 5. When the substantive to which the adjective, or adjective pronoun, belongs may be easily supplied, it is frequently omitted, and the adjective, assuming its gender, number, and case, is often used as a substantive, and may have an adjective agreeing with it; as,

Mortālis (*hŏmo*), a mortal.	*Ille* (*hŏmó*), he.
Supĕri (*dii*), the gods above.	*Illi* (*homĭnes*), they.
Dextra (*mănus*), the right hand.	*Hic* (*hŏmo*), he.
Sinistra (*mănus*), the left hand.	*Hæc* (*femĭna*), she.
Omnia alia, all other (things).	*Familiāris meus* (*amīcus*), my intimate friend.

270.—*Obs.* 6. The adjective, especially when used as a predicate, without a substantive or definite object, is used in the neuter gender; as,

Triste lŭpus stabŭlis,	The wolf is *grievous* to the folds.
Vacāre culpa est suāve,	To be free from blame is *pleasant.*
Lăbor vincit omnia,	Labor overcomes *all obstacles.*

271.—*Obs.* 7. Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, when used substantively, take an adjective in the neuter gender (30); as,

Suprēmum vāle dixit, Ovid,	He pronounced a last *farewell.*
Cras istud quando vĕnit, Mart.,	When does that *to-morrow* come?
Excepto quod non sĭmul esses, Hor.,	*That you were not present* being excepted.

272.—*Obs.* 8. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *populum lāte rēgem* (for *regnantem*), "a people of extensive sway;" *nēmo* (for *nullus*) *mīles Romānus*, "no Roman soldier." Sometimes an adverb; as, *Hēri semper lenītas* (probably for *lenītas semper existens*, or the like). TER. So also adjectives are sometimes used as substantives, as, *majōres*, "ancestors;" *amīcus*, "a friend;" *summum bŏnum*, "the chief good" (thing); &c.

273.—*Obs.* 9. These adjectives, *prīmus, medius, ultīmus, extrēmus, infĭmus, īmus, summus, suprēmus, reliquus, cætera*, usually signify the "first part," the "middle part," &c., of any thing, and are placed before the substantive; as, *media nox*, "the middle of the night;" *summus mons*, "the top of the mountain."

274.—*Obs.* 10. Some adjectives denoting the time or circumstances of an action are used in the sense of adverbs; as, *prior vēnit*, "he came *first of the two*;" *prŏnus cecĭdit*, "he fell *forward*;" *abiit sublīmis*, "he went *on high*."

275.—*Obs.* 11. *Alius*, though an adjective, is often used as a pronoun, and has this peculiarity of construction, that, when repeated with a different word in the same clause, it renders the one simple proposition to which it belongs equivalent to two, and it is to be so rendered; thus, *aliud aliis vidētur optīmum*, "*one thing* seems best *to some, another* seems best *to others*." So, *duo rēges, alius aliâ via, ille bello, hic pace, civitatem auxērunt*, "two kings, *one in one way* and *another in another*;" &c. Or the two simple sentences may be combined in a plural form; thus, "different things seemed best to different persons;" "two kings, each in a different way;" &c. The same is true when a word derived from *alius*, such as *aliunde, aliter, aliò*, is put with it in the same clause; as, *aliis aliunde periculum est*, "there is danger *to one person from one source*, and *to another from another*;" or combined, "there is danger *to different persons* from *different sources*."

276.—*Obs.* 12. When *alius* is repeated in a *different* clause, but in the same construction, the first is to be rendered "one," the second, "another;" if plural, "some," "others;" as, *aliud est maledicĕre, aliud accusāre*, "it is *one thing* to rail at, *another* to accuse." CIC. *Proferēbant alii purpŭram, thus alii*, "*some* brought forth purple, *others* incense." Instead of *alii—alii*, &c., in the plural, we have sometimes *pars—alii; partim—alii;* sometimes *alii—pars, alii—partim*, "some—others," &c.; and sometimes the first of the pair is omitted.

This remark is applicable to *alter*, remembering only that *alius* signifies ONE OF MANY; *alter*, ONE OF TWO; as, *quōrum alter exercĭtum perdĭdit, alter vendĭdit*.

277.—*Obs.* 13. *Quisque*, with the superlative, is equivalent to *omnis* in the singular or plural, with the positive; thus, *optĭmus quisque=omnis bŏnus*, or *omnes bŏni*, "every good man," or, "all good men." With two superlatives, it expresses a sort of reciprocal comparison; as, *optĭmum quidque rarissĭmum*, "every thing is good in proportion as it is rare;" or, "the best things are the rarest."

Exceptions.

278.—*Exc.* 1. An adjective is often put in a different gender or number from the substantive with which it is connected, tacitly referring to its meaning rather than to its form, or to some other word synonymous with it, or implied in it; as,

Latium Capŭăque agro mulctāti, "Latium and Capua were deprived of their land," i. e., the people of Latium, &c.; *Capĭta conjuratiōnis virgis cæsi*,—"the heads (i. e., the leading men) of the conspiracy, &c."

279.—*Exc.* 2. A collective noun in the singular, if its verb is plural, has an adjective in the plural, and in the gender of the individuals which form the collection; as,

Pars in flūmen acti sunt, "*A part were forced* into the river." Sometimes it takes the gender of the individual in the singular; as, *pars arduus fŭrit*, &c.

280.—*Exc.* 3. A plural noun or pronoun, used to denote one person, in comic writers, sometimes has an adjective or participle in the singular; as, *Nōbis presente*, "I being present."

281.—*Exc.* 4. The adjective pronouns *uterque*, *quisque*, &c., in the singular, are often put with nouns in the plural, to intimate that the objects are spoken of individually and distributively; as, *Uterque eōrum ex castris exercĭtum edūcunt*, "They lead forth, *each* of them, his army from the camp;" *Quisque pro se queruntur*, "They complain, *each one* for himself." *Quisque*, in the singular, not only distributes plural nouns, but is in the nominative when the plural to be distributed is in the ablative absolute; as, *Multis sĭbi quisque imperium petentĭbus*. Sall., Jug., 18; or in the accusative, as the subject of the infinitive; as, *Affirmantes se :... quisque patriam .... relictūros*. *Alius* and *alter* are sometimes used in the same way; as, *Multa conjecta sunt aliud alio tempŏre*. *Obs.* 11. In this construction, there is a kind of apposition. 257.

282.—*Exc.* 5. When *ipse* qualifies a substantive pronoun in a reflexive sense, in any oblique case governed by a verb or preposition, it commonly takes the case of the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, instead of the case of the word which it qualifies; as, *Se ipse interfecit*, "He slew *himself*;" *Mihi ipse faveo*, "I favor *myself*;" *Crēdis mihi ipsum favēre?* "Do you believe that I favor *myself*?" &c. See 118–3, *Note*.

283.—*Exc.* 6. The possessive pronoun, in any case, being equivalent to, and used for, the genitive of the substantive pronoun (121, *Obs.* 1), an adjective, qualifying the substantive pronoun implied in it, is put in the genitive; as, *In nostro omnium flētu*, "Whilst *all of us* are in tears;" *Meum solius vitium*, "The fault *of me alone*;" *Nostri ipsōrum lĭbĕri*, "*Our own* children;" *Mea scripta timentis*.

§ 99. THE RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

284.—RULE III. The relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

Ego qui scrĭbo,	I who write.
Tu qui lĕgis,	Thou who readest.
Vir qui loquĭtur,	The man who speaks.
Viri qui loquuntur,	The men who speak.

285.—EXPLANATION.—The antecedent is the noun or pronoun going before the relative to which it refers. Sometimes, however, the relative and its clause are placed before the antecedent and its clause.

The infinitive mood or a part of a sentence is sometimes the antecedent, in which case the relative must be in the neuter gender.

OBSERVATIONS.

286.— *Obs.* 1. Strictly speaking, the relative does not agree with the *antecedent*, but with the same word expressed or understood *after* the relative, and with which, like the adjective, it agrees in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, as well as person; thus, *diem dĭcunt, quâ* (*die*), &c., "they appoint a day, on which (day)," &c. Hence, in connecting the antecedent and relative clause, the following variety of usage occurs, viz:

1st. The word to which the relative refers, is commonly expressed in the antecedent clause, and not with the relative; as, *Vir săpit qui pauca loquĭtur*, "He is a wise *man*, *who* speaks little."

2d. It is often elegantly omitted in the antecedent clause, and expressed with the relative, especially when the relative clause stands first; as, *In quem prīmum egressi sunt l ŏ c u m, Troja vocātur*, i. e., *lŏcus in quem*, &c.

3d. Sometimes, when greater precision is required, it is expressed in both; as, *Erant omnĭno i t i n ĕ r a duo, quĭbus i t i n e r ĭ b u s dŏmo exīre possent.* Instead of the first substantive, the relative sometimes takes with it a substantive *explanatory* of the first; as, *Cum venissem ad A m ā n u m, q u i m o n s*, &c.—*Non longe a Tolosatium finĭbus sunt, q u æ c i v ĭ t a s* (*Tolosatium*) *est in provincia*; for, *qui sunt*, &c. —*Ante comitia, q u o d t e m p u s haud longe abĕrat*; for, *quæ comitia haud*, &c.

4th. When the reference is of a general nature, and there is no danger of obscurity, the word to which the relative refers is understood in both clauses; as, *sunt quos jŭvat collegisse*, i. e. *sunt* (*homĭnes*) *quos* (*h o m ĭ n e s*) *jŭvat*, &c.;—*non habeo quod te accūsem*, i. e. *non habeo id quod te accūsem.* 492.

Note.—The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demon

strative pronoun in the clause following; as, *de qua re audīvi, eam tibi narrābo.* In the clause preceding the relative, the demonstrative has sometimes the force of *tālis*, "such;" and the relative, that of the corresponding *quālis*, "as;"—the two implying a sort of comparison; as, *Itaque ego is sum in illum, quem tu me esse vis*, "Therefore, I am towards him, *such as* you wish me to be." Cic.

To this construction may be referred such expressions as, *qui tuus est amor*, equivalent to, *pro eo amōre qui tuus est amor*, "such is your love," literally, "in accordance with such love as yours is;"—*quæ tua est benevolentia*, "such is your benevolence," where the demonstrative *is, ea, id*, in the sense of "such," (123–2, b), is supplied with the antecedent understood.

287.—*Obs.* 2. *a.* The antecedent is sometimes implied in a preceding word; as, *omnes laudāre fortūnas meas qui haberem*, &c., "all were praising *my* fortune *who* had," &c., i. e. *fortūnas mei qui;* the possessive *meas* being equivalent to the genitive of *ego.* 121, Obs. 1. *Conjuravēre pauci contra rempublicam, de qua* (scil. *conjuratiōne*, implied in *conjuravēre*) *quam brevissime potero dicam*, "a few entered into a conspiracy against the republic, concerning which," &c.

b. The relative sometimes refers, not to a particular word, but to the whole antecedent proposition, or the idea expressed by it, in which case it takes the neuter gender; as, *Tu āmas virtūtem, quod* (i. e. *quam rem*) *valde laudo. Postrēmo, quod difficillimum inter mortāles, gloriā invidiam vicisti.* Sall., Jug. Sometimes *id* is placed before *quod* referring to the same proposition; as, *Sive, id quod constat, Platōnis studiōsus audiendi fuit.* Cic.

288.—*Obs.* 3. When a relative refers to one or two nouns, denoting the same object, but of different genders, it may agree with either; as, *Flūmen est Arar quod*, &c. Here *quod* agrees with *flūmen. Ad flūmen Ossum perventum est, qui*, &c. Here *qui* agrees with *Ossum.*

289.—*Obs.* 4. When a word of a preceding proposition, or the proposition itself, is explained by a substantive after *esse, dicēre, vocāre, habēre*, &c., the relative (or demonstrative) pronoun between them, often takes, by attraction, the gender and number of the explanatory substantive following; as, *Thēbæ ipsæ quod Bœotiæ căput est.* Liv. *Idem velle et īdem nolle, ea dēmum firma amicitia est.* Sall. But if the latter substantive is distinctive only, the relative follows the general rule; as, *gēnus homīnum quod vocātur Helōtes;— ad eum lŏcum, quem Amanĭcas pylas vŏcant, pervēnit.*

Also the participles of such verbs, as well as the relative, take the gender and number of the predicate substantive when near it, or immediately after it; as, *non omnis error stultitia est dicenda* (for *dicendus*);—*gens universa Venĕti appellāti.*

290.—*Obs.* 5. An adjective which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, agreeing with the relative. This is the case, especially if the adjective be a numeral, a comparative, or superlative; as, *inter jŏcos, quos incondĭtos jaciunt*, for *jŏcos incondĭtos, quos*, &c., "amidst the rude jests which they utter;"—*nocte, quam in terris ultĭmam ēgit*, for *nocte ultĭmâ, quam*, &c., "the last night which he spent upon earth."

291.—*Obs.* 6. When a relative refers to two or more antecedents taken together, it agrees with them in gender and number, in all respects as the adjective does with several substantives, as stated 265, 266. But,

If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative plural takes the first person rather than the second, and the second person rather than the third.

292.—*Exc.* 1. The relative, sometimes, takes the gender and number, not of the antecedent noun, but of some one synonymous with it or implied in it; as, *eārum rērum quæ mortāles prīma putant*, "of those things which men deem most important." Here *quæ* seems to agree with *negotia*, considered synonymous with *rērum*.—*Dāret ut catēnis fatāle monstrum quæ*. The antecedent is *monstrum*, but *quæ* agrees with *Cleopatra*, the monster intended.

293.—*Obs.* 7. The relatives *quicunque* and *quisquis* are sometimes used instead of *qui*, when a general or indefinite term is expressed or understood with the antecedent; as, *quæ sanāri potĕrunt, quācunque ratiōne sanābo*, equivalent to *omni ratiōne quācunque* (*possum*), "what can be cured, I will cure by every means I can."

294.—This construction corresponds to that of the Greek ὅστις (Gr. Gram., § 135, 7), and, like it, these relatives often represent two cases; as, *quoscunque de te quĕri audīvi, quacunque potui ratiōne placāvi*. Here, *quoscunque* is both the object of *placāvi*, and the subject of *quĕri;* and *quacunque* is equivalent to *omni ratiōne qua ratiōne.—Quidquid tetigĕrat aurum fiĕbat.* Here *quidquid* stands both as the nominative to *fiĕbat* and the accusative after *tetigĕrat*, and is equivalent to *omne quod tetigĕrat*, &c.

295.—*Obs.* 8. In the beginning of a sentence, or clause connected with what precedes, not by the relative itself, but by *quum* (*cum*), *si, autem, quoniam*, or other conjunctive term expressed or understood, the relative assumes the character of a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and, as such, refers to some word, clause, or circumstance, already expressed; thus,

1st. When the relative thus used stands *instead* of its noun, it is equivalent to *et ille, et hic, et is, et illi*, &c., and may be rendered "and he," "and she," "and they," &c.; as, *qui quum admittĕrer*, "and when *he* admitted;"—*ad quem quum venissent*, "and when they had come to *him*;"—*quem ut vīdit*, "as soon as he saw *him*."

2d. When the relative thus used stands *with* its substantive, or has it understood, it is to be translated, as a demonstrative, by *this, that, these, those*, commonly preceded by *and;* as, *qui lĕgāti quum missi essent*, "and *when these ambassadors* had been sent;"—*ad quārum initium silvārum quum Cæsar pervenisset*, "and when Cæsar had come to the beginning of *these woods;*"—*quam quum Romanōrum dux dăre nollet*, "and when the Roman general would not grant *this* (scil. *pācem*, "peace").

296.—To this construction belongs *quod*, in the beginning of a sentence (apparently for *propter quod*, or *ad quod*), referring to something previously stated, and meaning "on account of," "with respect to," "as to, &c.

this thing;" as, *quod diis gratias habeo*, "*wherefore* (i. e. *on account of this thing*), I give thanks to the gods;"—*quod scrībis* (Cic.), "*as to what* you write."

CASE OF THE RELATIVE.

297.—*Obs.* 9. The relative, in respect of case, is always to be considered as a noun and subject to the rules which determine the case of nouns.

298.—*Exc.* 2. The relative, after the manner of the Greek, is sometimes attracted into the case of its antecedent; as, *Cum āgas alīquid ēōrum quōrum consuēsti*, &c., for *ēōrum quæ consuēsti*, "When you do any *of those things which* you have been accustomed to do;" *Raptim quĭbus quisque potĕrat elātis*, for (*iis*) QUÆ *quisque*, &c., "*Those things which* each one could, being hastily snatched up."

299.—*Exc.* 3. The antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; as, *Urbem quam statuo vestra est*, for *urbs quam statuo*, &c., "*The city which* I am building is yours."

These are Greek constructions seldom used by Latin writers. See Greek Gr., § 135, *Exc.* 9, 10.

300.—*Obs.* 10. The relative adjectives *quot*, *quantus*, *quālis*, used in comparisons, and commonly rendered "as," are often construed in a manner similar to the relative (286), having their redditives, or corresponding adjectives *tot*, *tantus*, *tālis*, expressed or understood in the antecedent clause; as, *Tantæ multitudĭnis quantam căpit urbs*, "Of *as great* a multitude *as* the city contains;" *Facies* (*tālis*), *quālem dĕcet esse sorōrum*, "The features, *such as* those of sisters ought to be." Virg.

a. The noun, as well as the redditive, is very often omitted in the antecedent clause, and expressed in the relative clause (286–2d); as, *Quantā potuit celeritāte cucurrit*, changed to the common form, is *Tantā celeritate quantā potuit, cucurrit*, "He ran with *as much* speed *as* he could." In this way, are to be explained such clauses as *Quantum importunitātis habent*, "Such arrogance have they," in full form, *Pro tanto importunitātis quantum habent.*

b. When the relative adjective and its redditive refer to different substantives, each agrees with its own. But among the poets, the relative sometimes agrees with the substantive in the antecedent clause, and not with that in its own.

Sometimes the redditive is understood, and sometimes the relative.

Note 1. Instead of the relative adjectives *quot*, *quantus*, *quālis*, the conjunctions *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, and the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, in the sense of "as,"

are sometimes used in comparative expressions; as, *Hŏnos tăli populi Romāni voluntāte, paucis est delātus quc mihi.* Cic.

Note 2.—When *quot, quantus, quālis* are used as interrogatives, they have no corresponding antecedent term.

301.—*Exc.* 4. Instead of the ordinary construction, the relative adjective, with its noun, is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative pronoun understood, as in the following sentence: *Si hominĭbus bonārum rērum tanta cūra esset, quanto studio pĕtunt,* Sall., Jug.; instead of *quantum est studium quo aliēna pĕtunt*:—unless this be a case of anacoluthon, the latter part of the sentence being expressed as if the former, had been, *Si homĭnes bŏnas res pĕtĕrent, quanto studio,* &c., i. e., *tanto studio quanto,* &c. 300, *a.*

§ 100. CONSTRUCTION OF THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

302. The nominative case is used,

1. To express the subject of a proposition;
2. In apposition with another substantive in the nominative (§ 97), or predicated of it (§ 103);
3. In exclamations; as, *O vir fortis atque amīcus!*

§ 101. THE VERB AND ITS NOMINATIVE.

303.—Rule IV. A Verb agrees with its nominative in number and person; as,

Ego lĕgo,	I read.	*Nos legĭmus,*	We read.
Tu scrĭbis,	Thou writest.	*Vos scribĭtis,*	Ye write.
Ille loquĭtur,	He speaks.	*Illi loquuntur,*	They speak.

304.—EXPLANATION.—The subject of a finite verb, being a noun, a pronoun, an adjective used as a noun, or a gerund, is put in the nominative case. The subject may also be an infinitive mood or part of a sentence. To all of these the rule applies, and requires that the verb be in the same number and person as the subject, or nominative. For person, see 85, and 118-1, 2.

OBSERVATIONS.

305.—*Obs.* 1. The nominatives *ĕgo, nos,* of the first person; and *tu, vos,* of the second, are generally omitted, being obvious from the termina-

tion of the verb; also the nominative of the third person, when it is an indefinite word, or may be easily supplied from the context; as, *fĕrunt*, "they say;" &c.

306.—*Obs.* 2. The subject is also omitted when the verb expresses the state of the weather, or an operation of nature; as, *fulgŭrat*, "it lightens;" *pluit*, "it rains;" *ningit*, "it snows."

307.—*Obs.* 3. Impersonal verbs are usually considered as without a nominative. Still, they will generally be found to bear a relation to some circumstance, sentence, clause of a sentence, or infinitive mood, similar to that between a verb and its nominative; as, *delectat me studēre*, "it delights me to study," i. e. "to study delights me;"—*misĕret me tui*, "I pity you," i. e. *conditio*, or *fortūna tui misĕret me*, "your condition excites my pity." 662.

308.—*Obs.* 4. The verb is sometimes omitted when the nominative is expressed, and sometimes when it is understood; as, *nam ĕgo Polydōrus* (sc. *sum*), "for I am Polydorus;"—*omnia præclāra rāra* (sc. *sunt*), "all excellent things are rare;"—*tum ille* (sc. *respondit*), "then he replied;"—*vērum hactĕnus hæc* (sc. *dixĭmus*).

309.—*Obs.* 5. When the subject is an infinitive, or a clause of a sentence, the verb is in the third person singular; and, if a compound tense the participle is put in the neuter gender; as, *incertum est quam longa nostrûm cujusque vīta futūra sit*, "how long any of us shall live *is uncertain*."

310.—*Obs.* 6. The nominative is sometimes found with the infinitive, in which case *cœpit* or *cœpērunt*, or some other verb, according to the sense, is understood; as, *omnes invidēre mihi*, "*every one envied* me." The infinitive with the nominative before it, is so common in historical narrative, that it is called the *historical infinitive*. Thus used, it is translated as the imperfect or the perfect indefinite, for which tenses it seems to be used, and with which it is sometimes connected. 669.

311.—*Obs.* 7. *Vĭdeor*, in the sense of "I seem," is used throughout as a personal verb, but is often rendered impersonally; as, *vĭdeor esse lĭber*, "*it seems that I* am free," literally, "*I seem* to be free."—Followed by the dative of a person, it means *to think, fancy, suppose*, with reference to the word in the dative, as the subject in English; as, *vĭdeor tĭbi esse*, "*you think that I* am," literally, "*I seem to you* to be;"—*tu vidēris mihi*, "I think that you;"—*vĭdeor illi*, "he thinks that I;" &c. In the third person singular, followed by an infinitive mood or connected clause, it is rendered impersonally, but still has the infinitive or clause for its subject. See 413.

---

§ 102. SPECIAL RULES AND OBSERVATIONS.

I. *Of agreement in Number and Person.*

312.—RULE I. Two or more substantives singular, taken together, have a verb in the

plural; taken separately, the verb is usually singular; as,

(Taken together,)

Fŭror irăque mentem præcipĭtant, Fury and rage hurry on my mind.

(Taken separately,)

Si Socrătes aut Antisthĕnes dicĕret, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say.

313.—*Obs.* 1. To both parts of this rule, however, and especially to the first, there are many exceptions. If one of the nominatives is plural, the verb is commonly plural. But sometimes the verb agrees with the nominative nearest it, and is understood to the rest, especially when each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, or when they denote things without life; as, *Mens ĕnim, et ratio, et consilium, in senĭbus est.*

When the nominatives are disjunctively connected by *aut, neque,* &c., the verb is sometimes plural; and it is always so, when the substantives are of different persons; as, *Quod nĕque ĕgo, nĕque Cæsar habĭti essĕmus.* Cic. *Hæc si nĕque ĕgo, nĕque tu fecĭmus.* Ter.

314.—*Obs.* 2. A substantive in the nominative singular, connected with another in the ablative by *cum*, may have a plural verb; as, *Rĕmo cum fratre Quirĭnus jŭra dăbunt.*

315.—*Obs.* 3. When the nominatives are of different persons, the verb is commonly plural, and takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valētis, ĕgo et Cicĕro valēmus,* "If you and Tullia *are well*, Cicero and I *are well*."

But sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest nominative, and is understood to the rest, and always so, when the verb has different modifications with each nominative; as, *Ego misĕre, tu felicĭter vīvis.*

316.—Rule II. 1. A collective noun expressing many as one whole, has a verb in the singular; as,

Popŭlus me sibĭlat, The *people hiss* at me.
Senātus in curiam vĕnit, The *Senate came* into the Senate-house.

2. But when it expresses many as individuals, the verb must be plural; as,

Pars epŭlis onĕrant mensas, *Part load* the tables with food.
Turba ruunt, The *crowd rush.*
Veniunt lĕve vulgus euntque, The fickle *populace come* and *go.*

317.—*Obs.* 4. To both parts of this rule, there are also exceptions; and in some cases, it seems indifferent whether the verb be in the singular or plural; sometimes both are joined with the same word; as, *Turba ex eo lŏco dilabebātur, refractūrosque carcĕrem minabantur.*

318.—*Obs.* 5. *Uterque, quisque, pars....pars, alius....alius,* and *alter....alter*, on account of the idea of plurality involved, frequently have

the verb in the plural. This construction may be explained on the principle mentioned 281, where see examples; or 257.

---

§ 103. THE PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

319.—RULE V. The predicate substantive or adjective, after a verb, is put in the same case as the subject before it; as,

Ego sum discipŭlus,	I am a scholar.
Tu vocāris Joannes,	Thou art called John.
Illa incĕdit regīna,	She walks (as) a queen.

320.—EXPLANATION.—Under this rule, the nominative before the verb is the *subject* or thing spoken of; the nominative after it, is the *predicate*, or the thing asserted of the subject. The verb is the *copula* connecting the one with the other, and is usually a substantive verb (171), an intransitive verb, or a passive verb of naming, judging, appointing, &c., which, from its use, is called a *copulative verb*.

This rule applies to the accusative and dative before, and after, the infinitive of copulative verbs. See *Obs.* 5, 6, 7, 8, below.

OBSERVATIONS.

321.—*Obs.* 1. Any copulative verb between two nominatives of different numbers, commonly agrees in number with the former, or subject; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, "*Her dowry is* ten talents." TER. *Omnia pontus ĕrant*, "All was sea." OVID. But sometimes with the latter or predicate; as, *Amantium īræ, amōris integratio est*, "The quarrels of lovers *is a renewal* of love."

a. So also, when the nouns are of different genders, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or a participle, in the predicate, commonly agrees with the subject of the verb; as, *Oppĭdum appellātum est Possidonia;*—but sometimes with the predicate; as, *Non omnis error stultitia dicenda est.* CIC.

b. The verb *esse* sometimes takes an adverb in the predicate, where, in English, an adjective is commonly used; as, *omnia mălа abunde ĕrant*, "—*were abundant*;"—*Romānos laxius futūros*, "that the Romans *would be more negligent*;"—*ea res frustra fuit*, "that *was of no avail*."

322.—*Obs.* 2. When the predicate is an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle without a substantive, it agrees with the subject before the verb according to Rule II (263); except as noticed in the same section, Obs. 6 (270).

323.—*Obs.* 3. When the subject is of the second person, and the vocative stands before the verb, the adjective or participle will usually be in

the nominative, according to the rule; as, *estō tu, Cæsar, amīcus;* but sometimes it is put in the vocative; as, *Quĭbus, Hector, ab ŏris expectāte vĕnis* (VIRG.), for *expectātus.* Hence the phrase, *Macte virtūte esto,* for *mactus.*

324.—*Obs.* 4. The noun *ŏpus,* commonly rendered "needful," is often used as a predicate after *sum;* as, *dux nōbis ŏpus est,* "a leader *is wanted* by us."

Note 1.—Such expressions as *audīvi hoc puer,—rempublĭcam defend adolescens,—sapiens nil făcit invītus,* belong more properly to Rules I. and II. than to this (251 and 263).

325.—*Obs.* 5. The accusative or dative before the infinitive under this Rule, requires the same case after it in the predicate; as,

Novĭmus te esse fortem,	We know that *thou* art *brave.*
Mihi negligenti non esse lĭcet,	I am not allowed *to be negligent.*

Note 2.—In this construction, the infinitive is sometimes omitted; as, *novĭmus te fortem,* for *esse fortem.*

326.—*Obs.* 6. When the subject of the infinitive is the same with the subject of the preceding verb, it is often omitted, in which case the predicate after the infinitive is in the nominative agreeing with the preceding subject, or in the accusative agreeing with the subject of the infinitive understood; as, *cupio dĭci doctus,* or *cupio dĭci doctum,* i. e. *me dĭci doctum,* "I desire to be called learned." The first of these is a Greek construction, and seldom used by Latin prose writers. See Gr. Gram., § 175, 3.

327.—*Obs.* 7. When the infinitive of such verbs has a dative before it, it may be followed either by a dative or an accusative; as, *lĭcet mihi esse beāto;* or, *lĭcet mihi esse beātum,* "I may be happy." In the first case, *beāto* agrees with *mihi;* in the second, *beātum* agrees with *me,* to be supplied as the subject of *esse.* Sometimes, when the sentence is indefinite, the dative also is understood; as, *lĭcet esse beātum* (sc. *alĭcui*), "one may be happy." The first of these forms also is a Greek construction. See Gr. Gram., § 175, Obs. 5.

328.—*Obs.* 8. This variety of case after the infinitive, is admissible only with the *nominative, dative,* and *accusative.* The other cases before the infinitive have the accusative after it, agreeing with the subject of the infinitive understood; as, *interest omnium* (*se*) *esse bŏnos*

329.—§ 104. GOVERNMENT.

1. GOVERNMENT is the power which one word has over another depending upon it, requiring it to be put in a certain *case, mood,* or *tense.*

2. The words subject to government are *nouns* and *verbs.*

3. The words governing or affecting these in their case, mood, or tense, are *nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs,* and *words indeclinable.*

4. To the Syntax of nouns, belongs all that part of Syntax relating to the government of *case*. Every thing else in government belongs to the Syntax of the verb, § 137, et seq.

SYNTAX OF THE NOUN.

330.—In this part of Grammar, under the term *noun* or *substantive*, is comprehended every thing used as such; namely, nouns, personal pronouns, adjective pronouns used personally, adjectives without substantives, gerunds, together with infinitives, and substantive clauses used as nouns.

The construction of the oblique cases depends, in general, upon the particular ideas expressed by the cases themselves, as they are stated No. 50, or as they are mentioned hereafter, under each case.

---

§ 105. CONSTRUCTION OF THE GENITIVE.

331.—The *Genitive*, as its name imports, with the meaning of the word, connects the idea of origin, and hence that of property or possession. It is used, in general, to limit the signification of another word, with which it is joined, by representing it as something originating with, possessed by, or relating to, that which the genitive or limiting word expresses; and it is said to be *governed* by the word so limited, i. e., the word limited requires the word limiting it to be put in the Genitive case.

The Genitive is governed by *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, and *Verbs;* and also is used to express circumstances of *place*, *quantity*, or *degree*.

---

§ 106. THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY NOUNS.

332.—RULE VI. One substantive governs another in the genitive, when the latter substantive limits the signification of the former; as,

Amor gloriæ,	The love of glory.
Lex natūræ,	The law of nature.

333.—EXPLANATION.—Under this rule, the two substantives must be of *different signification*, and the one used to restrict the meaning of the

other. Thus, in the first example, *ămor*, alone, means "love," in general; but the term *gloriæ*, joined with it, restricts its meaning here to a particular object, "glory," and so of other examples.

N. B. When a noun is limited by another of the *same signification*, it is put in the same case by Rule I (251).

OBSERVATIONS.

334.—*Obs.* 1. When the governing noun expresses a feeling or act, &c., *inherent in*, or *exercised by*, the noun governed in the genitive, the genitive is said to be *subjective* or *active*. But when the governing noun denotes something of which the noun governed is the object, the genitive is then said to be *objective* or *passive*. Thus, in the phrase *providentia Dei*, the genitive is necessarily *subjective* or *active*, because *providentia* expresses an act or operation of which God is the *subject*, and of which he cannot be the *object*. On the other hand, in the phrase *tĭmor Dei*, "the fear of God," the genitive *Dei* is necessarily *objective* or *passive*, because *tĭmor* denotes a feeling in some other subject of which God is the *object*, and cannot be the *subject*. Sometimes the meaning of both substantives is such, that the genitive may be either active or passive; thus, when the expression *ămor Dei* means the love which God has to us, *Dei* is *active* or *subjective;* but when it means the love which we have to God, *Dei* is *passive* or *objective*. In such cases, the sense in which the genitive is used must be determined by the author's meaning.

335.—*Obs.* 2. Hence it often happens that a noun governs two substantives, one of which limits it *subjectively*, and the other *objectively;* as, *Agamemnŏnis belli gloria*, "Agamemnon's glory in war." Nep. Here, *Agamemnŏnis* limits *gloria* subjectively, and *belli* limits it objectively So, *Illius administratio provinciæ*. Cic.

336.—*Obs.* 3. The governing noun is often omitted, but only, however, when the expression itself readily suggests the noun to be supplied; as, *ad Diānæ*, sc. *ædem;* or when it can be readily supplied from the preceding or following words.

337.—*Obs.* 4. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun governed by the noun, it is more common to use the possessive adjective pronoun agreeing with it; as, *meus păter*, rather than *păter mei*. So also, instead of the genitive of a noun, a possessive adjective is sometimes used; as, *causa regia*, for *rēgis causa; herīlis filius*, for *filius hĕri*.

338.—*Obs.* 5. The dative is often used instead of the genitive, to limit a noun as to its object; as, *fratri ædes*, for *fratris*, "the house of my brother;"—*præsidium reis*, "a defence to the accused." For this construction, see 380 and 381.

339.—Rule VII. A substantive added to another, to express a property or quality belonging to it, is put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ*,	A man of great wisdom.
Puer prŏbæ indŏlis, or *prŏbâ indŏle*,	A boy of a good disposition.

340.—EXPLANATION.—Under this rule, the latter substantive in the genitive or ablative must denote a *part* or *property* of the former, otherwise it does not belong to this rule. The latter substantive, also, has commonly an adjective joined with it as in the preceding examples, though this is not essential to the rule; and sometimes it is found without it; as, *Homo nihili.*

341.—*Obs.* 6. There is no certain rule by which to determine when the genitive is to be used, or when the ablative, though in some phrases we find the genitive only is used; as, *vir ĭmi subsellii*, "a person of the lowest rank;"—*hŏmo nullius stipendii*, "a man of no experience in war" (SALL.);—*magni formīca labōris*, &c. In others, the ablative only; as, *Es bŏno anĭmo*, "Be of good courage." Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *adolescens eximiâ spe, summæ virtūtis.* In prose, the ablative is more common than the genitive.

342.—*Obs.* 7. Sometimes, instead of the construction under this rule, the adjective is put with the former substantive; as, *Vir gravitāte et prudentiâ præstans.* CIC. So, *Vir præstantis ingenii,—præstanti ingenio,—præstans ingenio*, and (poetically)—*præstans ingenii*, are all used. And sometimes, when the adjective takes the case of the former substantive, the latter substantive, especially by the poets, is, by a Greek construction, put in the accusative instead of the genitive or ablative; as, *miles fractus membra*, instead of *membris;—os humerosque similis deo*, instead of *ōre humerisque simĭlis deo.* For this use of the accusative, see 538.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

343.—RULE VIII. An adjective in the neuter gender, without a substantive, governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ,	Much money.
Id negotii,	That business.

344.—EXPLANATION.—Under this rule, the adjective, without a substantive expressed, is regarded as a substantive, and so, capable of being limited by the genitive, as under Rule VI (332).

345.—*Obs.* 8. The adjectives thus used have a partitive character, and are generally such as signify quantity; *multum, plus, plurĭmum, tantum, quantum;*—the pronouns *hoc, id, illud, istud, quod, quid*, with its compounds;—also *summum, ultĭmum, extrēmum, dimidium, medium, aliud*, &c. To these may be added *nihil*, "nothing," which is always a substantive; and the adverbs *sātis, părum, abunde, affātim*, and sometimes *largĭter*, in a substantive sense; as, *nihil pretii, sātis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ părum.* 595.

This rule applies also to several neuter adjectives in the plural, used in a partitive sense; as, *angusta viārum*, "the narrow parts of the road;" *opăca iocōrum; antīqua fœdĕrum; cuncta campōrum;* &c.

Note.—Such adjectives, followed by a genitive, are always either in the

nominative or accusative; and, when in the accusative, are not dependent on a preposition.

346.—*Obs.* 9. Most of these adjectives may have their substantives with which they agree; but the more common construction is with the genitive; as, *tantum spei*, "so much hope;"—*quid muliĕris?* "what kind of a woman?"—*aliquid formæ; quid hoc rei est?* And sometimes the genitive after these neuters is the genitive of an adjective used as a substantive; as, *aliquid nŏvi, tantum bŏni*, &c.

347.—*Obs.* 10. *Quod* and *quicquid*, followed by a genitive, include the idea of universality; as, *quod agri*, "what of land," i. e. "all the land;" *quicquid civium*, "whatever of citizens," i. e. "all the citizens;" *quicquid deōrum*, "all the gods."

348.—*Obs.* 11. *Opus* and *ūsus*, signifying "need," sometimes govern the genitive; as, *Argenti ŏpus fuit*, "There was need *of mŏney*." Liv. *Proœmii non semper ūsus est*, "There is not always need of an introduction." Quinct. In general, these words govern the ablative. 456.

---

§ 107. GENITIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

349.—Rule IX. Verbal adjectives, or such as imply an operation of mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avĭdus gloriæ,	Desirous of glory.
Ignārus fraudis,	Ignorant of fraud.
Mĕmor beneficiōrum,	Mindful of favors.

350.—EXPLANATION.—The genitive in this construction, as in § 106, is used to limit the application of the general term or adjective by which it is governed, and may be rendered by *of*, or, *in respect of*, prefixed; thus, in the first example, *avidus* expresses the possession of *desire* generally; the genitive *gloriæ* limits it to a certain object, "glory;" and so of the other examples.

OBSERVATIONS.

351.—*Obs.* 1. Adjectives governing the genitive under this rule, are:

1st. Verbals in AX; as, *căpax, ĕdax, fĕrax, fŭgax, pervĭcax, tĕnax*, &c.

2d. Participles in NS and TUS; as, *ămans, appĕtens, cupiens, patiens, impatiens, sitiens, cōlens, fugiens, intellĭgens, metuens, tempĕrans, intempĕrans; consultus, doctus, expertus, inexpertus, insuētus, insolĭtus*, &c.

3d. Adjectives denoting various affections of the mind; such as, 1. DESIRE and DISGUST; as, *avārus, avĭdus, cupĭdus, studiōsus, fastidiōsus,* &c., with many other verbals in *ĭdus* and *ōsus*. 2. KNOWLEDGE and IGNORANCE; as, *callĭdus, certus, conscius, gnārus, perītus, prūdens,* &c.; —*ignārus, incertus, inscius, imprūdens, imperītus, rŭdis,* &c. 3. MEMORY or FORGETFULNESS; as, *mĕmor, immĕmor,* &c. 4. CARE and NEGLIGENCE; as, *anxius, curiōsus, solicĭtus, providus, dilĭgens;*—*incuriōsus, secūrus, neglĭgens,* &c. 5. FEAR and CONFIDENCE; as, *pavĭdus, timĭdus, trepĭdus;*—*impavĭdus, interrĭtus,* &c. 6. GUILT and INNOCENCE; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus;*—*innoxius, innŏcens, insons,* &c.

4th. To these, may be added many other adjectives of similar signification, which are limited by, or govern such genitives as *animi, ingenii, mentis, īræ, militiæ, belli, labōris, rērum, ævi, mōrum,* and *fidei*.

352.—*Obs.* 2. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles, but usually with some difference of meaning; as, *patiens algōris,* "capable of bearing cold;" *patiens algōrem,* "actually bearing cold;" *ămans virtūtis,* "loving virtue,"—spoken of the disposition; *ămans virtūtem,* "loving virtue,"—spoken of the act. So also, *doctus grammatĭcæ,* "skilled in grammar;" *doctus grammatĭcam,* "one who has studied grammar."

353.—*Obs.* 3. Many of these adjectives vary their construction; so that, instead of the genitive, they sometimes take after them,

1st. An infinitive clause; as, *Certus īre,* "determined to go." OVID. *Cantāre perīti.* VIRG. *Anxius quid ŏpus facto sit.* SALL.

2d. An accusative with a preposition; as, *avidior ad rem; animus căpax ad præcepta; ad fraudem callĭdus; pŏtens in res bellicōsas,* &c.

3d. An ablative with a preposition; as, *avĭdus in pecuniis,* "eager in regard to money;" *anxius de fāmā; sŭper scelĕre suspectus;* &c.

4th. An ablative without a preposition; as, *arte rŭdis,* "rude in art;" *regni crimĭne insons; præstans ingenio.* 535.

354.—*Obs.* 4. Some adjectives usually governing the dative, sometimes govern the genitive; such as *similis, dissimĭlis,* &c. See 385.

355.—RULE X. Partitives and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Alĭquis philosophōrum,	Some one of the philosophers.
Senior fratrum,	The elder of the brothers.
Doctissĭmus Romanōrum,	The most learned of the Romans.
Quis nostrūm?	Which of us?
Una musārum,	One of the muses.
Octāvus sapientium,	The eighth of the wise men.

356.—EXPLANATION.—A *partitive* is a word which signifies a part of any number of persons or things, in contradistinction to the whole. A word placed *partitively* is one which, though it does not signify a *part*, yet is sometimes used to *distinguish* a part from the whole; as, *expediti militum*, "the light armed (of the) soldiers." The partitive, when an adjective, takes the gender of the whole, and governs it in the genitive plural; or, if a collective noun, in the genitive singular; and in this case, the partitive takes the gender of the noun understood; as, *doctissimus suæ ætātis.*

357.—*Obs.* 5. Partitives are such words as, *ullus, nullus, sōlus, alius, ŭter, uterque, neuter, alter, aliquis, quīdam, quisquis, quicunque, quis? qui? quot? tot, aliquot, nonnulli, plerīque, multi, pauci, medius*, &c.

Words are used partitively in such expressions as the following: *supĕri deōrum; sancte deōrum; degenĕres cānum; piscium femĭnæ.* To which add *omnis, cunctus, nēmo*; as, *omnes Macedŏnum; nēmo nostrûm.*

358.—*Obs.* 6. The comparative with the genitive denotes one of two; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *major fratrum*, "the elder of two brothers;" *maximus fratrum*, "the eldest of (three or more) brothers." So also, *ŭter, alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis, alius*, and *nullus*, to more than two; as, *ŭter nostrûm?* "which of us (two)?" *quis nostrûm?* "which of us (three or more)?" *Nostrûm* and *vestrûm* are used after partitives; seldom *nostri* and *vestri.*

359.—*Obs.* 7. The partitive is sometimes understood; as, *Fies nobilium tu quŏque fontium* (sc. *ūnus*). Hor.

360.—*Obs.* 8. Instead of the genitive after the partitives, the ablative is often found governed by *de, e, ex*, or *in*; or the accusative with *inter* or *ante*; as, *ūnus e stolĕis; ante omnes pulcherrĭmus; inter rēges opulentissĭmus.*

361.—Rule XI. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plēnus īræ or *īrâ*,	Full of anger.
Inops rationis or *ratione*,	Void of reason.

EXPLANATION.—As in Rule IX, the adjective here is a general term, but limited in its application by the genitive or ablative following it.

362.—*Obs.* 9. Among adjectives denoting *plenty* or *want*, a considerable variety of construction is found.

a. Some govern the genitive only; as, *benignus, exsors, impos, impŏtens, irrītus, liberālis, muniffcus*, &c.

b. Some govern the ablative only; as, *beātus, mutĭlus, tumĭdus, turgĭdus.*

c. Some govern the genitive more frequently; as, *compos, consors, egēnus, exhæres, expers, fertĭlis, indĭgus, parcus, pauper, prodĭgus, sterĭlis, prosper, insatiātus, insatiabĭlis.*

d. Some govern the ablative more frequently; as, *abundans, aliēnus,*

cassus, extorris, firmus, fœtus, frŭgens, grăvis, gravĭdus, jejūnus, infirmus, lĭber, locuples, lætus, mactus, nūdus, onustus, orbus, pollens, satiātus, tenuis, truncus, viduus.

c. Some govern the genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *copiōsus, dives, fecundus, fĕrax, immūnis, inānis, inops, largus, modĭcus, immodĭcus, nimius, opulentus, plēnus, pŏtens, pūrus, refertus, sătur, vacuus, über.*

363.—*Obs.* 10. Many of these adjectives are sometimes limited by a preposition and its case; as, *Locus copiōsus a frumento.* Cic. *Ab omni re parātus.* Id. *Parcus in victu.* Plin. *In affectĭbus potentissĭmus.* Quinct. *Pŏtens in res bellĭcas.* Liv. &c.

---

§ 108. THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

364.—Rule XII. *Sum* governs the genitive of a person or thing to which its subject belongs as a possession, property, or duty; as,

Est rĕgis,	It belongs to the king.
Hominis est errāre,	It is characteristic of man to err.

365.—EXPLANATION.—The genitive in this construction is supposed to be governed by the adjective *proprius*, or the substantive *officium, mūnus, res, negotium, ŏpus*, &c., understood. (When it is expressed, the genitive is governed by it according to Rule VI.) The verb is in the third person,—often has an infinitive or clause for its nominative, and may be rendered in any way by which the sense is expressed; such as, *it belongs to;—it is the property—the part—the duty—the peculiarity—the character of*, &c. The following are examples:

Insipientis est dicĕre non putāram,	It is the part of a fool, &c.
Militum est suo dūci parēre,	It is the duty of soldiers, &c.
Laudāre se vāni est,	It is the mark of a vain man, &c.

So the following—*Arrogantis est negligĕre quid de se quisque sentiat.* Cic. *Pĕcus est Melibœi.* Virg. *Hæc sunt hominis.* Ter. *Puerīs est numerāre pĕcus.* Ovid. *Temerĭtas est florentis ætātis; prudentia senectūtis.* Cic. *Antīqui mōris fuit.* Plin.

366.—*Obs.* 1. Sometimes the genitive, in the predicate of a sentence, is governed by the preceding word repeated after the verb; as, *Hoc pĕcus est (pĕcus) Melibœi; Hic lĭber est (lĭber) fratris.* Sometimes the genitive depends on some general word understood, but easily supplied in the mind; as, *Thucydĭdes, qui ejusdem ætātis fuit*, sc. *hŏmo.* The same construction is sometimes used after *fio*, and some other verbs; as, *Asia*

Romanōrum facta est, sc. *p r o v i n c i a*, "Asia became (*a possession* or *province*) of the Romans."

367.—*Obs.* 2. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the nominative neuter of the possessive is commonly used, agreeing with *officium*, *mūnus*, &c., understood; as, *tuum est*, "it is your duty," instead of *tui*; *meum est*, "it is my part," instead of *mei*. So also, instead of a genitive of a noun, an adjective derived from it may be used; as, *h u m ā n u m est*; *r e g i u m est*; *et facĕre et pāti fortia R o m ā n u m est*.

368.—*Obs.* 3. If the verb be in the infinitive, the possessive pronoun must be in the accusative; as, *scio t u u m esse*, "I know it is your duty;" and if a substantive be expressed, the possessive must agree with it in gender, number, and case; thus, *hæ partes fuĕrunt tuæ* is equivalent to *tuum fuit*, or *tuārum partium fuit*, "it was your part."

369.—Rule XIII. *Miserĕor*, *miseresco*, and *satăgo*, govern the genitive; as,

Miserēre civium tuōrum,	Pity your countrymen.
Satăgit rērum suārum,	He is busy with his own affairs.

370.—EXPLANATION.—The genitive, in this construction, has been supposed to be governed by such a noun as *negotio*, *causa*, *re*, &c., understood; governed by the prepositions *de*, *a*, *in*, or the like; as, *miserĕre de causâ civium*, &c. We consider it better, however, to regard these genitives as governed directly by the verb, and expressing, as in Greek, the cause or origin of the feeling which the verb expresses. See Gr. Gram., § 144, Rule XIV.

371.—*Obs.* 4. Many other verbs denoting some affection of the mind are sometimes followed by a genitive, denoting that with regard to which, or on account of which, the affection exists. These are *ango*, *decipior*, *desipio*, *discrucior*, *fallo*, *fallor*, *fastidio*, *invideo*, *lætor*, *mīror*, *pendeo*, *studeo*, *vereor*, &c. Thus, *Absurde făcis qui angas te animi*. Plaut. *Discrucior animi*. Ter. *Fallēbar sermōnis*. Plaut. *Lætor malōrum*. Virg. These verbs have commonly a different construction. *Note* 2.

Note 1.—The first and second of these examples resemble the peculiar Greek construction, explained Gr. Gram., § 148, Obs. 2.

372.—*Obs.* 5. Several verbs, especially among the poets, are found with the genitive, in imitation of the Greek construction (Gr. Gram., § 144, Rules XVI. and XVII.). These are *abstineo*, *desĭno*, *desisto*, *quiesco*, *regno*; also, *adipiscor*, *condīco*, *crēdo*; *frustror*, *fūro*, *laudo*, *libĕro*, *lĕvo*, *particĭpo*, *prohibeo*; thus, *Abstinēto irārum*. Hor. *Desĭne querelārum*. Id. *Regnāvit populōrum*. Id. *Lĕvas me labōrum*. Plaut.

Note 2.—All these verbs, however, in Obs. 4 and 5, have, for the most part, a different construction, being followed sometimes, as active transitive verbs, by the accusative, and more frequently, by the accusative or ablative with a preposition.

373.—RULE XIV. *Recordor*, *memĭni*, *reminiscor*, and *oblīviscor*, govern the genitive or accusative; as,

Recordor lectiōnis, or *lectiōnem*, I remember the lesson.
Oblīviscor injuriæ, or *injuriam*, I forget an injury.

374.—EXPLANATION.—When these verbs are followed by an accusative, they are considered transitive, and fall under Rule XX. But when a genitive follows them, they are regarded as intransitive; and the genitive denotes that in regard to which the memory, &c., is exercised.

375.—*Obs.* 6. These verbs are often construed with an infinitive or some part of a sentence, instead of the genitive or accusative; as, *Memĭni vidēre virgĭnem.* TER.

376.—*Obs.* 7. *Recordor* and *memĭni*, signifying "to remember," are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*. *Memĭni*, signifying "to make mention of," has a genitive or an ablative with *de*. *Ei vĕnit in mentem*, being equivalent to *recordātur*, has a genitive after it; as, *Ei vĕnit in mentem potestātis tuæ.*

N. B. For the genitive with verbs of *accusing*, see § 122;—with verbs of *valuing*, § 122, R. XXVIII.;—with Passive verbs, § 126;—with Impersonal verbs, § 113;—with Adverbs, § 135; denoting place, § 130, 548 and 558.

377.—§ 109. CONSTRUCTION OF THE DATIVE.

1. The *Dative* is used to express the *remote object to which* any quality or action, or any state or condition of things tends, or to which they refer. This tendency is usually expressed in English by the words TO or FOR. Hence,

2. The dative, in Latin, is governed by *nouns, adjectives, and verbs;* or denotes the object to which they refer.

3. A use of the dative of the personal pronouns, common in Greek, and usually called the *dative redundant*, has also been imitated in Latin. See Gr. Gram., 517, *Rem.* The following are examples: *Quo tantum* MIHI *dexter ăbis?* VIRG. *Fur* MIHI *es.* PLAUT. *Tongilium* MIHI *eduxit.* CIC. *Ubi nunc* NŌBIS *deus ille magister?* VIRG. *Ecce* TĪBI *Sebōsus.* CIC. *Suo* SĬBI *gladio hunc jugŭlo.*—But, though the dative thus used is said to be redundant, still it adds something to the meaning or emphasis of the expression, or shows that the person expressed in the dative has some relation to, or participation in, the fact expressed; thus, *Fur mihi es*, "(*In my opinion,*) you are a thief."

§ 110.—DATIVE GOVERNED BY SUBSTANTIVES.

378.—RULE XV. Substantives frequently govern the dative of their object; as,

Hostis virtutĭbus,	An enemy to virtue.
Exitium pecŏri,	Destruction to the flock.
Obtemperantia legĭbus,	Obedience to the laws.

379.—EXPLANATION.—Under this rule, the governing substantive generally denotes an affection, or some advantage, or disadvantage, or act, which is limited, as to its object, by the dative following it, as in the preceding examples.

380—*Obs.* 1. *Rule.* The dative of the possessor is governed by substantives denoting the thing possessed; as,

Ei vēnit in mentem,	It came into *his mind.*
Cui corpus porrigĭtur,	*Whose body* is extended.

381.—*Obs.* 2. The dative in this construction is said to be used for, or instead of, the genitive, as in Rule VI. There are but few instances, however, in which the genitive under that rule could, with propriety, be changed for the dative. On the other hand, when the dative is used, the genitive would fail to express so precisely the idea intended. In this construction, the noun governing the dative is connected with a verb in such a way as clearly to show, that the dative is rather the object of that which is expressed by the verb and noun together, than under the government of the noun alone. Thus, in the first example, *ei* denotes the person to whom that which is expressed by *vēnit in mentem*, occurred. So, *corpus porrigĭtur* states what was done to the person represented by *cui.* The principle of this construction will be more manifest from what is stated 502.

---

§ 111. THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

382.—RULE XVI. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, govern the dative; as,

Ūtĭlis bello,	Useful for war.
Simĭlis patri,	Like his father.

383.—EXPLANATION.—The dative under this rule, like the genitive under Rule IX, is used to limit the meaning of the adjective to a particular *object* or *end*, to which the quality expressed by it is directed. Thus, in the first example, *ūtĭlis* means "useful" in a general sense; *bello* limits the use

fulness intended to a particular object, "war." The dative, thus used is rendered by its ordinary signs *to* or *for*, but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition, as in the last example.

OBSERVATIONS.

384.—*Obs.* 1. To this rule belong adjectives signifying:

1st. Profit, or disprofit; as, *benignus, bŏnus, commŏdus, fēlix;—damnōsus, dīrus, exitiōsus, funestus*, &c.

2d. Pleasure, or pain; as, *acceptus, dulcis, grātus, jucundus, lætus, suāvis;—acerbus, amārus, ingrātus, molestus*, &c.

3d. Friendship, or hatred; as, *æquus, amīcus, blandus, cārus, dedĭtus, fīdus;—adversus, asper, crudēlis, infestus*, &c.

4th. Perspicuity, or obscurity; as, *apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, nōtus;—ambiguus, dubius, ignōtus, obscūrus*, &c.

5th. Propinquity; as, *finitĭmus, propior, proxĭmus, propinquus, socius, vicīnus, affīnis*, &c.

6th. Fitness, or unfitness; as, *aptus, appositus, habĭlis, idoneus, opportūnus;—ineptus, inhabĭlis, importūnus*, &c.

7th. Ease, or difficulty; as, *facĭlis, lĕvis, obvius, pervius;—difficĭlis, arduus, grāvis*. Also those denoting propensity or readiness; as, *prōnus, proclīvis, propensus*, &c.

8th. Equality, or inequality; likeness, or unlikeness; as, *æquālis, æquævus, par, compar;—inæquālis, impar, dispar, discors;—simĭlis, æmŭlus;—dissimĭlis, aliēnus*, &c.

9th. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *cognātus, congruus, consŏnus, conveniens, contĭnens*, &c.

10th. Verbal adjectives in BILIS; as, *amabĭlis, terribĭlis, optabĭlis*, and the like.

385.—*Obs.* 2.—*Exc.* The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; viz: *affīnis, simĭlis, communis, par, proprius, finitĭmus, fīdus, contermĭnus, superstes, conscius, æquālis, contrarius*, and *adversus;* as, *simĭlis tĭbi*, or *tui*.

386.—*Obs.* 3. Adjectives signifying *motion* or *tendency* to a thing, take after them the accusative with *ad*, rather than the dative; as, *proclīvus, prōnus, propensus, vēlox, cĕler, tardus, pĭger*, &c.; thus, *Piger ad pœnas.* Ovid.

387.—*Obs.* 4. Adjectives signifying *usefulness* or *fitness*, and the contrary, often take the accusative with *ad;* as, *ūtilis ad nullam rem*, "good for nothing."

388.—*Obs.* 5. *Propior* and *proxĭmus* take after them the dative, or the accusative governed by *ad* understood; as, *propius vero; proxĭmus* (*ad*) *Pompeium.*

Conscius and some other adjectives, govern the dative according to this rule, and, at the same time, a genitive by Rule IX.; as, *Mens sĭbi conscia recti*, "a mind conscious to itself of rectitude." Virg.

389.—*Obs.* 6. Some adjectives that govern the dative, sometimes,

instead of the dative, have an ablative with a preposition expressed or understood; as, *discors sēcum; aliēnum nostrâ amicitiâ.*

390.—*Obs.* 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Jupĭter ĭdem omnĭbus; Invĭtum qui servat, ĭdem făcit occidenti.* In prose, *ĭdem* is followed commonly by *qui, ac, atque, ut,* or *quam,* 728.

---

§ 112. THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

391.—RULE XVII. All verbs govern the dative of the object or end, to which the action, or state expressed by them, is directed; as,

Fĭnis vēnit imperio,	An end has come to the empire.
Anĭmus rĕdit hostĭbus,	Courage returns to the enemy.
Tĭbi sĕris, tĭbi mĕtis,	You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself.

392.—EXPLANATION.—This rule may be considered as general, applying to all cases in which a verb is followed by a dative. When the verb is transitive active, it governs its remote object in the dative, not as that *upon* which the action is exerted, but as that *to* which it is directed, while, at the same time, it governs also its immediate object in the accusative (501). If intransitive, it will be followed by a dative only.

This rule, being applicable to all cases in which a dative follows a verb, is too general to be useful, as it could be applied correctly without much discrimination. It will therefore be of more advantage, when it can be done, to apply the special rules comprehended under it as follows:

SPECIAL RULES.

393.—I. *Sum,* and its compounds, govern the dative (except *possum*); as,

Præfuit exercĭtui,	He commanded the *army.*
Debēmus omnĭbus prodesse,	We ought to do good *to all.*

394.—II. The verb *Est,* signifying *to be,* or *to belong to,* governs the dative of the possessor; as,

Est mihi lĭber,	A book is to me, i. e. I have a book.
Sunt mihi libri,	Books are to me, i. e. I have books.
Scio libros esse mihi,	I know that books are to me, i. e.—that I have, &c.

395.—EXPLANATION.—In this construction, the dative expresses the person or thing, *to* or *for* which the subject spoken of, is, or exists. The verb will always be in the third person singular, or plural, in any tense, or

in the infinitive.—This very common Latin construction will be rendered correctly into English, by the verb "have," instead of "is," &c., of which the word in the dative, in Latin, becomes the subject or nominative in English, and the Latin nominative, the object, as is shown in the above examples.—For the verb *est* with the gerund, see 699.

396.—*Obs.* 1. The dative is used in a similar manner after *fŏrem, suppĕto; dēsum, deficio,* &c.; as, *Pauper non est cui rērum suppĕtit ūsus,* "He is not poor *to whom* the use of property *is supplied*," i. e. who has the use of property. Hor. So, *si mihi cauda fŏret.—Abest* and *deest mihi.* as opposed to *est mihi,* mean, "I have not."—So, *defuit ars vōbis,—lac mihi non dĕfit,—nĭsi vīnum nōbis defecisset,*—&c.

Note.—An adjective, or participle, denoting willingness or unwillingness, agreeing with the dative after *est,* is sometimes put for a verb of like signification, having the word in the dative for its subject; thus, *Mihi vŏlenti est=vŏlo; tĭbi invīto fuit=noluisti,* &c.; as, *Alĭquid mihi vŏlenti est,* "*I like* (or *wish*) a thing;" *Alĭquid mihi invīto est,* "*I dislike* a thing." So, *Quĭbus bellum volentibus ĕrat,* "*Who wished* for war," Tac., Agr., 18;—*Neque plebi militia volenti esse putabātur,* "It was thought the *Common people did not wish* for war," *or,* "That war would not be agreeable to the common people."—This is a Greek construction, for which see Greek Grammar, § 148, Obs. 3.

397.—III. Verbs compounded of *sătis, bĕne,* and *măle,* govern the dative; as,

Legĭbus satisfēcit,	He satisfied the laws.
Benefacĕre reipublĭcæ,	To benefit the state.

398.—*Obs.* 2. These compounds are often written separately, and the dative is governed by the combined force of the two words.

399.—IV. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions *ad, ante, con,—in, inter, ob,—post, præ, sub,* and *super,* govern the dative; as,

Annue cœptis,	Favor our undertakings.

400.—Verbs governing the dative under this rule are such as the following; viz.

1. *Accĕdo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnāto, adequĭto, adhæreo, adsto, adstipŭlor, advolvor, affulgeo, allābor, allabōro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspīro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteeo, antesto, anteverto.*

3. *Collūdo, concĭno, consŏno, convīvo.*

4. *Incumbo, indormio, indubĭto, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, insideo, insideor, insto, insisto, insūdo, insulto, invigĭlo, illacrўmo, illūdo, immineo, immorior, immŏro, impendeo.*

5. *Intervenio, intermĭco, intercēdo, intercĭdo, interjaceo.*

6. *Obrēpo, oblucto, obtrecto, obstrēpo, obmurmŭro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obsisto, obvenio.*

7. *Postfĕro, posthabeo, postpōno, postpŭto, postscrĭbo,* with an accusative.

8. *Præcēdo, præcurro, præeo, præsideo, prælucco, prænĭteo, præsto, prævaleo, prævĕrto.*

9. *Succēdo, succumbo, sufficio, suffrāgor, subcresco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrēpo.*

10. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with SUPER govern the accusative.

401.—*Obs.* 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab, de, ex, circum,* and *contra;* also compounds of *di* and *dis,* meaning generally "to differ," are sometimes followed by the dative. These, however, chiefly fall under Rule XXXI., § 125.

402.—*Obs.* 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, instead of the dative, take the case of the preposition, which is sometimes repeated. Some intransitive verbs so compounded, either take the dative, or, acquiring a transitive signification by the force of the preposition, govern the accusative by Rule XX.; as, *Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtūte præcĕdunt,* "The Helvetii *surpass* the other *Gauls* in bravery."

403.—V. Verbs govern the dative which signify to profit or hurt;—to favor or assist, and the contrary;—to command and obey, to serve and resist;—to threaten and to be angry; to trust.

404.—EXPLANATION.—Verbs governing the dative, under this and the preceding rule, are always intransitives or transitives used intransitively, and consequently it is applicable to the active voice only. The dative after passive verbs, does not come under these rules, but belongs to § 126, Rule XXXIII.

405.—*Obs.* 5. The verbs under this rule are such as the following:

1st. To profit or hurt; as,

Proficio, prōsum, placeo, commŏdo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consŭlo, for *prospicio.* Likewise, *noceo, officio, incommŏdo, displiceo,* &c.

2d. To favor or assist, and the contrary; as,

Faveo, gratŭlor, gratificor, grātor, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adŭlor, plaudo, blandior, lenocĭnor, palpor, assentor, subparasĭtor Likewise, *auxilior, adminicŭlor, subvenio, succurro, patrocĭnor, medeor, medĭcor, opitŭlor.* Likewise, *derōgo, detraho, invideo, æmŭlor.*

3d. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

Impĕro, præcipio, mando; modĕror, for *mŏdum adhĭbeo.* Likewise, *pareo, auscŭlto, obedio, obsĕquor, obtempĕro, mōrem gĕro, morigĕror, obsecundo.*

Likewise, *famŭlor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *repugno, obsto, reluctor, renītor, resisto, refrāgor, adversor.*

4th. To threaten and to be angry; as,

Mĭnor, commĭnor, irascor, succenseo.

5th. To trust; as, *Fīdo, confīdo, crēdo, diffīdo.*

To these, add, *nūbo, excello, hæreo, supplĭco, cēdo, despēro, opĕror, præstōlor, prævarĭcor; recipio,* "to promise;" *renuncio; respondeo,* "to answer," or "satisfy;" *tempĕro, studeo; văco,* "to be at leisure for;" *convicior.*

Exc.—Jubeo, jŭvo, lædo, and *offendo,* govern the accusative.

406.—*Obs.* 6. Many of these verbs, however, are variously construed, the same verb sometimes governing the dative according to this rule; and sometimes, taken in a transitive sense, governing the accusative by Rule XX. Sometimes they are followed by an accusative with a preposition, and sometimes by an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *impendēre alĭcui,* or *alĭquem,* or *in alĭquem,* "to hang over;" *congruĕre alĭcui, cum alĭqua re, inter se,* "to agree."

407.—*Obs.* 7. Many verbs, when they vary their construction, vary their meaning also; as, *Timeo tĭbi,—de te,—pro te,* signifies, "I fear for you," i. e. "for your safety;" but *timeo te,* means, "I fear you." "I dread you." *Consŭlo tibi,* is "I consult for you," i. e. "for your safety." *Consŭlo te,* means "I consult you, I ask your advice;" and so of others.

408.—*Obs.* 8. Verbs signifying *motion* or *tendency* to a thing, instead of the dative, have usually the preposition *ad* or *in* with the accusative; as, *clāmor it ad cœlum;* seldom, and chiefly with the poets, *cœlo.*

---

§ 113. DATIVE GOVERNED BY IMPERSONALS.

409.—RULE XVIII. An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

Expĕdit reipŭblĭcæ, It is profitable for the state.

410.—EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to the dative governed by the passive of all those verbs which, in the active voice, govern the dative only, according to Nos. 397, 399 and 403,—the passive of all intransitives being used only personally (223–3); thus, *favĕtur mihi,* "I am favored," not *ĕgo faveor.* When the passives of such verbs are used *personally,* then the verb is to be considered as used in a transitive sense. 406.

OBSERVATIONS.

411.—*Obs.* 1. These verbs, *potest, cœpit, incĭpit, desĭnit, dĕbet,* and *sŏlet,* before the infinitive of impersonals, become impersonal also; as, *non pŏtest crēdi tibi,* "you cannot be believed."

412.—*Obs.* 2. Some verbs are used both personally and impersonally as, *doleo*, "I grieve;" *dŏlet mihi*, "it grieves me," i. e. "I grieve." So also verbs commonly used impersonally sometimes have a subject in the nominative, and are, of course, used personally. This is the case especially with such nominatives as these—*id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil*, &c.; as, *Nonne hæc te pŭdent?* "Are you not *ashamed of these things?*"

413.—*Obs.* 3. An infinitive mood or part of a sentence is commonly joined to an impersonal verb, which, in fact, may be regarded as its subject; as, *delectat me studēre*, "it delights me to study," i. e. "to study delights me." 307 and 662.

414.—*Obs.* 4. The dative after impersonals is sometimes understood; as, *faciat quod lĭbet* (sc. *sĭbi*).

415.—Exc. I. *Rĕfert* and *Intĕrest* govern the genitive; as,

Rĕfert patris,	It concerns my father.
Intĕrest omnium,	It is the interest of all.

416.—But, instead of the genitives *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, &c., the possessives *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, are used; as,

Non mea rĕfert,	It does not concern me.

417.—*Obs.* 5. The case and construction of these possessives are in much doubt. Some regard them as the accusative plural neuter agreeing with *negotia* or *commŏda* governed by *ad;* as, *non* (*ad negotia*) *mea rĕfert.* But as the final *ā*, in this construction, is found in Terence to be long, others consider it in the ablative singular, feminine, agreeing with *re* or *causa* governed by *in;* as, *in mea re non rĕfert;* while others suppose that *mea, tua*, &c., are abbreviations from *meam, tuam*, &c., agreeing with *rem*, and hence the final *ā* long. *Non nostrum tantas componĕre lītes.* It is more manifest that *rĕfert*, in which *ĕ* is long, is not from *rĕfĕro*, but from *res* and *fĕro*, and means, impersonally, "it profits," "it befits," "it concerns," &c. Sometimes it is used personally with *hoc, id*, or an infinitive, for its subject. It is equally obvious that if *mea* or *tua*, or *sua*, &c., agrees with some word understood, then the genitive under the rule may be governed by the same word, according to Rule VI.; i. e. if *mea rĕfert* is for *mea negotia*, &c., *rĕfert*, then *rĕfert patris* may be for *rĕfert negotia patris*, whether *negotia* in the accusative, or *re* in the ablative, be governed directly by the verb, or by a preposition understood.

418.—*Obs.* 6. Instead of the genitive, these verbs sometimes take the accusative with a preposition; as, *rĕfert ad me*, for *rĕfert mea*, i. e. *mei.* Sometimes they are used absolutely, without a case expressed.

419.—Exc. II. These five *Misĕret, pœnĭtet, pŭdet, tædet*, and *pĭget*, govern the accusative of

the immediate, with the genitive of the remote object; as,

Misĕret me tui,	I pity you.
Pœnĭtet me peccāti,	I repent of my sin.
Tædet me vitæ,	I am weary of life.
Pŭdet me culpæ,	I am ashamed of my fault.

420.—EXPLANATION.—These examples may be rendered literally thus: "It grieves me on account of you," i. e. *ergo*, or *causa tui*;—"It repents me of my sin;"—"It wearies me of life;"—"It shames me of my fault." For the method of rendering impersonal verbs in a personal form, as in the above examples, see 228–6.

421.—*Obs.* 7. The infinitive mood or part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *pœnĭtet me peccāsse*, or *quod peccavĕrim. Non pœnĭtet me quantum profecĕrim. Misĕret* is found with an accusative instead of the genitive; as, *Menedēmi vicem misĕret me.* The accusative of the immediate object is sometimes omitted; as, *Scelĕrum si bĕne pœnĭtet* (scil. *nos*). Hor.

422.—*Obs.* 8. The preterites of these verbs, in the passive form, govern the same cases as the active; as, *Miserĭtum est me tuārum fortunārum.* Ter. *Miserescit* and *miserētur* are sometimes used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui.* Ter. *Misereātur te fratrum; Neque me tui, neque tuōrum liberōrum miserēri potest.* Cic.

423.—Exc. III. *Dĕcet, delectat, jŭvat,* and *oportĕt*, govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,

Delectat me studēre,	It delights me to study.
Non dĕcet te rixāri,	It does not become you to scold.

424.—*Obs.* 9. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva dĕcent.* Hor. *Dĕcet* sometimes governs the dative; as, *Ita nōbis dĕcet.* Ter.

425.—*Obs.* 10. *Oportet*, instead of the infinitive, elegantly takes the subjunctive with *ut*, "that," understood; as, *Sĭbi* (*ut*) *quisque consŭlat oportet.* Cic. When followed by the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* is understood, which, being supplied, makes the perfect infinitive.

426.—*Obs.* 11. *Fallit, fŭgit, prætĕrit, lătet,* when used impersonally, are construed with the accusative and infinitive; as, *fŭgit me ad te scrĭbĕre.* Cic.

---

§ 114. VERBS GOVERNING TWO DATIVES.

427.—Rule XIX. The verbs *sum, do, habeo,* and some others, with the dative of the *object*,

govern also the dative of the *end*, or *design*; as,

1. *Est mihi voluptāti,* { It is to me for a pleasure, i. e. It is, *or* brings, a pleasure to me.
2. *Hoc mīsit mihi munĕri,* This he sent as a present to me.
3. *Ducĭtur honōri tĭbi,* { It is reckoned to you for an honor, i. e. It is reckoned an honor to you.

428.—EXPLANATION.—In these examples, it is manifest that the words *voluptāti*, *honōri*, and *munĕri*, each express the *end* or *design* for which the thing spoken of, or referred to, *is*, *is reckoned*, *is sent*, to the *object* expressed by the other datives, *mihi* and *tibi*. See also 431.

The verb *sum*, with the dative of the *end*, may be variously rendered, according to the sense, by such words as, *brings*, *affords*, *serves*, &c. *For*, the sign of the dative, is often omitted, especially after *sum*.

OBSERVATIONS.

429.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs governing two datives under this rule, are chiefly, *sum, fŏre, fio, habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, dūco;* and a few others.

430.—*Obs.* 2. Instead of the dative of the *end*, the nominative after *est*, &c., or the accusative in apposition with the object of the preceding verb, expresses the same thing; as, *Amor est exĭtium pecŏri*, for *exitio; Se Achilli comĭtem esse dātum dicit*, for *comĭti*. In the first example, *exitium* is the nominative after est, by Rule V. In the second, *comĭtem* is in apposition with *se*, by Rule I.

431.—*Obs.* 3. Intransitive verbs, such as *sum, fŏre, fio, eo, curro, proficiscor, venio, cēdo, suppedĭto*, are followed by two datives, as in the first example; transitive verbs in the active voice, besides the two datives, have an accusative expressed or understood by Rule XX., as in the second example; and in the passive voice, two datives, as in the third example, the one by Rule XXIX., and the other by this rule.

432.—*Obs.* 4. The dative of the *object* (commonly a person) is often to be supplied; as, *est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui*, &c., scil. *mihi, alĭcui, hominĭbus*, or some such word. So, *ponĕre, opponĕre, pignŏri*, scil. *alĭcui*, "to pledge;" *canĕre receptui*, scil. *suis militĭbus*, "to sound a retreat;" *habĕre cūræ, questui, odio, voluptāti, studio*, &c., scil. *sĭbi*.

433.—*Obs.* 5. To this rule is sometimes referred the forms of naming, so common in Latin; such as, *Est mihi nōmen Alexandro; Cui cognōmen Iūlo addĭtur*. The construction 261 is much better.

434.—*Obs.* 6. From constructions under this rule, should be distinguished those in which the second dative may be governed by another noun in the dative, according to 378.

N. B. For the dative with the accusative, see § 123.
For the dative after the passive voice, see § 126.
For the dative after particles, see 598 and 600.—After *Hei* and *Væ*, 453.

435.—§ 115. CONSTRUCTION OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

1. The accusative, in Latin, is used to express the immediate object of a transitive active verb,—or, in other words, that on which its action is exerted, and which is affected by it.

2. It is used to express the object to which something tends or relates, in which sense it is governed by a preposition, expressed or understood. When used to express the remote object of a transitive verb, or certain relations of measure, distance, time, and place, the preposition is usually omitted.

---

§ 116. ACCUSATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

436.—RULE XX. A transitive verb in the active voice, governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God.

SPECIAL RULES.

437.—I. A transitive deponent verb governs the accusative; as,

Reverēre parentes, Reverence your parents.

438.—II. An intransitive verb may govern a noun of kindred signification, in the accusative; as,

Pugnāre pugnam, To fight a battle.

439.—EXPLANATION.—These rules apply to all verbs which have an accusative as their immediate object; and that accusative may be any thing used substantively, whether it be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, an *infinitive mood*, or *clause of a sentence*. Intransitives under Rule II. are often followed by the ablative, with a preposition expressed or understood; as, *Ire* (in) *itinĕre*, *gaudēre* (cum) *gaudio*, &c.

440.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs signifying to *name, choose, reckon, constitute,* and the like, besides the accusative of the object, take also the accusative of the *name, office, character,* &c., ascribed to it; as, *urbem Rōmam vocāvit,* "he called the city *Rome*." All such verbs, in the passive, have the same case after as before them. (320).

441.—*Obs.* 2. Verbs commonly intransitive, are sometimes used in a

transitive sense, and are therefore followed by an accusative under this rule; thus,

TRANSITIVE.	INTRANSITIVE.
Abhorrēre fāmam, to dread infamy.	*Abhorrēre a lĭtĭbus*, to be averse, &c.
Abolēre monumenta, to abolish, &c.	*Memoria abolēvit*, memory failed.
Declināre ictum, to avoid a blow.	*Declināre lŏco*, to remove from, &c.
Laborāre arma, to forge arms.	*Laborāre morbo*, to be ill.
Morāri ĭter, to stop.	*Morāri in urbe*, to stay in the city.

To these may be added *horrēre, furēre, vivēre, ludēre;* and verbs signifying *to taste of, to smell of*, &c.; as, *horrēre allĭquid; furēre ŏpus cœdis; Bacchanalia vivunt; ludēre pĭla; redolēre vinum; pastillos Rufillus ŏlet, Gorgonius hircum; mella herbam sapiunt; unguenta terram sapiunt.*

442.—*Obs.* 3. The accusative, after many intransitive verbs, depends on a preposition understood; as, *Morientem nomĭne clāmat; Meas quĕror fortūnas; Num id lacrymat virgo; Quicquid delīrant rēges, plectuntur Achīvi; Stygias juravĭmus undas; Maria ambulavisset, terram navigāsset*, VIRG.; *Pascuntur vero sylvas*, Id.; *Ire exsequias; Ibo amīcam meam*, PLAUT.; &c. In these, and similar sentences, the prepositions *ob, propter, circa, per, ad, in*, &c., may be supplied.

This construction of intransitive verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id, quid, allĭquid, quicquid, nihil, ĭdem, illud, tantum, quantum, hoc, multa, alia, pauca*, &c.

443.—*Obs.* 4. The accusative, after many verbs, depends on a preposition with which they are compounded. This is the case,

1st. With intransitive verbs; as, *Gentes quæ mare illud adjăcent*, "the nations which *border upon that sea.*" So, *ineunt prœlium, adire provinciam, transcurrēre mare, allŏquor te*, &c. Thus compounded, many verbs seem to become transitive in sense, and so govern the accusative by this rule. In general, however, they fall under Rule LII.

2d. With transitive verbs, in which case two accusatives follow—one governed by the verb, and another by the preposition; as, *Omnem equitātum pontem transdūcit*, "*He leads* all the cavalry *over the bridge;*"—*Hellespontum copias trajĭcit.* Here also the second accusative falls under Rule LII.

Note 1.—After most verbs, however, compounded with prepositions governing the accusative, the preposition is repeated before it; as, *Cæsar se ad nemĭnem adjunxit.*

444.—*Obs.* 5. *a.* The accusative after a transitive verb, especially if a reflexive pronoun, or something indefinite or easily supplied, is sometimes understood; as, *tum prōra avertit*, scil. *se; flumĭna præcipĭtant*, scil. *se; faciam vitŭlā*, scil. *sacra; bĕne fēcit Silius*, scil. *hoc.*

b. Sometimes the verb which governs the accusative is omitted, especially in rapid or animated discourse; thus, the interrogative *quid* often stands alone for *quid ais? quid censes?* or the like. So also, *quid vēro? quid igĭtur? quid ergo? quid ĕnim? Quid quod*, commonly rendered

"nay," "nay even," "but now," "moreover," may be resolved thus, *Quid dīcam de eo quòd.* With *quid multa? quid plūra? ne multa, ne plūra,* scil. *verba,* supply *dīcam;* as, *Quid dīcam multa* (*verba*)? But, *quid postea? quid tum?* and the like, may be regarded as the nominative to *sequĭtur* understood; and the phrase *quid ĭta?* may be resolved by supplying the preceding verb or some part of *facio.*

445.—*Obs.* 6. RULE. The infinitive mood, or part of a sentence (439), is often used as the object of a transitive verb. instead of the accusative (665 and 670, Note); as,

Da mihi fallĕre,	Give me *to deceive.*
Cupio me esse clementem,	I desire *to be gentle.*
Statuērunt ut nāves conscendĕrent.	They determined *that they would embark.*

Note 2.—In such constructions, the subject of the clause is sometimes, by a Greek idiom, put in the accusative as the object of the verb; as, *Nōsti Marcellum, quam tardus sit;* instead of *Nosti quam tardus Marcellus sit.* So, *illum ut vīvat optant,* instead of *ut ille vīvat optant;* or *illum vivĕre optant.* Gr. Gram., § 150, Obs. 4.

446.—*Obs.* 7. A few cases occur in which the accusative is put after a noun derived from a verb, or the verbal adjectives in *bundus;* as, *Quid ĭbi huc receptio ad te est meum vĭrum?* "Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you?" PLAUT. *Quid ĭbi hanc additio est.* Id. *Vitabundus castra.* LIV.

447.—*Obs.* 8. Many verbs considered transitive in Latin, are intransitive in English, and must have a preposition supplied in translating; as, *Ut cavĕret me,* "That he *should beware of me.*" On the other hand, many intransitive verbs in Latin, i. e. verbs which do not take an accusative after them, are rendered into English by transitive verbs; as, *Fortūna făvet fortĭbus,* "Fortune *favors the brave.*"

N. B. For the Accusative governed by *Recordor,* &c., see 373;—with another accusative, 508;—governed by prepositions, 602, 607, 608, 613;—denoting *time,* 565, R. XLI.;—*place,* 553;—*measure* or *distance,* 573; in *exclamations,* 451.

§ 117. CONSTRUCTION OF THE VOCATIVE.

448.—The vocative is used to designate the person or thing addressed, but forms no part of the proposition with which it stands; and it is used either with, or without, an interjection.

449.—RULE XXI. The interjections *O, heu,* and *proh,* are construed with the vocative; as,

O formōse puer!	O fair boy!

450.—To these, may be added other interjections of calling or addressing; as, *ah, au, ehem, eheu, eho, eja, hem, heus, hui, io, ohe,* and *vah,* which are often followed by the vocative: as, *Heus Syre, Ohe libelle.*

451.—*Obs.* 1. In exclamations, the person or thing wondered at, is put in the accusative, either with or without an interjection; as, *Me misĕrum,* or, *Heu me misĕrum,* "Ah, wretch that I am!"—sometimes in the nominative; as, *O vir fortis atque amīcus,* TER.; *Audi tu, popŭlus Romānus,* LIV.

452.—*Obs.* 2. The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O misĕræ gentis,* sc. *homĭnes,* LUCAN.

453.—*Obs.* 3. The interjections *Hei* and *Væ,* govern the dative; as, *Hei mihi,* "Ah me!" *Væ vōbis,* "Woe to you!"

454.—*Obs.* 4. *Ecce* and *en,* usually take the nominative; as, *Ecce nŏva turba atque rixa. En ĕgo.*

---

§ 118. CONSTRUCTION OF THE ABLATIVE.

455.—The ablative is used in Latin generally, to express that from which something is separated or taken; or, as that *by* or *with* which, something is done, or exists. It is governed by *nouns, adjectives, verbs,* and *prepositions,* and also is used to express various relations of *measure, distance, time,* and *place,* &c.

THE ABLATIVE AFTER NOUNS.

456.—RULE XXII. *Opus* and *ūsus,* signifying *need,* require the ablative; as,

Est ŏpus pecunĭā,	There is need *of money.*
Nunc ūsus virĭbus,	Now, there is need *of strength.*

457.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative, after these nouns, is probably governed by a preposition, such as *pro,* understood. In this sense, they are used only with the verb *sum,* of which *ŏpus* is sometimes the subject, and sometimes the predicate; *ūsus,* the subject only.

OBSERVATIONS.

458.—*Obs.* 1. *Opus,* in the predicate, is commonly used as an indeclinable adjective, in which case it rarely has the ablative; as, *Dux nōbis ŏpus est,* "We need a general," CIC. So, *Dīces nummos mihi ŏpus esse* CIC.; *Nōbis exempla ŏpus sunt,* CIC. In these examples, *ŏpus,* as an indeclinable adjective, agrees with *dux, nummos, exempla,* by Rule II. This construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns, and is always used with those denoting quantity; as, *Quod non ŏpus est, asse cārum est.* Cato apud Sen.

459.—*Obs.* 2. *Opus* and *ūsus* are often joined with the perfect participle; as, *ŏpus maturātō,* "need of haste;" *ŏpus consulto,* "need of deliberation;" *ūsus facto,* "need of action." The participle has sometimes a

substantive joined with it after *ŏpus;* as, *Mihi ŏpus fuit Hirtio convento,* "It behoved me *to meet with Hirtius,*" CIC. Sometimes the supine is joined with it; as, *Ita dictu ŏpus est,* TER.

460.—*Obs.* 3. *Opus* is often followed by the infinitive, or by the subjunctive with *ut;* as, *Siquid forte, quod ŏpus sit scīri,* CIC. *Nunc tibi ŏpus est, ægram ut te adsimŭles,* PLAUT. Sometimes it is absolutely without a case, or with a case understood; as, *Sic ŏpus est; Si ŏpus est.*

461.—EXC. *Opus* and *usus* are sometimes followed by the genitive, by Rule VI.; as, *Argenti ŏpus fuit,* "There was need of money;" sometimes by an accusative, in which case an infinitive is probably understood; as, *Puĕro ŏpus est cĭbum;* scil. *habēre,* PLAUT.

§ 119. ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

[For the ablative governed by adjectives of plenty or want, see 361.]

462.—RULE XXIII. These adjectives *dignus, indignus, contentus, prædĭtus, captus,* and *frĕtus;* also the participles *nātus, sătus, ortus, edĭtus,* and the like, denoting origin, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honōre,	Worthy of honor.
Contentus parvo,	Content with little.
Prædĭtus virtūte,	Endued with virtue.
Captus ocŭlis,	Blind (injured in his eyes).
Frĕtus virĭbus,	Trusting in his strength.
Ortus regĭbus,	Descended from kings.

463.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative, after these adjectives and participles, is governed by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, e, ex, in,* &c. Sometimes it is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubinâ,* SALLUST.

464.—*Obs.* 1. Instead of the ablative, these adjectives often take an infinitive, or a subjunctive clause with *qui,* or *ut;* as, *Dignus amāri,* VIRG.; *Dignus qui impĕret,* CIC.; *Non sum dignus, ut fīgam pălum in parietem,* PLAUT.

465.—EXC. *Dignus, indignus,* and *contentus,* are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Dignus avōrum,* VIRG. For the ablative governed by adjectives of plenty or want, see 361.

§ 120.—THE ABLATIVE WITH THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

466.—REM. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, such as, *quam, ac, atque,* &c., signifying "than," is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted. In the first, the

construction of the case falls under other rules; in the second, it falls under the following; viz.

467.—RULE XXIV. The comparative degree, without a conjunction, governs the ablative; as,

Dulcior melle,	Sweeter than honey.
Præstantior auro,	More precious than gold.
Perennius ære,	More durable than brass.

468.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative, under this rule, is supposed to be governed more properly by *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Unus præ cæteris fortior.*

OBSERVATIONS.

469.—*Obs.* 1. Of these two modes of comparison, the ablative without a conjunction is commonly used, when the object is compared with the *subject* of a proposition, or with a word in the vocative or nominative, addressed; as, *Quid măgis est dūrum saxo, quid mollius undâ? Nemĭnem Romanōrum eloquentiorem fuisse vetères judicārunt Ciceronē; O fons Bandusiæ, splendidior vitro,* HOR. But when, in such a comparison, *quam* is used, the second substantive will be in the same case with the first, because, in the same construction; as, *Melior est certa pax, quam sperāta victoria (est); Meliōrem esse certam pācem putābat, quam sperātam pācem (esse).*

Note 1.—The construction of the ablative without *quam*, is sometimes used, especially by the poets, when the first substantive is not the subject of a verb; as, *Exĕgi monumentum ære perennius,* HOR.; *Cur olīvum sanguĭne viperīno cautius vĭtat?* HOR. This is always so, when the second object of comparison is expressed by a relative; as, *Hic Attălo, quo graviōrem inimĭcum non habui, sorōrem in matrimonium dĕdit,* "He gave his sister in marriage to Attalus, *than whom,* &c."

470.—*Obs.* 2. When the object is compared with the *predicate* of a proposition, the conjunction *quam* is commonly used, and then there are two cases.

1st. If the verb after *quam* is not expressed, but may easily be supplied from the preceding clause, and if the first substantive is in the accusative, the second is put by attraction in the accusative also; as, *Ego hominem callidiorem vīdi nemĭnem quam Phormiōnem,* instead of *quam Phormio est.*

2d. But if the verb after *quam* cannot be supplied from the preceding clause, the substantive must be in the nominative with *est, fuit,* &c., expressed; as, *Meliōrem quam ego sum, suppōno tĭbi; Hæc sunt verba M. Varrōnis, quam fuit Clodius, doctiōris; Argentum reddidisti L. Carrĭdio, homĭni non gratiosiōri quam Cn. Clodius est,* CIC.

471.—*Obs.* 3. *Quam* is frequently understood after *plus, mĭnus,* and *amplius,* and sometimes after *major, mĭnor,* and some other comparatives without a change of case; as, *Capta plus (quam) quinque millia homĭnum,*

"More than five thousand men were taken;" *Obsĭdes ne minōres* (*quam*) *octōnûm dēnûm annōrum.*

Note.—These words are also followed by the ablative without *quam*, according to the rule.

472.—*Obs.* 4. When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive mood, or a part of a sentence, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil turpius est quam mentīri.*

473.—*Obs.* 5. The comparative is often followed by the ablative of the following nouns, adjectives, and participles; viz. *opiniōne, spe, expectatiōne, fide,—dicto, solūto,—æquo, credibĭli, justo;* as, *citius dictō, tumĭda æquōra plăcat,* VIRG. These ablatives often supply the place of a clause; as, *gravius æquo,* equivalent to *gravius quam æquum est.*

These ablatives are sometimes omitted; as, *Liberius vivēbat,* sc. *æquo,* "He lived more freely *than was proper;*" i. e. "He lived *too freely,*" or, "rather freely."

474.—*Obs.* 6. When one quality is compared with another, in the same subject, the adjectives expressing them are both put in the positive degree with *măgis quam,* or in the comparative connected by *quam;* as, *ars magis magna quam difficĭlis. Triumphus clarior quam gratior,* "a triumph *more famous than acceptable.*" Gr. Gr. 393–3.

475.—*Obs.* 7. The prepositions *præ, ante, præter,* and *supra,* are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *scelĕre ante alios immanior omnes:* also with a superlative; as, *ante alios carissĭmus. Pro* is used after *quam,* to express proportion; as, *Prælium atrocius quam pro numĕro pugnantium.*

476.—*Obs.* 8. *Măgis* and *mĭnus* joined to the positive degree, are equivalent to the comparative; as, *O lūce măgis dilecta. Măgis* and *plus* joined with a comparative, only strengthen it; as, *Nihil invenies măgis hoc certius.*

477.—*Obs.* 9. *Inferior,* sometimes governs the dative; as, *vir nullâ arte cuiquam inferior;* the ablative also is found, but it is usually followed by *quam.*

478.—*Obs* 10. *Alius* is sometimes construed like comparatives, and sometimes, though rarely, is followed by the ablative; as, *non pŭtes alium sapiente bonōque beātum.*

479.—*Obs.* 11. The conjunction *ac,* or *atque,* in the sense of *than,* is sometimes used after the comparative degree (728), instead of *quam;* as, *Arctius atque hedĕra procĕra adstringĭtur ilex,* HOR.

---

§ 121. ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

480.—RULE XXV. Verbs of plenty and scarceness, for the most part govern the ablative; as,

bundat divitiis,	He abounds in riches.
ăret omni culpâ,	He has no fault.

481.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative after such verbs, may be governed by a preposition understood;—sometimes it is expressed; as, *vācat a culpā*. Or it may be used to limit the verb, by showing in what respect its meaning is to be taken; as, "*he abounds* IN RESPECT OF RICHES." (See R. XXXIV.) Instances of this construction, however, are so common as to warrant the rule here given.

482.— *Obs.* 1. Verbs of plenty are such as, *Abundo, affluo, exubĕro, redundo, suppedĭto, scatĕo*, &c., of want, *careo, egeo, indigeo, văco, deficior, destituor*, &c.

483.—*Exc.* 1. *Egeo*, and *indigeo*, sometimes govern the genitive; as, *Eget æris*, "He needs money," HOR.; *Non tam artis indigent, quam labōris*, CIC. So, also, some verbs denoting *to fill, to abound*, such as, *abundo, careo, satŭro, scatĕo*.

484.—RULE XXVI. *Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative; as,

Utĭtur fraude,	He uses deceit.
Abutĭtur libris,	He abuses books.

485.—*Obs.* 2. To these, add *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victĭto, consto, labōro* ("to be ill"); *pascor, epŭlor, nĭtor*, &c.

486.—*Exc.* 2. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potīri urbis*, "To get possession of the city;" *Potīri rērum* (never *rēbus*), "To possess the chief command." In such cases, the genitive may be governed by *imperio*, understood.

487.—*Exc.* 3. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epŭlor*, and *pascor*, sometimes govern the accusative; as, *Potīri urbem*, CIC.; *Officia fungi*, &c.; and also, in ancient writers, *ūtor, abūtor*, and *fruor*. *Depasco* and *depascor* have the accusative always.

N. B. For the ablative of the *adjunct*, see § 106, R. VII.—For the ablative governed by adjectives of *plenty*, or *want*, § 107, Rule XI.;—by verbs of *loading, binding*, &c., § 125;—by passive verbs, § 126, Rule V;—by a *preposition*, § 136, R. XLIX., LI., LII.

For the ablative of *limitation*, see § 128;—of *cause, manner*, &c., § 129;—of the *place where*, § 130, Exc.;—*from which*, § 130, 3;—of *time when*, § 131, R. XL.;—*How long*, R. XLI.;—of *measure*, § 132, R. XLII.;—of *excess*, R. XLIII.;—of *price*, § 133;—in the *case absolute*, § 146, R. LX.

---

§ 122. VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

488.—Many transitive verbs, with the accusative of the direct object, govern also another word, to which the action has an indirect or remote

reference, in the *genitive, dative, accusative,* or *ablative,* as the nature of that reference may require. All verbs under these rules, are transitive verbs in the active voice, or transitive deponents.

489.—RULE XXVII.—Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting,* and *admonishing,* govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,	He accuses me of theft.
Meipsum inertiæ condemno,	I condemn myself of laziness.
Illum homicidii absolvunt,	They acquit him of manslaughter
Mŏnet me officii,	He admonishes me of my duty.

490.—To this rule belong verbs of—

1. ACCUSING; as, *accūso, ăgo, appello, arcesso, anquīro, arguo, coarguo capto, increpo, increpīto, urgeo, incūso, insimŭlo, interrŏgo, postŭlo, alligo, astringo, defĕro, compello.*

2. CONDEMNING; as, *damno, condemno, infāmo, nŏto, convinco, prehendo, deprehendo, judĭco, plector.*

3. ACQUITTING; as, *absolvo, libĕro, purgo,* and perhaps *solvo.*

4. ADMONISHING; as, *moneo, admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio.*

491.—*Obs.* 1. With many of these verbs, instead of the genitive of the crime or punishment, the ablative is used with, or without, a preposition; as, *Accusāre de negligentiâ;* CIC.; *Liberāre culpâ,* Id. The ablatives *crimĭne* and *nomĭne* are often inserted before the genitive, which may be regarded as the full form of the construction; as, *Arcessēre alĭquem crimĭne amĭcĭtus,* LIV. Sometimes the punishment is put in the accusative after *ad* or *in;* as, *Damnāre ad pœnam, in metallum,* rarely in the dative; as, *damnātus morti. Multo* has always the ablative; as, *multāre pœnâ, pecuniâ, exiliis,* &c.

492.—*Obs.* 2. *Accūso, incūso, insimŭlo,* together with verbs of admonishing, instead of the genitive, are sometimes followed by the accusative, especially of the neuter pronouns *hoc, id, illud, quod,* &c., and their plurals; as, *Si id me non accūsas,* PLAUT.; *Eos hoc moneo,* CIC.; rarely by the accusative of nouns; as, *Sic me insimulāre falsum facĭnus,* PLAUT.

493.—*Obs.* 3. Many verbs signifying to accuse, and among them some of the verbs enumerated under this rule, do not govern the genitive of the crime, but, as transitive active verbs, govern it in the accusative by Rule XX; as, *arguo culpam; ejus avarĭtiam pĕrfidiamque accusārat.* When thus construed, the immediate object of condemnation is the *crime;* in the other construction, it is the *person.*

494.—*Obs.* 4. Verbs of admonishing, instead of the genitive, are sometimes followed by the ablative with a preposition; as, *Oro ut Terentiam moneātis de testamento;* sometimes by an infinitive or clause; as, *Sŏror mŏnet succurrĕre Lauso Turnum,* VIRG.; *Mŏnet ut suspiciŏnes vītet,* CÆS.; *Immortalia ne speres mŏnet annus,* HOR.

495.—RULE XXVIII. Verbs of *valuing*, with their own case, and sometimes without a case, govern such genitives of degree as *magni*, *parvi*, *nihĭli*; as,

Æstĭmo te magni,	I value you much
Mihi stĕtit plūris,	It cost me more.
Est parvi,	It is of little value.

496.—EXPLANATION.—By its own case is meant the case which the verb usually governs. Verbs without case, as *sum, fio, existo*, &c., have the genitive only. The adjectives *magni, parvi*, &c., may agree with *pretii, momenti*, or the like, understood, and the construction perhaps come under R. VII. If so, it would account for the ablative sometimes used after the same verbs. See 500.

497.—Verbs of valuing are such as *æstĭmo, existĭmo, dūco, facio, habeo pendeo, pūto, taxo, sum, fio, consto*, &c.; also *rĕfert* and *intĕrest*.

498.—Among the genitives of degree governed by such verbs, are the adjectives *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris, magni, plurĭmi, minĭmi, parvi, quantilĭbet*, &c., and the substantives *assis, flocci, nauci, pĭli, teruncii, hujus*, &c. For the genitive of price, see 582.

499.—*Obs.* 5. *Æqui* and *bŏni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consŭlo*; as, *æqui bonīque facio*, "I take this *in good part*."

500.—*Obs.* 6. Instead of the genitive, *æstĭmo*, and a few others, sometimes take the ablative. After *habeo, pŭto, dūco*, the ablative with *pro* is common; as, *pro nihĭlo putāre*. *Rĕfert* and *intĕrest*, with their own case (415), often take *nihil*, or a neuter accusative, or an adverb, instead of the genitive, to express degree; as, *mea nihil rĕfert; multum intĕrest*. So also *nihil* is used with *æstĭmo* and *mŏror*.

---

§ 123. VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

501.—RULE XXIX. Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative; as,

Compăro Virgilium Homēro,	I compare Virgil to Homer.
Suum cuīque tribŭito,	Give every man his own.
Narras fābŭlam surdo;	You tell a story to a deaf man.
Eripuit me morti,	He rescued me from death.

502.—EXPLANATION.—This is a rule of very extensive application. When, together with the *thing done* (expressed by the transitive active verb

and its accusative), we express also the remote object *to which* it is done, that object will be put in the dative; thus, in the above examples, the verb and the accusative following it, express the *whole* of that which is represented as done *to*, or *with reference to*, the object expressed in the dative; i. e. *compăro Virgilium*, expresses all here said to be done (*Homēro*) to Homer, "I compare Virgil to him." *Narras fabŭlam* expresses all here said to be done (*surdo*) to the deaf man, "you tell a story to him;" and so *eripuit me*, together, express what is here done (*morti*) to death, "he rescued me from it;" and so of other examples. See this more fully illustrated, Gr. Gram., § 152, Obs. 8.

OBSERVATIONS.

503.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, and some others, instead of the dative, often take a preposition and its case; as, *Comparāre ūnam rem cum alĭā,—ad aliam,—res inter se. Eripuit me morti,—morte,—a,* or *ex morte,* &c.

504.—*Obs.* 2. Instead of the accusative, these verbs have frequently an infinitive mood or a part of a sentence; as, *Da mihi fallĕre, Reddes mihi dulce lŏqui,* &c., Hor.; *Perfacile factu esse illis prŏbat; Itemque Dumnorĭgi, ut ĭdem conarētur persuadet,* Cæs. This construction is especially common with such verbs as *aio, dĭco, inquam, persuadeo, respondeo,* &c., when the thing *said, replied,* &c., though a sentence or a paragraph, is to be regarded as the accusative, and the word denoting the person or persons to whom said, is put in the dative.

505.—*Obs.* 3. Several verbs governing the accusative and dative are often construed differently; as, *circumdăre mœnia oppĭdo,* or *oppĭdum mœnĭbus,* "to surround a city with walls;" *intercludĕre commeātum alĭcui,* or *alĭquem commeātu,* "to intercept one's provisions;" *indŭere, exŭere vestem sĭbi,* or, *se vesti.* So the following, *Universos frumento donāvit,* Nep.; and *Prædam militĭbus dōnat,* Cæs.; *Aspergĕre sāle carnes,* or, *aspergĕre sālem carnĭbus,* Plin.

506.—*Obs.* 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubĕre alĭcui* (sc. *se.*), *Cedĕre alĭcui* (sc. *lŏcum*), *detrahĕre alĭcui* (sc. *laudem*), &c.

507.—*Obs.* 5. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad;* as, *Ad prætōrem hominem traxit.*

---

§ 124. VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES.

508.—Rule XXX. Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscĭmus te pācem,	We beg peace of thee.
Docuit me grammatĭcam,	He taught me grammar

509.—EXPLANATION.—The first accusative, under this rule, belongs to Rule XX., the second may be governed by a preposition understood; or the reason of this rule may be, that most of the verbs under it, admit either of the nouns after them, as their immediate object.

OBSERVATIONS.

510.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs of asking, which govern two accusatives, are *rŏgo, ōro, exŏro, obsecro, prĕcor, posco, reposco, flagĭto,* &c.; of teaching, *doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.* To these, may be added, *cēlo,* to conceal; as, *Antigŏnus ĭter omnes cēlat,* NEP. For two accusatives after verbs of naming, choosing, &c., see 440.

511.—*Obs.* 2. Verbs of asking, instead of the accusative of the person, often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex;* as, *Veniam orēmus ŭb ipso.* So, also, instead of the accusative of the thing, many verbs, both of asking and teaching, sometimes take the ablative with *de;* as, *De itinĕre hostium senātum edŏcet,* SALL.; *Sic ĕgo te eisdem de rēbus interrŏgem.*

512.—*Obs.* 3. Some verbs of asking and teaching, are never followed by two accusatives, but by the ablative of the person, with a preposition; such as, *exĭgo, pĕto, quæro, scĭtor, sciscĭtor,* and the following verbs of teaching, viz.: *imbuo, instituo, instruo,* and some others, are followed by the ablative of the thing, sometimes with, and sometimes without, a preposition; and sometimes they are otherwise construed.

513.—*Obs.* 4. Many other transitive active verbs, frequently, besides the accusative of a person, take also an accusative of *nihil,* or of the neuter pronouns, *hoc, id, quid,* or of adjectives of quantity; as, *Fabius ea me monuit,* CIC.; *Nec te id consŭlo,* Id. These verbs, however, in their signification, generally resemble verbs under this rule; or the accusative of the thing may be governed by a preposition understood.

---

§ 125. VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

514.—RULE XXXI. Verbs of *loading, binding, clothing, depriving,* and their contraries, govern the accusative and ablative; as,

Onĕrat nāves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

515.—EXPLANATION.—The accusative under this rule belongs to Rule XX. The ablative may be governed by a preposition understood

OBSERVATIONS.

516.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs of loading are *onĕro, cumŭlo, prĕmo, oppprĭmo, obruo, impleo, expleo, compleo;*—of unloading, *lĕvo, exonĕro,* &c.;—of binding, *astringo, ligo, allĭgo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo,* &c.;—of loos-

ing, *solvo, exsolvo, libĕro, laxo, expedio,* &c.;—of depriving, *prīvo, nūdo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo;*—of clothing, *vestio, amicio, indŭo, cingo, tĭgo, vĕlo, corōno;*—of unclothing, *exŭo, discingo,* &c.

To these may be added many other verbs, such as *mūto, dōno, munĕro, remunĕro, communĭco, pasco, beo, impertior, dignor, afficio, prosĕquor, assĕquor, spargo, oblecto,* &c., with which, however, in many cases, the ablative may come under Rules XXXIV. and XXXV.

517.—*Obs.* 2. These verbs are sometimes followed by the ablative with a preposition expressed; as, *Solvĕre aliquem ex catēnis,* Cic. The ablative is sometimes understood; as, *complet nāves,* sc. *vĭris,* Virg.

518.—*Obs.* 3. Several of these verbs denoting to fill, likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritātis implet,* "He fills the youth with his own *rashness.*" Some of them also vary their construction; as, *induit se vestĭbus,* or, *vestes sibi; Abdicāre magistrātum,* Sall.; *Abdicāre se magistrātu,* Cic. See 505.

---

§ 126. CONSTRUCTION WITH PASSIVE VERBS.

519.—Rule XXXII. Verbs that govern two cases in the active voice, govern the latter of these in the passive; as,

Accūsor furti.	I am accused *of theft.*
Virgilius comparātur Homēro.	Virgil is compared *to Homer.*
Doceor grammatĭcam,	I am taught *grammar.*
Nāvis onerātur auro,	The ship is loaded *with gold.*

This rule may be subdivided into the five following, which will be much more convenient in practice, than the general rule.

520.—I. Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting,* and *admonishing,* in the passive, govern the Genitive.

521.—II. Verbs of *valuing,* in the passive, govern such genitives as *magni, parvi, nihĭli,* &c.

522.—III. Verbs of *comparing, giving, declaring* and *taking away,* in the passive, govern the dative.

523.—IV. Verbs of *asking,* and *teaching,* in the passive, govern the accusative.

524.—V. Verbs of *loading, binding, clothing, depriving,* and their contraries, in the passive, govern the ablative.

525.—EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to the passives of all verbs under Rules XXVII. to XXXI. inclusive. In all of these, the "latter case" is that which, with the active voice, expresses the *remote,* and never the *immediate* object of the verb. In all constructions under this rule, it must be

noticed, that that which was, or would be, the accusative after the verb in the active voice, must be its nominative in the passive, otherwise the construction does not belong to this rule. Thus, active, *Narras fabŭlam surdo;* passive, *Narrātur fabŭla surdo.* Here, *fabŭlam*, the direct object of *narras*, is changed into the nominative or subject of *narrātur;* and *surdo* remains the same in both sentences. The "latter case," in other words, the remote object of the active voice is never, in Latin, converted into the subject of the passive, except in a few instances, which are manifest Græcisms. See Greek Gram., § 154, Obs. 2. In English, however, there are some expressions in which this is allowed. See An. & Pr. Eng. Gr., 814.

Hence, where, in some cases, the Greek and the English idioms admit of two forms of expression, the Latin admits of only one, e. g. "This was told to me," *or*, "I was told this," is rendered into Latin by the first form: thus, *Hoc mihi dictum est.* But we cannot say, according to the second form, *Hoc dictus sum.*

526.—*Exc. to* R. V. In poetical language, with the passive verbs *induor, amicior, cingor, accingor, exuor, discingor*, the accusative of the article of dress, &c., is often used, instead of the ablative. Thus, instead of *induor veste*, the poets frequently say, *induor vestem*. Hence the expressions, *Indŭitur faciem cultumque Diānæ*, OVID; *Indŭiturque aures aselli*, Id.; *Inutile ferrum cingĭtur*, VIRG.; *Pueri lævo suspensi locŭlos tabulamque lacerto*, HOR. This resembles the Greek accusative, 538, 539.

527.—*Obs.* 1. When the active voice is followed by three cases (431), the passive has the two last; as, *hoc missum est mihi munĕri*, "this was sent *as a present to me.*" Here *munĕri* is the dative of the *end.* R. XIX.

528.—RULE XXXIII. Passive verbs frequently govern the dative of the doer; as,

Vix audior ulli,	I am scarcely heard *by any one.*
Scribĕris Vario,	You shall be described *by Varius.*
Nulla audīta mihi sorōrum,	None of your sisters have been heard of *by me.*

529.—EXPLANATION.—This construction is used chiefly by the poets, and by them, as a substitute for another still more common; namely, that the voluntary agent, after the passive voice, is put in the ablative with *a*, or *ab*, and so comes under Rule XLIX. as (in the active voice), *Clodius me diligit*, "Clodius loves me;" (in the passive), *A Clodio diligor*, "I am loved by Clodius." The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *colĭtur linigĕrâ turbâ.*

530.—*Obs.* 2. After passive verbs, the *principal* agent or actor is usually expressed in the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as, *laudātur ab his, culpātur ab illis*, "he is praised *by these*, he is blamed *by those.*" But,

The *secondary* agent, means, or instrument, after transitive verbs in the active or passive voice, or after intransitive verbs, is put in the accusative

with *per*; as, *Per Thrasybūlum Lyci filium, ab exercĭtu recipĭtur*, NEP.; but oftener in the ablative, by Rule XXXV.

531.—*Obs.* 3. The passive participle in *dus* has the agent or doer almost always in the dative; and besides, when it agrees with the subject of a sentence, conveys the idea of obligation or necessity; as, *Sēnel omnĭbus calcanda est via lĕti*, "The way of death (*is to be*, i. e.) *must* once *be trod by all*," HOR.; *Adhibenda est nōbis diligentia*, "Diligence *must be used by us*" (i. e. we must use diligence), CIC.; *Cæsări omnia ūno tempŏre ĕrant agenda*, "All things *had to be done by Cæsar* at one time." 182–6.

532.—*Obs.* 4. The accusative of *place* or *time*, after intransitives in the passive voice, is not governed by the verb, but by a preposition understood, or comes under other rules; as, *Itur Athēnas*, Rule XXXVII.; *pugnātum est bĭduum*, R. XLI.; *dormītur tōtam noctem*, R. XLI. We find, however, *Tōta mihi dormītur hyems; Noctes vigilantur amāræ; Oceănus adĭtur*, TAC.

§ 127. CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

533.—In order to express some CIRCUMSTANCE connected with the idea of the simple sentence, words and phrases are often thrown in between the parts of a sentence in an adverbial manner, and which do not depend for their case on any word in the sentence to which they belong, but on a preposition, or adverb, or other word, understood; or are, by common usage, put in a particular case in certain circumstances, without government or dependence on any words either expressed or understood.

To this may be referred circumstances: 1. Of *limitation*;—2. Of *cause, manner*, &c.;—3. Of *place*;—4. Of *time*;—5. Of *measure*;—6. Of *price*; as follows.

§ 128. CIRCUMSTANCES OF LIMITATION.

534.—A particular qualification of a general expression, made in English by the phrase "in respect of," "with regard to," is expressed in Latin by the ablative, or, more briefly as follows:

535.—RULE XXXIV. *Respect wherein*, and the *part affected* are expressed in the ablative; as,

Pietāte filius,	*In affection* a son.
Jure perītus,	Skilled *in law*.
Pedĭbus æger,	Lame *in his feet*.

536.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative, under this rule, is used, to limit the signification of nouns, adjectives, and verbs; and may be variously

rendered to express the nature of the limitation intended; as, *in, in respect of, with respect to, with regard to,* &c.

537.—*Obs.* 1. The part affected, after adjectives and verbs, belongs to this rule, containing, as it does, a similar limitation of a general expression, as in the last of the examples above. The following are of a similar character: *Anxius animo,* TAC.; *Crine ruber; ore niger,* MART.; *Contremisco toto mente et omnibus artubus,* CIC.; *Animoque et corpore torpet,* HOR.

538.—*Exc.* 1. The part affected, in imitation of a Greek construction, is sometimes expressed in the accusative; as, *Nudus membra,* "Bare *as to* his limbs," VIRG. So, *sibila colla tumentem,* Id.; *explēri mentem nequit,* Id.; *fractus membra,* HOR.; *tempora cinctus,* VIRG. This construction is in imitation of the Greek. See Gr. Gram., § 157, Obs. 1.

539.—*Exc.* 2. In like manner, a noun or pronoun, denoting that *in regard to* which, or *with respect to* which, any thing is, is said, or is done, is sometimes put in the accusative; as, *Nunc illos qui in urbe remansērunt,* "Now, *in regard to those* who remained in the city;" *Quod relīquum est,* "*As to that which* remains."

This construction is quite common with such accusatives as *id, hoc, aliquid, reliqua, cætera, magnam partem, maximam partem,* and the like; as, *reliqua similis; cætera egregium; meos libros magnam partem amīsi,* &c. In such constructions, *ad,* meaning "in regard to," "in respect of," "as to," (Andrews' Lexicon, D. 1), is probably understood.

540.—*Exc.* 3. After certain adjectives and verbs denoting an affection or state of mind, *respect wherein,* or the *part affected,* is, in imitation of the Greek, expressed in the genitive; as, *integer vītæ; diversus mōrum; discrucior animi; animi pendeo; recreābar animi.* See also 371.

541.—*Obs.* 2. To this rule may be referred the matter of which any thing is made; as, *ære cavo clypeus,* "a shield of hollow brass." But here the preposition is commonly expressed; as, *templum de marmŏre.* In imitation of the Greeks, the matter is sometimes put in the genitive; as, *cratēres argenti,* "goblets of silver." Gr. Gram., § 156, Obs. 3.

---

§ 129. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, &c.

542.—RULE XXXV. The *cause, manner, means,* and *instrument,* are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo mĕtu,	I am pale *for fear.*
Fēcit suo mŏre,	He did it *after his own way.*
Auro ostrōque decōri,	Decked *with gold and purple.*
Scribo calămo,	I write *with a pen.*

543.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative, in this rule, is probably governed by a preposition understood,—as there are numerous instances in which the preposition is expressed. The *cause* will be known by putting the question, "Why?" or "Wherefore?" the *manner*, by "How?" the *means*, by "By what means?" the *instrument*, by "Wherewith?"

544.—*Obs.* 1. The *cause* sometimes takes the prepositions *per, propter, ob*, with the accusative; or *de, e, ex, præ*, with the ablative; as, *de pulsus per invidiam; fessus de viâ.*

545.—*Obs.* 2. The *manner* is sometimes expressed by *a, ab, cum, de, ex, per*; as, *de more suo*;—the *means* frequently by *per*, and *cum*; as, *cum meis copiis omnibus vexâvi Amanienses.* See 530.

546.—*Obs.* 3. The *instrument*, properly so called, seldom admits a preposition, though, among the poets, *a, ab, de, sub*, are sometimes used, as, *pectŏra trajectus ab ense; exercēre sŏlum sub vomĕre.*

---

§ 130. CIRCUMSTANCES OF PLACE.

547.—The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars: 1. The place *where*, or *in which*;—2. The place *whither*, or *to which*;—3. The place *whence*, or *from which*;—4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

N. B. The following rules respecting place, refer chiefly to the *names of towns*. Sometimes, though very seldom, the names of countries, provinces, islands, &c., are construed in the same way. With these, however, the preposition is commonly added.

1. *The place* WHERE, *or* IN WHICH.

548.—RULE XXXVI. The name of a town, denoting the place *where*, or, *in which*, is put in the genitive; as,

Vixit Rōmæ,	He lived *at Rome.*
Mortuus est Milēti,	He died *at Miletus.*

549.—Exc. But if the name of the town *where*, or *in which*, is of the third declension, or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

Habĭtat Carthagĭne,	He dwells *at Carthage.*
Studuit Athēnis,	He studied *at Athens.*

550.—*Obs.* 1. When the name of a town is joined with an adjective, or common noun in apposition, a preposition is commonly added; as, *Rōmæ in celebri urbe*; or, *in Rōmæ celebri urbe*; or, *in Rōmâ celebri urbe*; or sometimes, *Rōmæ celebri urbe.* 262.

Note.—In this construction, the name of a town, in the third declension,

frequently has the ablative singular in *i*; as, *Habĭtat Carthagĭni. Fuĕre Sicyōni jamdiu Dionysĭa*, PLAUT.; *Tĭbŭri genĭtus*, SUET.

551.—*Obs.* 2. The name of the town *where*, or *in which*, is sometimes, though rarely, put in the ablative when it is of the first or second declension; as, *Tyro rex decessit*, for *Tyri*, "The king died *at Tyre*," JUST.; *Hujus exemplar Rōmæ nullum habēmus*, VITRUV.

552.—*Obs.* 3. The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed before the ablative; as, *In Philippis quĭdam nunciāvit*, SUET. *At*, or *near* a place is expressed by *ad*, or *ăpud* with the accusative; as, *ad*, or *ăpud Trojam*, "*at*, *or* near Troy."

2. *The place* WHITHER, *or* TO WHICH.

553.—RULE XXXVII. The name of a town denoting the place *whither*, or *to which*, is put in the accusative; as,

Vĕnit Rōmam,	He came *to Rome*
Profectus est Athēnas,	He went *to Athens.*

554.—*Obs.* 4. Among the poets, the town *to which* is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Carthagĭni nuncios mittam*, HOR.

555.—*Obs.* 5. After verbs of *telling*, and *giving*, when motion *to* is implied, the name of a town is sometimes put in the accusative; as, *Rōmam erat nunciatum*, "The report was carried *to Rome*;" *Messānam litĕras dĕdit.*

3. *The place* WHENCE, *or* FROM WHICH.

556.—RULE XXXVIII. The name of a town *whence* or *from which*, *by* or *through which*, is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corintho,	He departed *from Corinth.*
Laodicēā ĭter fēcit,	He went *through Laodicea.*

557.—*Obs.* 6. The place by or through which, however, is commonly put in the accusative with *per*; as, *Per Thēbas ĭter fēcit*, NEP.

4. *Domus* and *rus.*

558.—RULE XXXIX. *Domus* and *rus* are construed in the same way as names of towns; as,

Mănet dŏmi (548),	He stays *at home.*
Dŏmum revertĭtur (553),	He returns *home.*
Dŏmo arcessītus sum (556),	I am called *from home.*

So also:

Vivit rūre or *rūri* (548),	He lives *in the country.*
Abiit rus (553),	He is gone *to the country.*
Rediit rūre (556),	He has returned *from the country.*

559.—*Obs.* 7. *Hūmi, militiæ,* and *belli,* are likewise construed in the genitive like names of towns; as, *jăcet hūmi,* "he lies on the ground;" *dŏmi et militiæ* (or *belli*), "at home or abroad."

560.—*Obs.* 8. When *dŏmus* is joined with an adjective, the preposition is commonly used; as, *in dŏmo paternâ.* So, *ad dŏmum paternam, ex dŏmo paternâ.*—Except with *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius,* and *aliēnus;* then it follows the rule. When *dŏmus* has another substantive after it in the genitive, it may be with, or without, a preposition; as, *deprehensus est dŏmi, dŏmo,* or *in dŏmo Cæsăris.*

561.—*Obs.* 9. *Rus,* and *rūre,* in the singular, joined with an adjective, are used with, or without, a preposition. But *rūra,* in the plural, is never without it.

562.—*Obs.* 10. The names of countries, provinces, and all other places except towns, are commonly construed with a preposition; as, *nātus in Italiâ; abiit in Italiam; rĕdiit ex Italiâ; transit per Italiam,* &c. A few cases occur, however, in which names of countries, provinces, &c., are construed like the names of towns, without a preposition as, *Pompeius Cypri vīsus est,* &c., Cæs.

563.—*Pĕto,* "I seek," or "go to," always governs the accusative as a transitive active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petīvit Egyptum,* "He went to Egypt."

564.—*Obs.* 11. The word containing an answer to the question *whither?* is often put by the poets in the accusative without a preposition; as, *Speluncam Dido dux et Trojānus eandem dēveniunt,* Virg. Likewise, the answer to the question *where?* or *whence?* in the ablative, without a preposition; as, *Silvisque agrisque viisque corpŏra fœda jăcent.* So, *cădere nubĭbus; descendĕre cœlo; currus carcerĭbus missi.* See 611.

---

§ 131. CIRCUMSTANCES OF TIME.

565.—Rule XL. Time *when,* is put in the ablative; as,

Vēnit hōrâ tertiâ,	He came *at the third hour.*

Rule XLI. Time *how long,* is put in the accusative, or ablative; as,

Mansit paucos dies,	He staid a few *days.*
Sex mensĭbus abfuit,	He was absent six *months.*

566.—Explanation.—A *precise* period or point of time, is usually put in the ablative,—continuance of time, not marked with precision, for the most part, in the accusative.

567.—*Note.*—It must be observed here, that the *point of time* under this rule, must coincide with the time of the verb with which it is connect-

ed; otherwise, the rule does not hold good;—thus, "He invited me to dine with him next day," is properly rendered under this rule: *Sĕrum postĕro die ut prandĕrem invitāvit;* because *postĕro die* and *prandĕrem* are cotemporary. But, if we change the verb *prandĕrem* for a noun, *postĕro die* will not do in the ablative, but must be changed thus; *ad prandium me invitāvit in postĕrum diem. Postĕro die,* in this sentence, would mean that the invitation was given next day, and would be rendered, in English, "Next day, he invited me to dinner."

OBSERVATIONS.

568.—*Obs.* 1. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; such as, *in, de, ad, ante, circa, per,* &c. Sometimes *ad,* or *circa,* is understood before *hoc, illud, id, isthuc,* with *ætātis, tempŏris, hōræ,* &c., following in the genitive; as, (*ad*) *id tempŏris,* for *eo tempore,* &c.

569.—*Obs.* 2. Precise time, before or after another fixed time, is expressed by *ante,* or *post,* regarded as adverbs, either with the accusative or ablative; as, *aliquot ante annos; paucis ante diĕbus; paucos post dies,* &c.

570.—Sometimes *quam,* with a verb, is added to *ante,* or *post;* as, *Paucis post diĕbus quam Lūca discessĕrat,* "A few days after he had departed from Luca." Sometimes *post* is omitted before *quam;* as, *Die vigesĭmâ quam creātus ĕrat.*

571.—*Obs.* 3. Instead of *postquam,* we sometimes find *ex quo,* or *quum,* or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative; as, *Octo diĕbus quĭbus has litĕras dābam,* "Eight days *after* I gave these letters."

572.—*Obs.* 4. The adverb *abhinc* is used to express past time, joined with the accusative or ablative, without a preposition; as, *Factum est ab hinc biennio,* or *biennium,* "It was done two years *ago.*"

---

§ 132. CIRCUMSTANCES OF MEASURE.

573.—RULE XLII. *Measure* or *distance* is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Mūrus est dĕcem pĕdes altus,		The wall is ten *feet* high.
Urbs distat triginta millia, or *triginta millĭbus passuum,*	}	The city is distant thirty *miles.*
Iter, or *itinĕre unius diēi,*		One day's *journey.*

OBSERVATIONS.

574.—*Obs.* 1. The accusative or ablative of measure, is put after such adjectives, and verbs of dimension, as *longus, lātus, crassus, profundus, altus; Pătet, porrigĭtur, emĭnet,* &c. The names of measure are *pes, cubĭtus, ulnus, digĭtus, palmus, mille passuum,* a mile, &c.

575.—*Obs.* 2. The accusative or ablative of distance, is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *eo, curro, dūco, absum,*

disto, &c. The accusative, under this rule, may be governed by *ad* or *per*, understood, and the ablative by *a*, or *ab*.

576.—*Obs.* 3. When the measure of more things than one is expressed, the distributive numeral is commonly used; as, *Mūri sunt dēnos pĕdes alti*, "The walls are *each ten* feet high." Sometimes *dēnūm pĕdum*, for *denōrum*, is used in the genitive, governed by *ad mensūram*, understood. But the genitive is used to express the measure of things in the plural only.

577.—*Obs.* 4. The distance of the place where any thing is said to be done, is usually expressed in the ablative or in the accusative with a preposition; as, *Sex millĭbus passuum ab urbe consĕdit;* or *ad sex millia passuum*. Cæs.

578.—*Obs.* 5. Sometimes the place from which distance is estimated is not expressed, though the preposition governing it is, and may be rendered *off, distant*, &c., as, *Ab sex millĭbus passuum abfuit;* "He was six miles off, *or* distant" (scil. *Rōmā*, from Rome).

579.—RULE XLIII. The measure of *excess* or *deficiency*, is put in the ablative; as,

Sesquipĕde longior,	Taller *by a foot and a half.*
Nŏvem pedĭbus mĭnor,	Less *by nine feet.*
Quanto doctior, tanto submissior,	*The more* learned, *the more* humble.

580.—*Obs.* 6. To this rule are to be referred the ablatives *tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, aliquanto, multo, paulo, nihĭlo*, &c., frequently joined to comparatives, and sometimes to superlatives.

---

§ 133. CIRCUMSTANCES OF PRICE.

581.—RULE XLIV. The *price* of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Constĭtit talento,	It cost *a talent.*
Vendĭdit hic auro patriam,	This man sold his country *for gold.*

582.—Exc. But *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris*, are used in the genitive; as,

Quanti constĭtit?	*How much* cost it?
Non vendo plūris quam cætĕri,	I do not sell *for more* than others.

583.—*Obs.* 1. When joined with a noun, *tanti, quanti*, &c., are put in the ablative; as, *Quam tanto pretio mercātus est. Tanto, quanto*, and *plūre*, are sometimes, though rarely, found without a noun; as, *plūre vēnit*, "it is sold *for more.*"

584.—*Obs.* 2. The ablative of price is often an adjective without a noun; as, *magno, permagno, parvo, paulŭlo, minĭmo, plurĭmo, vĭli, nimio.* These refer, however, to some such noun as *pretio, ære*, &c., understood *Valeo* is found with an accusative.

§ 134. CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

585.—RULE XLV. Adverbs are joined to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, to modify and limit their signification; as,

Bĕne scrĭbit,	He writes well.
Fortĭter pugnans,	Fighting bravely.
Egregie fidēlis,	Remarkably faithful.
Sātis bĕne,	Well enough.

OBSERVATIONS.

586.—*Obs.* 1. Adverbs are sometimes joined with nouns; as, *Homērus plāne orātor,* "Homer evidently an orator."

587.—*Obs.* 2. The adverb is usually placed near the word modified or limited by it.

Negatives.

588.—*Obs.* 3. Two negatives in Latin, as well as in English, destroy each other, or are equivalent to an affirmative; as, *Nec non sensērunt,* "nor did they not perceive;" i. e. *et sensērunt,* "and they did perceive." So, *Non potĕram non exanimāri mĕtu.* CIC. *Non sum nescius,* i. e. *scio; haud nihil est,* "it is not nothing," i. e. "it is something;" *nonnulli,* "not *none*," i. e. "some;" *nonnunquam,* "not never," i. e. "sometimes;" *non nĕmo,* "not nobody," i. e. "somebody," &c.

589.—*Obs.* 4. *Exc.* In imitation of the Greeks, however, two negatives in Latin, as well as in English, sometimes make a stronger negative; as, *Nĕque ille haud objiciet mihi,* "He will *not by any means* object to me;" *Jūra, te non nocitūrum homĭni nemĭni,* &c. *Nĕque,* and *nec,* and sometimes *non,* are especially thus used after a negative; as, *Non me carminĭbus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Līnus.*

590.—*Obs.* 5. *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non mŏdo,* or *non sŏlum,* when followed in a subsequent clause by *ne quĭdem;* as, *Mihi non mŏdo irasci,* (i. e. *non irasci,*) *sed ne dolēre quĭdem impūne licet.* Sometimes, but rarely, it is omitted after *sed,* or *vērum,* with *etiam;* as, *Non mŏdo ea futūra tĭmet* (i. e. *non tĭmet,*) *vērum etiam fert sustinetque præsentia.* For *ne,* and *ut,* with *timeo,* &c., see 633.

591.—*Obs.* 6. Certain adverbs are joined to adjectives, and also to adverbs, in all the degrees of comparison, for the purpose of imparting greater force to their signification; as,

1st. To the positive are joined such adverbs as, *apprīme, admŏdum, vehementer, maxĭme, perquam, valde, oppĭdo,* and *per,* in composition; as, *grātum admŏdum,* "very agreeable;" *perquam puerīle,* "very childish;" &c. In like manner, *părum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum;* as, *părum firmus; multum bŏnus.*

2d. To the comparative are joined, *paulo, nimio, aliquantō, eo, quo, hoc, impendio, nihĭlo;* as, *Eo gravior est dŏlor quo culpa mājor.*—CIC. See 580. Sometimes, also, *părum, multum,* &c., as with the positive.

3d. To the superlative are joined, *longe, quam, facĭle,* meaning "certainly," "undoubtedly;" also *tanto, quanto, multo,* &c.; as, *Facĭle doctissĭmus,* "*certainly* the most learned;" *longe bellicosissĭma* (sc. *gens*). "*by far* the most warlike;" *quam maxĭmas pŏtest copias armat,* "he arms *as great* forces *as possible.*"

4th. *Quam,* (and also *ut,*) is also used as an intensive word with the positive, but in a sense somewhat different, resembling an exclamation; as, *Quam difficĭle est!* "*how* difficult it is!" *quam,* or *ut crudēlis!* "*how* cruel!" *Flens quam familiarĭter,* "weeping *how affectionately,*" i. e. *very affectionately; quam sevēre,* "*how severely,*" i. e. *very severely.*

---

§ 135. CASES GOVERNED BY ADVERBS.

592.—RULE XLVI. Some adverbs of *time, place,* and *quantity,* govern the genitive; as,

Pridie ejus diēi,	The day before that day.
Ubīque gentium,	Every where.
Sātis est verbōrum,	There is enough of words.

593.—1. Adverbs of time governing the genitive are, *interea, postea, inde, tunc;* as, *Interea lŏci,* "in the mean time;" *postea lŏci,* "afterwards;" *inde lŏci,* "then;" *tunc tempŏris,* "at that time."

594.—2. Of place, *Ubi,* and *quo,* with their compounds, *ubīque, ubicunque, ubĭŭbi, quōvis,* &c. Also, *eo, huc, huccīne, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibīdem,* &c.; *as, unde terrārum* or *gentium; longe gentium; ibīdem lŏci.* Also. *huc, eo,* and *quo,* expressing degree; as, *Eo audaciæ,—vecordiæ—miseriārum,* &c., "*to that pitch* of boldness—madness—misery," &c.

595.—3. Of quantity, *abunde, affātim, largĭter, nīmis, sātis, pārum, minīme;* as, *abunde gloriæ; affātim divitiārum; largĭter auri; sātis eloquentiæ; sapientiæ pārum est illi,* or *hăbet,* "He has enough of glory, riches," &c. *minīmè gentium,* "by no means."

596.—*Obs.* 1. *Ergô* (for the sake of), *instar,* and *partim,* also govern the genitive; as, *donāri virtūtis ergô.*

597.—*Obs.* 2. *Pridie* and *postridie,* govern the genitive or accusative; as, *Pridie Kalendārum,* or *pridie Kalendas,* sup. *ante; Postridie Kalendārum,* or *Kalendas,* sup. *post.*

598.—*Obs.* 3. *En* and *Ecce* govern the nominative or accusative; as, *En causa; Ecce hŏmo* or *hominem,* sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce duas āras tĭbi.* VIRG. In such constructions, a verb may be understood. The dative may be referred to, 377–3.

599.—*Obs.* 4. Certain prepositions used adverbially by the poets, are followed by the dative; as, *Mihi clam est,* "it is unknown to me." *Contra nōbis.*

600—RULE XLVII. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

Omnium optĭme loquĭtur,	He speaks *the best of all.*
Convenienter natūræ,	*Agreeably to nature.*
Vēnit obviam ei,	He came *to meet him.*
Proxĭme castris or *castra,*	*Next the camp.*

601.—EXPLANATION.—In the first example, *optime* is derived from *optimus*, which governs the genitive by Rule X. 355. *Convenienter* and *obviam*, are derived from *conveniens*, and *obvius*, which govern the dative by Rule XVI. 382; and *proxime* is derived from *proximus*, which governs the dative or accusative. (388.)

---

§ 136. CASES GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

602.—RULE XLVIII. Twenty-eight prepositions, *ad*, *ăpud*, *ante*, &c., govern the accusative; as,

Ad patrem,	To the father.

603.—RULE XLIX. Fifteen prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c., govern the ablative; as,

A patre,	From the father.

604.—EXPLANATION.—The twenty-eight prepositions which govern the accusative are those contained in the list 220–1, and the fifteen governing the ablative are those in 220–2.

OBSERVATIONS.

605.— *Obs.* 1. *Clam*, one of these fifteen, is sometimes followed by the accusative; as, *clam vos*, "without your knowledge." When followed by a genitive or dative, a substantive may be understood, or it may be regarded as an adverb; as, *clam patris.* TER. *mihi clam est.* PLAUT.

606.—*Obs.* 2. *Tenus* after a plural noun, commonly governs it in the genitive; as, *crūrum tĕnus.* VIRG.

607.—RULE L. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *sŭper*, and *subter*, denoting *motion to*, or *tendency towards*, govern the accusative; as,

Vēnit in Urbem,	He came into the city.
Amor in te,	Love towards thee.
Sub jŭgum missus est,	He was sent under the yoke.
Incŭdit sŭper agmĭna,	It fell upon the troops.

608.—RULE LI. The prepositions *in* and *sub* denoting *situation*, govern the ablative; *sŭper* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative; as,

Jăcet in terrâ,	He lies upon the ground.
Mediâ in urbe,	In the middle of the city.
In poëtis,	Among the poets.
Sub mœnĭbus,	Under the walls.

609.—*Obs.* 3. To both of these rules there are some exceptions. Instances occur in which *in* and *sub* denoting *motion to*, or *tendency towards*, instead of the accusative, govern the ablative; as, *In conspectu meo audet venīre; sub jŭgo dictātor hostem mīsit.* Others are found in which they govern the accusative when they denote *situation;* as, *Mihi in mentem fuit. Hostes sub montem consēdisse,* &c.

610.—*Obs.* 4. The preposition *in* with the accusative, usually signifies *into, towards, until, for, against;* with the ablative *in, upon, among.* With both these cases, however, considerable variety of translation is necessary to convey correctly the idea of the original. The following are instances, "In the case of," *tālis in hoste fuit Priămo.* VIRG. "On account of," *in quo facto dŏmum revocātus;—In sex mensĭbus,* "within six months;" *in dies,* "from day to day." So, *in hōras,* "from hour to hour;" *in capŭta,* "per head;" *in puerĭtia,* "during boyhood;" *in hoc tempŏre,* "at this time," &c.

611.—*Obs.* 5. The preposition is frequently understood before its case; as, *devenēre lŏcos.* VIRG. *hŏmo id ætātis.* CIC. *propior montem.* SALL., in which *ad* is understood. So, *Nunc id prodeo,* sc. *ob;*—TER. *Maria aspèra jūro,* sc. *per. Se lŏcō movēre,* sc. *e,* or *de. Quid illo facias?* sc. *in* or *de,* "what can you do in this case?" *Ut patriâ expellerētur,* sc. *ex.* NEP.

612.—*Obs.* 6. Sometimes, but much more rarely, the case is omitted after the preposition; as, *circum Concordiæ,* sc. *ædem.* SALL. *multis post annis,* i. e. *post id tempus.*

613.—RULE LII. A preposition in composition often governs its own case; as,

Adeāmus urbem,	Let us go to the city.
Exeāmus urbe,	Let us go out of the city.

614.—EXPLANATION.—By "its own case" is meant the case it governs when not in composition. This rule takes place only when the preposition may be separated from the verb, and placed before the case, without altering the sense. Thus, *adeāmus urbem,* and *eāmus ad urbem,* express the same thing.

615.—*Obs.* 7. The preposition is often repeated after the compound word; the case is then governed by the preposition repeated; as, *ex navĭbus expositi.* CÆS. *Nunquam accĕdo ad te, quin abs te abeam doctior.* TER.

Note.—Some verbs never have the preposition repeated after them; such as, *Affāris, allĕquor, allatro, alluo, accŏlo; circum* with *venio, eo, sto, sedeo,*

vŏlo ; obeo, prætereo, abdĭco, effĕro, everto, &c. Some compounds with *inter*, and *præter*, commonly omit the preposition. The compounds of *in, ob,* and *sub*, generally take the dative; those of *sŭper*, generally the accusative.

616.—*Obs.* 8. Some verbs compounded with *e*, or *ex*, are followed by an accusative or ablative; as, *exīre limen.* Ter. *exīre septis.* Virg. Some words compounded with *præ*, take an accusative; as, *Tĭbur aquæ præfluunt.* Hor. In some of these cases, however, the accusative may be governed by *præter* or *extra*, understood.

617.—*Obs.* 9. The case governed by the preposition in composition is sometimes omitted; as, *Emittĕre servum*, sc. *mănu.* Plaut. *Evomĕre virus*, sc. *ōre.* Cic. *Educĕre copias*, sc. *castris.* Cæs.

For the construction of interjections, see § 117.

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

§ 137. CONNECTION OF TENSES.

618.—The tenses in the indicative and subjunctive moods, so far as relates to their construction, may be divided into two classes, *Primary* and *Secondary*, as follows,

Primary.	*Secondary.*
Present.	Imperfect.
Perfect definite. 162.	Perfect indefinite. 163.
Futures.	Pluperfect.

With the primary tenses may be classed, the *Imperative Mood.*

Of these tenses, the *Primary* are used to express actions, &c., as present or future; the *Secondary*, in the recital of these actions as past.

In the construction of sentences consisting of different members, the subjunctive mood, in the subordinate or secondary parts, usually corresponds, in time, to the tense in the primary, or leading part. Hence the following Rule.

619.—Rule LIII. Any tense of the subjunctive mood, may follow a tense of the *same class* in the indicative; as,

Pres. / Perf. Def. / Fut.	*Lĕgo, / Lĕgi, / Lĕgam,*	*ut discam,*	I read, / I have read, / I will read, — that I *may* learn.
Imper.	*Lege, ut discas,*		Read, that you *may* learn.
Imperf. / Per. Indef. / Plup.	*Legēbam, / Lĕgi, / Legĕram,*	*ut discĕrem,*	I was reading, / I read, / I had read, — that I *might* learn.

620.—EXPLANATION.—In clauses connected, the present, the perfect, and periphrastic future with *sim* or *fŭrim*, 214–8, in the subjunctive mood, may follow either the present, or the perfect definite, or the futures, of the indicative, or the imperative mood. In like manner, the imperfect, the pluperfect, and the periphrastic future with *essem* or *fuissem*, in the subjunctive mood, may follow either the imperfect, or the perfect indefinite, or the pluperfect in the indicative.

621.—*Obs.* 1. When the present tense of the indicative is used in narration for the past, 157–8, it may be followed by the secondary tenses of the subjunctive, as *Legātos mittunt ut pācem impetrārent.*

622.—*Obs.* 2. Primary tenses are sometimes followed by secondary, and secondary by primary, in order to express actions whose time is different.

623.—*Obs.* 3. When the subjunctive follows an infinitive or participle in the primary clause, the class of tenses employed, usually corresponds to the time of the verb on which the infinitive or participle depends.

N. B. This rule and the observations under it, are to be regarded as stating only general principles, the deviations from which, in expressing the endless variety of relations among actions with reference to time, dependence, &c., can be learned only by practice and close attention to classic usage.

For the interchange of tenses in the same and in different moods, see observations on the tenses, §§ 44 and 45.

624.—§ 138. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. The indicative mood is used in Latin, to express what is actual and certain, in an absolute and independent manner; as, *vēni, vīdi, vīci*, "I came, saw, and conquered." It is also used in direct and independent interrogations; as, *Quid ăgis?* "what are you doing?"

2. The indicative mood is used in conditional and dependent clauses, to denote, not what is contingent or uncertain, but what is supposed, or admitted as fact; as, *Si vāles, bĕne est*, "if you *are in health*, it is well," i. e. "since you are in health."

3. Independent assertions made in English by *shall, will, can, may, ought*, and the like, are made in Latin by the indicative of verbs expressing these ideas; as, *volŭmus īre*, "we will go," *dēbes facĕre*, "you ought to do it," 147. In general, the verbs *oportet, necesse est, debeo, convĕnit, possum, licet;*—also, the expressions *par, fas, æquum, justum, consentaneum est;*—

and *æquius, melius, utilius, optabilius est*, are put in the past tenses of the indicative, though translated by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. Hence,

4. The indicative is used in the sense of the subjunctive, and translated by the potential in English, when an act, &c., though not performed, is expressed as what would have been proper, practicable, or advantageous; as, *Milōni optabilius fuit dăre jugŭlum P. Clodio;* "*it would have been more desirable*," &c., 164–4.

5. The past tenses of the indicative, are sometimes used for the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause, by which the description is rendered more animated; as, *pons sublicius ĭter hostĭbus dĕdit, ni*, &c. "the wooden bridge *would have afforded* a passage to the enemy, unless" &c; so, *actum ĕrat de pulcherrimo imperio, nĭsi*, &c., 140 and 625–4th.

The signification and use of this mood, in its several tenses, are specified, § 44.

---

§ 139. CONSTRUCTION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

[For the character and meaning of this mood, in its several tenses, see § 42. II. and § 45.]

The subjunctive mood is used sometimes in independent, but, for the most part, in dependent propositions.

I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT PROPOSITIONS.

625. The subjunctive mood is used, apparently at least, in independent propositions:—

1st. To soften an assertion or statement; as, *nemo istud tibi concedat*, "no one *would grant* that to you;" *forsĭtan temĕre fecĕrim*, "perhaps *I may have acted* rashly;" *quis dubĭtet?* "who *can doubt* it?"

2d. To express a wish or desire, like the Greek Optative; as, *eamus*, "*let us go;*" *moriāmur*, "let us die;" *nunc revertāmur*, "let us now return." In the second, and the third person, it is used to exhort or command; and, with a negative, to forbid; as, *faciat*, "*let him do it;*" *ipse vidĕrit*, "*let him see to it* himself." Cic. *Ne me attingas*, "*do not touch* me." Ter. *Emas quod necesse est.* (171–1). Sen.

3d. To express a doubtful question; as, *quo eam?* "whither *shall I go?*" *quid aliud facĕret?* "what else *could he do?*" (171–2). CIC.

4th. After the imperfect, and pluperfect subjunctive, in a conditional clause with *si, etsi, quăsi, etiamsi, tametsi, ni, nisi,* the subjunctive is used independently in the apodosis, or conclusion, in the same tenses, when the thing supposed did not exist. Also, after the present, and perfect in the sense of the imperfect or pluperfect; as, *si hic sis, alĭter sentias,* "if you *were* here, you *would think* otherwise." TER. *Quos ni mea cūra resistat, jam flammæ tulĕrint.* VIRG. In this construction, the conditional clause is sometimes omitted; as, *magno mercentur Atridæ (si possint).* VIRG.

Note.—But, though in these and many similar expressions, the subjunctive appears to be used independently, it is easy to see, that in most cases, if not in all, it depends on an indicative or imperative understood, and which has been omitted for the sake of brevity (145).

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN DEPENDENT PROPOSITIONS.

626.—The subjunctive mood is used, for the most part, in dependent clauses, and is preceded by another verb in the indicative, imperative, or infinitive mood, expressed or understood, with which it is connected by a conjunction, a relative, or an indefinite term, and may generally be rendered by the potential in English (142–2d, and 143).

Obs.—The construction of the subjunctive mood, in Latin agrees, generally, with its construction in English and in Greek. Its use, however, is much more extensive in Latin, being employed in many cases in which the indicative is used in these languages. Its construction in dependent propositions, is subject to the following Rules.

---

§ 140. SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER CONJUNCTIONS, &c.

627—RULE LIV. The conjunctions, *ut, quo, lĭcet, ne, utĭnam,* and *dummŏdo,* &c., and words used indefinitely in dependent clauses, for the most part, require the subjunctive mood; as,

Lĕgo ut discam,	I read *that I may learn.*
Nescit qui sim,	He knows not *who I am.*

EXPLANATION.—The conjunctions requiring the subjunctive mood, are those which imply *doubt, contingency, uncertainty,* and the like, as follows:

1. *Ut, quo,* "that," *ne, quominus,* "that not," referring to the *result, end,* or *design,* take the subjunctive; thus,

1st. *Ut,* "that," denoting a *result,* after such words as *sic, ita, adeo, tam, talis, tantus, is, ejusmodi,* is followed by the subjunctive.

2d. *Ut,* "that," and *ne,* "that not," denoting *purpose* or *design;* or when "that" is equivalent to "in order that," "so that," take the subjunctive.

3d. After verbs signifying to *request, admonish, advise, commission, encourage, command,* and the like; or to *endeavor, aim at,* or *accomplish;* as, *facio, efficio,* &c.; and sometimes to *permit,* to *wish,* to *be necessary,* &c., *ut* and *ne* usually take the subjunctive.

4th. *Ut,* with the subjunctive, usually follows such impersonals as *fit, fieri non potest, accidit, incidit, occurrit, contingit, evenit, usu venit, rarum est, sequitur, futurum est, reliquum est, relinquitur, restat, superest, opus est, est* signifying *it happens, it occurs, it remains,* &c.

2. *Si* "if;" *ut si, quasi, ac si, æque ac si, perinde ut si, aliter ac si, velut si, tanquam, ceu,* "as if," expressing a *condition* or *supposition,* commonly take the subjunctive.

3. *Ut, licet, etiam si, quamvis,* "although;" *quin* for *qui non,* or *ut non,* or *quominus,* take the subjunctive.

4. *Antequam, priusquam,* "before;" *dum, donec, quoad,* "until," *modo, dum, dummodo,* "provided," and the particles of wishing, *utinam, O si, ut* or *uti,* for *utinam,* commonly take the subjunctive.

5. Interrogative words used indefinitely in dependent clauses, or containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

The words thus used are, the particles *an, ne, num, utrum, anne, annon;*—the adverbs *ubi, quo, unde, quorsum, quamdiu, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, quemadmodum, quomodo, ut, quam, quantopere;*—the adjectives *quantus, qualis, quot, quotus, uter; quis, qui, cujas,* &c.

Note.—In double questions, direct or indirect, expressed in English by "whether—or," the first is commonly made by *utrum,* or the enclitic *ne,* and the second by *an,* or *anne.* The first particle, however, is often omitted, but must be supplied in translating; as, *id frustra an ob rem faciam,* ("*whether*) I shall do this to no purpose *or* successfully." The English "or not" is made, in the second part, by *necne;* as, *dii utrum sint necne sint quæritur. Posset lege agi necne pauci quondam sciebant.* It is used also in direct questions; as, *sunt hæc tua verba necne?*

628.—*Obs.* 1. Many of these conjunctions are used also with the indicative mood. In such cases, they are to be regarded merely as connectives, or used adverbially, denoting circumstances of time, manner, &c.

629.—*Obs.* 2. Many other conjunctions are used, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive mood; such as, *quum* (or

cŭm), *etsi*, *tametsi* (*tamenetsi*), *quanquam*, *si*, *sin*, *ne*, *nĭsi*, *siquĭdem*, *quod*, *quia*, &c. *Quoniam*, *quando*, and *quandoquĭdem*, usually have the indicative.

630.—*Obs.* 3. *Quum* (or *cŭm*), when it signifies *time*, merely, takes the indicative, and is translated *when*; as, *tempus fuit quum homĭnes vagābantur*. When it denotes a *connection of thought*, implying dependence, it takes the subjunctive, and may be translated variously, according to the nature of the connection, *since*, *although*, *as soon as*, *seeing that*, &c.; as, *cŭm ea ĭta sint*, "*since* these things are so."

631.—*Obs.* 4. In narration, *quum* is joined with the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive, even when it relates to *time*, but the event denoted by the subjunctive, usually relates to that expressed in the clause on which the subjunctive depends, not only in regard to *time*, but also, in some sense, as a *cause*; as, *cum scīret Clodius ĭter necessarium Milōni esse Lanuvium, Rōmā subĭto ipse profectus est.*

632.—*Obs.* 5. The conjunction *ut*, is elegantly omitted after *vŏlo*, *nōlo*, *rŏgo*, *prĕcor*, *censeo*, *suadeo*, *lĭcet*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, and the like. Also, after the imperatives *sine*, *fac*, or *facĭto*; as, *prĕcor venias*, "I beg (that) you would come;" *fac facias*, "see (that) you do it." So also *ne* is omitted after the imperative *căve*; as, *cave facias*, "See thou do it *not*."

633.—*Obs.* 6. After the verbs *timeo*, *vereor*, and the like, *ut* is used in a negative sense, "that not," and *ne*, in an affirmative sense, "that;" as, *timeo ut faciat*, "I fear that he *will not* do it." *Timeo ne faciat*, "I fear that he *will* do it." In a few examples, however, *ut* seems to have an affirmative, and *ne*, a negative meaning. *Ne non*, after *timeo*, *vereor*, is equivalent to *ut non* after other verbs; as, *timeo ne non impetrem*, "I fear *that* I shall *not* obtain it."

634.—6. In oblique discourse (651 Exp.), the verb, in dependent clauses, takes the subjunctive after any conjunctive term.

---

§ 141. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER THE RELATIVE.

635.—RULE LV. The relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, requires the subjunctive, when it refers to an *indefinite*, *negative*, or *interrogative* word,—to words implying *comparison*,—or assigns the *reason*, *cause*, or *end* of that which precedes,—and also in all cases of *oblique narration*.

This General Rule may be subdivided into the following

SPECIAL RULES.

636.—*Rule* I. When the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* refers to

an *indefinite*, *negative*, or *interrogative* word, it requires the subjunctive mood; as,

Sunt (hŏmĭnes) qui dīcant, , *Some people* say.
Nēmo est qui haud intellĭgat, There is *no one who* does not understand.
Quis est qui utilia fugiat? *Who* is there *that* shuns what is useful?

637.—EXPLANATION.—This rule takes effect only when the antecedent is something indefinite, and when the relative clause is the predicate of the sentence, i. e. when it expresses what is affirmed or denied respecting the subject of the verb, and has for its antecedent, the indefinite, negative, or interrogative itself, and not any intervening word. These are indispensable conditions of this rule.

638.—*Obs.* 1. The indefinites referred to in this rule are the indefinite pronouns (127–1, and 128, except *quīdam*), and the periphrastic expressions, *est qui*, "some one," *sunt qui*, *fuĕrunt qui*, "some;" to which may be added the verbs *reperio*, *invenio*, *habeo*, *adsum*, *desum*, *venio*, and some others, used in a similar manner, by which indefinite expressions are formed nearly of the same import with *est qui*, *sunt qui*, &c.; as, *omnis ætas quod ăgat inveniet.*

639.—The negative antecedents most common under this rule are such as *nēmo est*, *nullus est*, *ūnus non est*, *alius non est*, or *extat*, *nihil est*, *nec est*, or *non quisquam est*, *vix ullus est*, *nec ullus est*, *vix decĭmus quisque est*, (or any other ordinal used in a similar manner,) *non multi sunt*, *non multum est;* also, *non est*, or *nihil est*, meaning "there is no cause, or reason why;" and also after *non* or *nihil habeo.* After these last, *quod* "which," must follow, governed by *propter* understood; as, *non est quod scrĭbas;* "there is no reason why you should write."

640.—The interrogative expressions in the antecedent clause under this rule are chiefly these: *Quis est? quantus est? ŭter est? ecquis est? numquis est? an quisquam est? an est alĭquis? quotusquisque est? quŏtus est? quot sunt? quam multi sunt?* And also, *quid est? numquid est?* "what cause?" as, *num quid est quod timeas?* "why should you fear?"

Note.—Interrogatives under this rule are of a general character, and usually imply a negation; as, *quis est qui faciat?* "who is there that does it?" i. e. "nobody does it."

641.—*Rule* II. The relative is followed by the subjunctive, when the relative and antecedent clauses involve a comparison, or when the latter expresses the purpose, object, or design, of something expressed by the former; as,

Dignus qui amētur, "worthy to be loved." *Quis tam esset āmens qui semper vivĕret?* "who would be so foolish as to live always?"

642.—EXPLANATION.—In all cases under this rule, the relative is equivalent to *ut*, with the personal pronoun representing the antecedent; i. e. it is used for *ut ĕgo*, *ut tu*, *ut ille*, *ut nos*, *ut vos*, *ut illi.* In such cases, *ut* with the personal pronoun, is frequently used instead of the relative. Here, also, the relative clause must belong, not to the subject, but to the predicate of the sentence, for in such cases only can it be resolved into *ut ĕgo*, &c.

643.—*Obs.* 2. The relative is used in this sense, and requires the subjunctive.

1st. When it comes after *dignus, indignus, idoneus,* and the like in the predicate; as, *patres, si dignum qui* (*ut ille*) *secundus ab Romŭlo numerētur, crearĭtis, auctōres fient.*

2d. When it follows *tam, tantus, adeo;* as, *quis est tam Lynceus, qui in tantis tenebris nihil offendat?* i. e. *ut in tantis,* &c., "who is so quick-sighted *that he* would not *stumble* in such darkness?"—In like manner when it follows *tālis, ejusmŏdi, hujusmŏdi,* the subjunctive is commonly used; as, *est innocentia affectio tālis animi qui nŏceat nemĭni.* Also, after *is, ille,* and *hic,* in the sense of *tālis* (123–2, b.); as, *non tu is es qui nescias,* "you are not *such a one as not to know.*" Sometimes, in such cases, *ut* takes the place of *qui;* as, *nĕque ĕnim is es, Catilīna, ut te pŭdor revocārit,* &c.

3d. When it follows a comparative with *quam;* as, *major sum quam cui possit fortūna nocēre.*

4th. When the relative clause expresses the *purpose, object,* or *design,* for which the person mentioned in the antecedent clause is *appointed,* or the thing spoken of is *possessed,* or *done;* as, *Lacedæmonii legātos Athēnas misērunt qui* (i. e. *ut illi*) *eum absentem accusārent.* In such sentences the relative and subjunctive may be properly rendered, *to, in order to;* thus, "the Lacedemonians sent ambassadors to Athens, *to accuse* (or *in order to accuse*) him in his absence." Sometimes here also, *ut* takes the place of the relative; as, *missus sum ut* (i. e. *qui*) *te adducĕrem.*

644.—*Obs.* 3. When *qui* combines with its signification as a relative, or when the preceding clause implies, a force equal to *so that, such that, the man to, such a man as,* it requires the subjunctive; as, *stultum est timēre quod vitāre non possis,* "it is foolish to fear *that which* (i. e. *such a thing as*) *you cannot* avoid." In all such cases, the antecedent clause conveys a vague and general idea, i. e. the person or things referred to are regarded as a *species* or class, rather than as individuals.

645.—*Rule* III. When the relative with its clause assigns the cause or reason of the action or event announced by the antecedent clause, it requires the subjunctive; as,

Peccavisse mihi videor qui a te decessĕrim, "I think that I have erred in having (or, *because* I) left you."

646.—EXPLANATION.—In all constructions of this kind, the relative is equivalent to *quum, quod, quia,* or *quoniam ĕgo, tu, is, nos,* &c., signifying "because," or "seeing that I," "thou," &c.

647.—*Obs.* 4. The relative has this force in the expressions *quippe qui, ut qui, utpŏte qui,* and consequently is followed by the subjunctive; as, *libros non contemno, equĭdem, quippe qui nunquam legĕrim,* "I do not, indeed, despise the books, *for* (or *because*) *I have never read* them."

648.—*Rule* IV. When *qui* possesses a power equal to *quanquam,* or *etsi is,* or to *si, mŏdo,* or *dummŏdo,* "although—if—

provided that he, she, it," &c., it requires the subjunctive mood; as,

Tu ăquam pumĭce postŭlas, q u i ipse s i t i a t, "you demand water from a pumice stone, *though* itself *is parched with thirst*." *Lăco, consilii quamvis egregii q u o d non ipse a f f e r r e t inimīcus*, "Laco was the enemy of any measure, however excellent, *if* (i. e. *provided that*) he himself *did not propose* it."

649.—*Rule* V. The relative *qui* takes the subjunctive after *ūnus* and *sōlus;* when they restrict the affirmation to a particular subject; as,

Hæc est u n a contentio q u æ adhuc permansĕrit, "this is the *only* dispute *which* has remained till this time."

650.—*Rule* VI. In *oblique* or *indirĕct* discourse, the relative requires the subjunctive mood; as,

Socrătes dicĕre solĕbat, omnes in eo q u o d s c i r e n t sătis esse eloquentes, "Socrates was accustomed to say, that all were eloquent enough in that *which they knew*."

651.—EXPLANATION.—Discourse is said to be *direct*, when a writer or speaker delivers his own sentiments,—*oblique*, when a person relates in his own language, what another speaker or writer said; an example will best illustrate this distinction.—Tacitus introduces Galgacus, addressing the Caledonian army as follows: "When I contemplate the causes of the war, and the necessity to which we are reduced, great is my confidence that this day, and this union of yours, will prove the beginning of universal liberty to Britain." This is the *direct* discourse. If, instead of introducing Galgacus himself, to speak his own speech, the historian had only told us what he said, he would have used the *oblique* or *indirect* style, thus: Galgacus said, "that when he contemplated the causes of the war, and the necessity to which they (the Roman army) were reduced, his confidence was great, that that day, and that union of theirs, would prove the beginning of universal liberty to Britain."

In the first of these, or the *direct* discourse, it will be observed that when the speaker refers to himself, he uses the *first* person, "I," "we." When he refers to those addressed, he uses the *second* person, "thou," "you,"—and that the leading verbs in Latin are all in the indicative mood, and independent of any previous word. But in the second or *oblique* discourse, the *third* person *only* is used, whether the speaker is said to refer to himself, or his hearers, or a third person. And the leading verbs in Latin, are in the infinitive mood, or in the subjunctive with *ut*, and, in either case, dependent on the verb with which the account is introduced such as, "he said," "stated," "replied," or the like. It is evident, therefore, that while in both forms, the same idea is expressed in nearly the same language, the construction of the sentence in each is entirely different; thus, in direct discourse: *Antonius inquit*, "*Ars ĕdrum rērum est quæ sciuntur*." Cic. *Quinctilian* relates the same thing in the *oblique* form; thus, "*Antonius ait, artem ĕdrum*

rĕrum esse quæ sciantur." Here, the leading verb in the direct form, is *est*, in the indicative mood, having no dependence on any previous word, and having its subject in the nominative case. In the *oblique* form, the same verb is in the infinitive, *esse;* it is dependent on *ait*, and has its subject in the accusative. In the *first*, the verb in the subordinate clause, is in the indicative, *sciuntur;* in the last, it is in the subjunctive mood, *sciantur*. Hence, the following general principle.

652.—In every unmixed example of *oblique narration*, two moods only are admissible, the *infinitive* and *subjunctive*, and consequently, as the relative is never employed but in the *secondary*, and subordinate members of a sentence, it must always, in oblique statements, be followed by the subjunctive.

653.—*Obs.* 5. In connection with this general principle, however, two things must be noticed:

1st. In *oblique* discourse, the narrator frequently introduces a remark of his own, for the purpose of explanation, but yet so closely interwoven with the discourse he is reporting, as to seem to be a part of it. Such remark is usually introduced with the relative, and the indicative, and may be detected by this construction: Thus, *Disseruit Cæsar, non quĭdem sibi ignāra quæ de Silāno vulgabantur, sed non ex rumōre statuendum*, "Cæsar replied 'that those things, indeed,' viz.: *which were rumored concerning Silanus*, 'were not unknown to him,'" &c. Tac. Here, the clause, *quæ de Silāno vulgabantur*, is not to be regarded as a part of what Cæsar said, but as a clause thrown in by the historian to inform his readers what things they were which Cæsar meant. But if the verb had been *vulgārentur*, it would have shown that it was a part of what Cæsar said.

2d. In animated *oblique* narration, the historian sometimes suddenly passes from the *oblique* to the *direct* discourse, and, instead of *reporting* the remarks of the speaker, introduces him, as it were, to speak for himself. This is always manifest by the transition, from the use of the infinitive and subjunctive, to that of the indicative, and from the use of the third person to denote the speaker, and the person addressed, to that of the first and second. The following is often quoted as an appropriate example of this. (Oblique) "*Sabīnæ mulĭeres dirimĕre infestas acies, hinc patres, hinc vĭros orantes," ne se sanguĭne nefando, socĕri, generīque respergērent; ne parricidio maculārent partus suos, nepōtum illi, lĭbĕrûm hi progenĭem.* (Direct) *Si pĭget affinitātis inter vos, si connubii pĭget, in nos vertĭte īras, nos causa belli, nos vulnĕrum ac cædium vĭris ac parentĭbus sŭmus, melius peribĭmus, quam sine altĕris vestrum viduæ aut orbæ vivēmus.* Liv I. 13.

654.—*Obs.* 6. A verb in the *Future-perfect* indicative, in direct discourse, will always take the pluperfect subjunctive, when the same sentence is thrown into the oblique form, whatever be the tense of the introductory verb; thus, *Dabĭtur quodcunque optāris.* Ov.; in direct discourse, is thus related by Cicero, in the oblique form: *Sol Phæthonti filio factūrum esse dixit quidquid optâsset.*

655.—*Obs.* 7. To this construction may be referred the subjunctive connected by a relative or casual conjunction with the preceding verb in

any of its parts, for the purpose of expressing, not what the writer asserts himself, but what is alleged by others; as, *Socrates accusatus est quod corrumpĕret juventūtem*, "Socrates was accused, because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth." The indicative here would assert, on the part of the writer, that Socrates *did* corrupt the youth.

Note.—The verbs *pŭto, dīco, arbĭtror*, and the like, are sometimes used, especially by Cicero, in the subjunctive, with the verb following in the infinitive, when properly they should be in the indicative, (meaning, "as they said, thought, &c.") and the verb, in the clauses dependent on them, in the subjunctive; as, *Rediit paulo post, quod se oblītum nescio quid dicĕret*, Cic., "He (Hannibal) returned soon after, because, as he said, he had forgotten something;" for *quod, ut dicĕbat, oblītus esset nescio quid. Ementiundo quæ se . . . audisse dicĕrent*, Sall., "By forging stories which, as they said, they had heard;" for *quæ, ut dicĕbant, audivissent.*

656.—*Obs.* 8. When an infinitive or subjunctive mood has a clause connected with it by a relative or other connecting word, for the purpose of restricting the predicate, otherwise indefinite, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive mood; as,

Quid ĕnim pŏtest esse tam perspicuum, quam esse aliquod nūmen quo hæc regantur, "For what can be so clear, as that there is some divinity *by whom* these things *are governed?*"

657.—§ 142. CONSTRUCTION OF THE IMPERATIVE.

1. The Imperative mood is used to command, exhort, &c., 149. Its subject, with which it agrees by Rule IV., is the person or persons addressed in the command, &c., and hence, it is properly used only in the *second person.* In Latin, as well as in Greek, the imperative mood has a distinct form for the third person; it is, however, but seldom used, and chiefly in the enacting of laws, having the force of a command on those for whom they are designed.

2. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *ne*, and *nor* by *nĕve;* as, *Ne crēde colōri.* Virg. *Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelīto, neve urīto.* Cic.

3. Instead of the simple imperative, sometimes *fac* or *căve*, with the subjunctive, are used, and *nōli* with the infinitive; as, *fac venias*, "come;" *căve existīmes*, "do not think;" *Nōli timēre*, "do not fear." For other tenses, used imperatively, see 150.

---

§ 143. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

[For the tenses of the infinitive mood, in connection with different tenses of the verb, see § 47.]

658.—The infinitive mood, in Latin, is used in two ways; *First*, as a verbal noun, and *Second*, as a verb. As a verbal *noun*, it has no subject; as a *verb*, it always has. Without a subject, it cannot form a proposition,

or express an affirmation; with a subject, it always does. In the first case, it comes under the regimen of the verb, either alone as a verbal noun, or with the words depending upon it, as a *substantive phrase*. In the second, it comes under its regimen, only in connection with its subject, as a distinct, though dependent proposition, or *substantive clause*. Hence, all that belongs to the construction of this mood, may be comprised in what relates to the use of it, in these two ways.

---

§ 144. I. THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT A SUBJECT.

659.—The infinitive without a subject, may be regarded as a verbal noun in the singular number, neuter gender (271), and in form indeclinable, but differing from all other nouns, inasmuch as it involves the idea of *time*, and has all the power of governing that belongs to the verb. The character of the infinitive as a noun, is manifest from its being used in almost every way that a noun is. It is used,

1. As the nominative to a verb; as, *invidēre* (*invidia*) *non cădit in sapientem. Didicisse fidelĭter artes emollit mŏres.* Ov. *Utĭnam emŏri fortūnis meis honestus exĭtus esset;* or as the nominative after the verb; as, *sive illud ĕrat sine funĕre ferri; bĕne vivĕre est bis vivĕre.*

2. As a case in apposition to a preceding nominative; as, *res ĕrat spectacŭlo digna, vidēre Xerxem,* &c.; "it was a *thing* worthy of being seen, *to see* Xerxes," &c.

3. It is used as a genitive after substances and adjectives; as, *tempus est abīre,* for *abeundi;—soli cantāre perīti Arcădes,* equivalent to *cantandi* or *cantûs.* Rules VII. IX.

4. As a dative after adjectives, &c.; thus, *et vos servīre măgis quam imperāre parāti estis.* Rule XVI.

5. As an accusative after an active verb; as, *da mihi fallĕre,* Hor.; *terram cum prīmum ărant, proscindĕre appellant; cum itĕrum, offringĕre dicunt.* Varr.—After a preposition; as, *nihil intĕrest inter dăre et accipĕre.* Sen. *Præter plorāre.* Hor. *Præter lŏqui.* Liv.

6. As a vocative; as, *O vivĕre nostrum,* for *O vīta nostra.*

7. As an ablative in various constructions; as, *dignus amāri;* as the case absolute; thus, *Audīto rēgem in Siciliam tendĕre.* This example, however, has a subject *rēgem,* Rule XXIII.

8. It has an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as, *scīre tuum nihil est; ipsum dicĕre nunquam non ineptum est,* &c. Cic. In this way, we may account for the poetic "*dulce lŏqui,*" "*ridĕre decŏrum,*" &c.

9. It governs the genitive like a noun; as, *cujus non dimicāre fuit vincĕre.*

Note.—It is however, chiefly as the subject or the object of a verb, in the nominative or accusative, that it is used as a noun. The examples

above (3, 4, 7,) in which it is used, where a noun or pronoun would be put in the genitive, or dative, or ablative, are of rare occurrence, and in some cases may be otherwise explained. The infinitive as a noun, in the nominative or accusative, is subject to the following Rules:

660.—Rule LVI. One verb being the subject of another, is put in the infinitive; as,

Facile est quĕri,	*To complain* is easy.
Mentīri turpe est,	*To lie* is base.

661.—EXPLANATION.—In the first example the subject or thing spoken of is expressed by the infinitive *quĕri*, which is therefore the nominative to the verb *est*. A noun used instead of *quĕri* would have to be in the nominative case. In such sentences, it is manifestly improper to say that *est* governs *quĕri*, just as it would be improper to say the verb governs its nominative. This rule applies also to the infinitive with a subject.

662.—*Obs.* 1. A proper attention to this rule will show that many verbs considered impersonal, or thought to be used impersonally, are not really so, but have an infinitive or a clause of a sentence for their subject or nominative; thus, *nec profuit Hydræ crescĕre per damnum*, "nor did it profit the Hydra to grow by his wounds." Ovid. Here, instead of saying that *profuit* is used impersonally, and governs *crescĕre* in the infinitive; the true construction is, that *profuit* is used personally, and has *crescĕre* for its nominative. So, the following, *cădit in eundem misērēri et invidēre.* Cic. *Vacāre culpâ magnum est solatium; neque est te fallĕre quidquam*, &c., 307.

663.—Rule LVII. One verb governs another, as its object, in the infinitive; as,

Cupio discĕre,	I desire *to learn.*

664.—EXPLANATION.—The infinitive mood under this rule is equivalent to a noun in the case which the preceding verb usually governs: Thus, in the example, *cupio* is a transitive active verb and governs *discĕre*, as if it were a noun in the accusative. The meaning is, that a verb, used as the object of another, without a conjunction or connective word, must be put in the infinitive. This Rule also applies to the infinitive with a subject.

Note.—In all cases of the infinitive without a subject, under this rule, the infinitive expresses an act, or state, of the subject of the preceding verb.

665.—*Obs.* 2. The infinitive without a subject, is used only after certain verbs, especially such as denote *desire, ability, intention* or *endeavor*; such as, *cupio, opto, vŏlo, nōlo, mālo;—possum, queo, nequeo, valeo, cogĭto, cōnor, tendo, disco, doceo, debeo*, &c. By the poets it is used after *fŭge, parce* for *nōli*, and sometimes after *caveo, fugio, gaudeo*, &c. In a few instances it is used after verbs of motion, to denote a purpose; as, *introĭit vidēre*, "he came *to see*." Ter. *Iniit consilia tollĕre rēges*, "he devised a plan *to destroy* the kings."

666.—*Obs.* 3. In many cases, the infinitive after such verbs may be changed for the infinitive with a subject; as, *cupio me esse clementem.* Cic.; for *esse clemens*, or *clementem.* 326. Or, for the subjunctive with *ut*, or *ne;* as, *sententiam ne dicĕret recusavit*, for *sententiam dicĕre.*

667.—*Obs.* 4. The infinitive without a subject is also used after adjectives, and nouns. So used, it is equivalent to a noun in the case governed by such adjective or noun. See examples, 659–3, 4, 6.

668.—*Obs.* 5. Sometimes the infinitive is understood; as, *ei provinciam Numidiam populus jussit;* sc. *dări.*

Note 1.—When the verbs *possum, vŏlo, nōlo, mālo,* in the indicative or subjunctive, are translated by the English auxiliaries *can, will, will not, will rather;* or in the past tense by *could, would,* &c., the infinitive following is translated without *to* before it; as, *pŏtest fĭĕri,* "it can be done;" *vŏlo īre,* "I will go;" *mālo facĕre,* "I would rather do it;" *nolīte timēre,* "do not fear."

Note 2.—The present infinitive is generally translated as the perfect, without *to*, when it comes after the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect, of *possum, vŏlo, nōlo, mālo,* translated *could, would, would not, would rather;* and with *to* after the same tenses of *debeo* and *oportet*, translated *ought;* as, *melius fĭĕri non potuit,* "it could not have been done better;" *volui dicĕre,* "I would have said;" *sumĕre arma nōluit,* "he would not have taken arms;" *divīdi oportuit,* "it ought to have been divided." &c.

Note 3.—After verbs denoting *to see, hear, feel,* and the like, the present infinitive is sometimes rendered by the English present participle; as, *audīvi eum dicĕre,* "I heard him saying." Also when the infinitive is the subject of another verb; as, *morāri periculōsum est,* "delaying (to delay) is dangerous."

The Historical Infinitive.

669.—*Obs.* 6. The verb governing the infinitive is sometimes omitted, especially is this the case in historical narration, when the infinitive follows a nominative case in the sense of the imperfect indicative, or the perfect indefinite; as, *invidēre omnes mihi,* "*all envied* me." Ter. *At Romāni, dŏmi militiæque intenti, festināre, parāre, alius alium hortāri.* Sall. When thus used, it is supposed to be governed by *cœpit* or *cœpērunt* understood. Cases occur, however, in which this supplement cannot be made; as, *verum ingenium ejus haud absurdum; posse facĕre versus, jocum movēre,* &c., (310.) Sall. The historical infinitive and the imperfect, are often connected in the same construction; as, *Albīnus .... senātum de fœdĕre consulēbat; et tămen intĕrim exercĭtui supplementum scribĕre .... auxilia arcessēre, denīque mŏdis omnĭbus festinare.* Sall., Jug. 39.

670.—§ 145. II. THE INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT.

The infinitive with a subject possesses the character of the verb, and affirms of its subject as in the indicative or the subjunctive mood; but

only in subordinate and dependent propositions. These propositions themselves have a substantive character, and generally stand in the relation of substantives to a verb, or phrase, on which they depend; sometimes as a nominative to, or the subject of the verb, but generally as an object or an accusative after it. Thus used, they may be called *substantive clauses*—and as such, they fall under the two preceding rules. Thus:

1st. The infinitive with a subject must be considered as the nominative when it is the subject of a sentence, i. e. when anything is declared of it; as, *te nŏn istud audīvisse mīrum est*, "*that you have not heard that* is wonderful." Here, *te non istud audīvisse* stands as the nominative to *est*. Rule LVI. See 661.

2d. The infinitive with its subject is the accusative or object after a verb, when it has for its direct object, the idea expressed by a dependent infinitive clause, or when such clause takes the place of a noun or pronoun governed by the verb; as, *mīror te non scribĕre*, "I wonder *that you do not write*." Here, *te non scribĕre* stands as the object of *mīror*, which governs it as an accusative by Rule LVII, or XX. See 664.

Note.—The verbs which admit an infinitive with its subject as their direct object, are those which denote an action of our senses, or internal faculties, or such as denote *feeling, knowing, thinking*, or *saying*; as, *audio, video, sentio, cognosco, intelligo, memĭni, pūto, dūco, dĭco, prōdo, scrĭbo, promitto*, and the like. These seldom take a conjunction (*ut* or *quod*) with the indicative or subjunctive as their object. See Obs. 5, et seq.

671.—RULE LVIII. The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; as,

Gaudeo te valĕre, I am glad that you are well.

672.—EXPLANATION.—The subject of the infinitive is the person or thing spoken of in the dependent clause, and may be, as in Rule IV., a noun, a pronoun, &c., and is always to be in the accusative case; except as in 669.

Under this Rule, the infinitive with its subject forms a distinct proposition, and is equivalent to the indicative, or subjunctive mood in English, together with the connective "*that*." Thus, in the example, *te valĕre* contains the simple proposition, "You are well." The equivalent of the English "that," connecting it as a subordinate clause with the preceding verb, is implied in the infinitive form. If the infinitive stand after an accusative which does not form with it a distinct proposition, i. e. which is not its subject, it does not belong to this Rule, but the accusative is governed by Rule XX.; as, *Prōteus pĕcus ăgit altos visĕre montes*. HOR. Hence,

OBSERVATIONS.

673.—*Obs.* 1. The English particle "*that*," may be called the sign of the accusative before the infinitive, being used to connect the infinitive clause with the preceding. It may often be omitted, however, in translating, as it frequently is in English; thus, *aiunt rĕgem adventāre*, "they say the king is coming, *or*, "that the king is coming."

674.—*Obs* 2. The accusative subject, in Latin, is translated by the nominative in English. Hence, the accusative of the relative pronoun, referring to persons must be rendered *who*, not *whom*; as, *quem confectum vulneribus dixĭmus*, "*who*, we said, was exhausted with his wounds."

Note.—The infinitive with its subject in the accusative is sometimes translated in the same form in English; as, *cupio te venīre*, "I wish *you to come*;" *quos discordāre novĕrat*, "*whom* he had known *to differ*;" *eum vocāri jussit*, "he ordered *him to be called*."

N. B.—For the various ways of rendering the different tenses of the infinitive after different tenses of the indicative or subjunctive, see at length, 180.

675.—*Obs.* 3. When the subject of the infinitive is the same with the subject of the preceding verb, it is seldom expressed, unless required to be emphatic; as, *pollicĭtus sum scriptūrum* (*esse*) sc. *me*, "I promised *that* I would write." After verbs signifying *to be accustomed, to dare, I can, I ought*, the infinitives *esse, judicāri, vidēri*, &c., having the same subject with the preceding verb, have an adjective or noun after them in the nominative case, indicating that the subject of the infinitive understood is regarded as a nominative according to the Greek construction. Gr. Gr. § 175. *Exc.* Thus, *sŏlet tristis vidēri; aude sapiens esse; dĕbes esse diligens.* See also, 325–328, and 733–3, 3d.

676.—*Obs.* 4. When the preceding verb is in the passive voice, the subject of the infinitive may be changed into the subject of that verb, or remain unchanged in the accusative, the passive verb being used impersonally, or rather having the infinitive clause for its subject; thus, *matrem Pausaniæ eo tempŏre vixisse dicĭtur*, or, *māter Pausaniæ eo tempŏre vixisse dicĭtur*, "it is said *that the mother* of Pausanias was living at that time," *or*, "*the mother* of Pausanias is said to have been living," &c. Gr. Gr., § 175, *Obs.* 3.

Note.—When a relative clause has the same verb as the proposition with the infinitive on which the relative clause depends, but without the repetition of the verb, the subject of the verb in the relative clause is put by attraction in the accusative; as, *Platonem ferunt ĭdem sensisse quod Pythagoram*, "They say that Plato thought as *Pythagoras* did." But, if the verb of the relative clause is expressed, its subject must be in the nominative; as, *Platonem ferunt .... ĭdem sensisse quod Pythagoras sensit.*

The same analogy is observed with the conjunction *quam* after a comparative. See 470, 1st and 2d.

677.—*Obs.* 5. The accusative with the infinitive, in a subordinate clause, is in some cases equivalent to the subjunctive with *ut* or *quod*, "that," preceding; as, *Optāvit ut in currum patris tollerētur*, or, *Optāvit se in currum patris tolli*, "He (Phæthon) desired *that he should be taken up into his father's chariot*." *Gaudeo te valēre*, or *gaudeo quod valeas*, "I am glad *that you are well*." But though, in a few cases, the one expression may be changed for the other, usage has given so decided a preference in some cases to the one form, and in others to the other, that such change would be improper; thus,

1st. When the dependent clause expresses *purpose* or *design*, or when "*that*" is equivalent to "*in order that*," "*so that*," *ut* with the subjunctive is used. 627–1. 2d.

2d. After verbs of *endeavoring, aiming, accomplishing*, such as *facio, efficio, perficio*, &c., the subjunctive with *ut* is always used. Hence arises the use of *facĕre ut*, instead of the indicative, to denote a fact; thus, *fēcit ut dimittĕret milites*, is equivalent to *dimīsit milites*.

3d. Verbs signifying to *request, demand, admonish, advise, commission, encourage, command*, and the like, usually take the subjunctive with *ut*, which may generally be rendered as the infinitive; as, *præcēpit ut īrem*, "He commanded *me to go*."

Note.—In narrative, dependent clauses, expressing obliquely the wish, command, or message of another, whether the verb be in the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, or in the infinitive with a subject, or both in connection, often depend on a word denoting *to say, saying*, understood, or implied in the leading verb; as, *Ad Bocchum nuntios mittit* (*qui dicĕrent ut*) *quam primum copias adducĕret; prœlii faciundi tempus adesse.* Sall. Jug., 97. *Verba făcit* (*dĭcens*) *se arma cepisse.* Id. 102.

4th. *Ut* with the subjunctive follows verbs signifying *to happen, to occur*, &c., as, *fit, incĭdit, occurrit, contingit; est, restat, supĕrest*, &c. 627–1. 4th.

5th. Verbs signifying *willingness, unwillingness, permission, necessity*, &c., commonly take the accusative with the infinitive. Also, generally, verbs denoting *seeing, hearing, knowing, feeling, thinking, saying*, &c., but sometimes they take the subjunctive.

6th. When the dependent clause expresses, not a thought or conception only, but a fact, the verb is put in the indicative or subjunctive with *quòd*; as, *Inter causas malōrum nostrōrum est quod vivĭmus ad exempla.*

7th. After verbs denoting a feeling of pain or pleasure, and the outward expression of those feelings, such as, *gaudeo, delector, angor, doleo*, and the like, *quod*, "that," in the sense of "because," with the indicative or subjunctive is used, or the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Quod spīrātis* (or *vos spirāre*) *indignantur.* Whether the indicative or subjunctive is to be used, depends on whether the proposition expresses a fact, or only a conception of the mind.

678.—*Obs.* 6. After such verbs as *existīmo, pŭto, spēro, affirmo, suspĭcor*, &c., the place of the future infinitive is elegantly supplied by *fŏre*, or *futūrum esse*, followed by *ut* with the subjunctive; as, *Nunquam putāvi* fŏre ut *supplex ad te* venīrem; for (*me*) *ventūrum esse.*

This construction is necessary when the verb has no supine, and consequently no future infinitive active. See 179–9. *Fŏre* is sometimes used with the perfect participle, to denote a future action in the passive voice; as, *Quòd vidĕret nomĭne pācis bellum involūtum fŏre.*

679.—*Obs.* 7. The verb on which the infinitive depends is sometimes omitted, especially in interrogations, or exclamations, expressive of indignation; as, *Mĕne incepto desistĕre nec posse*, &c. Virg. In such cases, some such expression as *credĭbile est* is understood.

680.—*Exc.* The historical infinitive has its subject in the nominative (310 and 669); as, *Fāma præclāra esse*, "*His fame* was illustrious." Sall.

§ 146. CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.

[For the tenses, and the use of the participles in certain connections, see § 49.]

681.—RULE LIX. Participles, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

Hŏmo cărens fraude, A man wanting guile.
Pax tantum amāta, Peace so greatly loved.

682.—REM. Participles together with gerunds and supines being parts of the verb, govern the case of their own verbs; so that no separate rule for the government of cases by these, is at all necessary.

OBSERVATIONS.

683.—*Obs.* 1. The verbs *do, reddo, vŏlo, cŭro, facio, habeo, comperio,* with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to the compound tenses in English, and other modern languages; thus, *Habeo compertum,* for *compĕri,* "I have found;" *Mīsam īram faciet,* for *īram mittet,* &c.

684.—*Obs.* 2. The perfect passive participle is often used, to supply the place of a verbal noun, when such a noun is wanting, or but seldom used; as, *Hæ lĭtĕræ recitātæ magnum luctum fecērunt,* "The *reading of this letter,* (not "this letter being read") caused great mourning." So, *Captum Tarentum,* "The taking of Tarentum;" *receptus Hannĭbal,* "the reception of Hannibal." *Ab urbe condĭta,* "from the building of the city."

685.—*Obs.* 3. The future active participle is frequently used, to denote the purpose or design of an action, and is in such case rendered *to, in order to;* as, *ad Jŏvem Hammōnem pergit consultūrus de origĭne sŭâ,* "he goes to Jupiter Ammon *to* (or *in order to*) *consult* him about his origin." So also the present; as, *pĕtens veniam vēnit.*

686.—*Obs.* 4. The future participle in *dus,* also, denotes a purpose, when joined with verbs signifying *to give, to deliver, to agree for, to have, to receive, to undertake,* &c.; as, *Testamentum tĭbi trādit legendum,* "he delivers his will to you *to be read;*" So, *his aëra dĕdit habendum.*

687.—*Obs.* 5. The participle in *dus,* generally implies the idea of *propriety, necessity,* or *obligation.* This is almost always the case when it agrees with the subject of a sentence; as, *Delenda est Carthāgo,* "Carthage *must be destroyed.*" Sometimes, also, when it agrees with words not in the subject; as, *Facta narrābas dissimulanda tibi,* "You were relating (things which) *ought to have been concealed* by you." The *doer* in such constructions, when expressed, must be in the dative. 531.

Note.—In some cases, the participle in *dus,* is used as a present participle passive. 182, *Note* 3.

688.—*Obs.* 6. Participles are often used instead of a dependent clause, to express some condition or explanatory circumstance usually introduced, in English, by a relative pronoun, or the particles *as, when, although, since,*

while, and the like; as, *Cæsar hostes in fŭgam conjectos persecūtus est*, "Cæsar pursued the enemy *who had been put to flight*." *Curio ad fŏcum sedenti*, "To Curius *as he was sitting by the fire*." *Dionysius, Syracūsis expulsus, Corinthi pŭeros docēbat*, "Dionysius, *when he was expelled* from Syracuse," &c.

689.—*Obs.* 7. A participle is joined with another verb, and in the same case with its subject, for the two following purposes, viz.:

1st. It is used simply to connect an accompanying with the main action, whether simultaneous or antecedent, in the same subject. Thus used, the participle and verb may be rendered as two verbs connected by a conjunction; as, *vēnit ad me clamĭtans*, "he came to me *and cried out*," lit., *crying out*, *Cæsar hostes aggressus fugāvit*, "Cæsar *attacked and defeated* the enemy."

2d. Sometimes, as in Greek, it is used to connect an accompanying with the main action, in the same subject, as the *cause, manner*, or *means* of effecting it; as, *hoc faciens vīvam mĕlius*, "*by doing this* I will live better." Hor. So used, it is equivalent to the ablative Gerund.

When a participle does not refer to some leading subject in the proposition, but to a new subject introduced, and not depending on any word in the sentence, the participle is put with that new subject, in what is called—

THE CASE ABSOLUTE.

690.—Rule LX. A substantive with a participle, whose case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute; as,

Sōle oriente fugiunt tenebræ, { *The sun rising*, or *while the sun rises*, darkness flies away.

691.—EXPLANATION.—This Rule properly affects the substantive only, with which the participle then agrees by Rule LIX.

692.—*Obs.* 8. This construction is much more frequent in Latin, than in other languages, partly, because there is no perfect participle in the active voice. When, therefore, in connection with an active or deponent verb, a past act of its subject is to be expressed by the participle, the perfect participle passive must be used; and hence, the *object* of the act must be introduced as a new subject, which, having no dependence on any word in the sentence, must, under the rule, be put in the *ablative absolute*. Thus, in English we say: Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, followed with all his forces. There being no perfect participle in Latin corresponding to "having sent," which would agree with *Cæsar*, in the nominative case, this clause must be changed into the passive form; thus, *Cæsar, equĭtātu præmisso, subsequebātur*, &c., "*literally*, Cæsar, *the cavalry being sent before*, followed," &c. Hence,

Rem.—When in this construction, the act expressed by the perfect participle passive, is an act of the subject of the leading verb, it is better to render it into English by the perfect participle active; thus, *Cæsar, his dictis, profectus est*, "Cæsar *having said these things* departed."

693.—As the perfect participle of deponent verbs has an active sig

nification, it is not necessary to resort to such a change in the use of them. Thus, *Cæsar hæc locūtus concilium dimīsit*, "*Cæsar, having said* these things, dismissed the council." With the participle of a verb, not deponent, the passive form and the ablative would be used thus; *Cæsar his dictis, concilium dimīsit*, &c., "Cæsar, *these things being said*, dismissed the council."—The first of these expressions, besides being more direct, is also much more definite; for here, there is no doubt as to who said the things referred to, but in the second, it is left in doubt, whether the things referred to were spoken by *Cæsar* or by *some other*. This doubt can be removed only by the context, or by express mention of the doer, which is not often done. In the following sentence, the two forms are combined: *Cæsar omnium remōtis ĕquis, cohortātus suos prœlium commīsit*.—So, *agros Remōrum depopulāti, omnĭbus vīcis ædificiisque incensis*. Cæs.

Note.—A few instances occur in which this construction is used when there is no change of subject, and where a different case would have expressed the same thing; thus, *legio ex castris Varrōnis, adstante et inspectante ipso*, for *adstantis et inspectantis ipsius*.

694.—*Obs.* 9. The ablative absolute, in the case of deponent, as well as of other verbs, is used to indicate the order and connection of events narrated, as in the above examples; or to mark the *time* of action by reference to that of another action; as, *Pythagŏras, Tarquinio Superbo regnante, in Italiam vēnit*, "Pythagŏras came into Italy in *the reign of Tarquin the Proud*." In all such cases, it is equivalent to the subjunctive with a connective word. Thus, *his dictis*, in the former example, is equivalent to *quum hæc dixisset—Tarquinio Superbo regnante*, to *quum Tarquinius Superbus regnāret;* and so of others.

695.—*Obs.* 10. The verb *sum* having no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and adjective, are used in the case absolute without a participle, which is supplied in English by the word *being;* thus, *se dūce*, "he (being) leader;" *se consŭle*, "he (being) consul," or "in his consulship;" so, *C. Duillio et Cn. Cornelio Asĭnâ consulĭbus*.

696.—*Obs.* 11. Some word, phrase, or clause of a sentence, sometimes supplies the place of the substantive, and has a participle with it in the ablative; as, *nondum comperto quam regiōnem hostes petīssent;—audīto Darium appropinquāre;—vāle dicto*, &c.

697.—*Obs.* 12. Sometimes the noun is understood; as, *parto quod avēbas*. Sometimes a plural substantive is joined with a singular participle; as, *nōbis præsente*. For the construction of Gerundives, see next section.

698.—§ 147. GERUNDS* AND GERUNDIVES.

The Gerund is a verbal noun, in the singular number, governed in the oblique cases as other nouns, and having the same power of government as

---

* Some Grammarians, who regard the gerund as a verbal noun, speak of it as such only in the oblique cases. They think that the nominative of the verbal is supplied by the infinitive mood, and that which is called the nomi-

the verb. As, therefore, the rules which apply to the construction of nouns and verbs, apply to the gerund, it is unnecessary to repeat them here. All that is peculiar to the construction of the gerund, is comprised in the following Rules and Observations.

699.—RULE LXI.—The verb *Est* with the gerund for its subject, implies necessity, and governs the dative of the doer; as,

Nom.	*Legendum est mihi,*	I must read, lit. reading is to me.
Nom.	*Moriendum est omnibus,*	All must die, lit. dying is to all.
Acc.	*Scio moriendum esse mihi,*	I know that I must die, lit. that dying is to me.

700.—EXPLANATION. The dative here is governed by *est*, according to R. II (394.) In the first and second examples, the gerund in the nominative is the subject of *est*, which agrees with it by R. IV. (308.) In the third example, the gerund is in the accusative, and the subject of *esse*, by R. LVIII. (671.) The necessity implied in this construction is stronger than that expressed by the participle in *dus*, the latter implying only that a thing *is to be* done, or *should be done*,—the former that it *must be* done. See 214–9.

701.—*Obs.* 1. The dative of the doer in this construction is often understood; as, *Orandum est* (*t i b i*) *ut sit sāna mens in corpŏre sāno.*

702.—*Obs.* 2. The gerund in *di*, of the genitive case, is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi,	Time of reading, 332.
Cupĭdus discendi,	Desirous of learning, 349.

703.—*Obs.* 3. The gerund in *do*, of the dative case, is governed by adjectives, signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

Charta utĭlis scribendo,	Paper used for writing, 382.

Sometimes it is governed by verbs; as, *adesse s c r i b e n d o.* CIC. *Aptat h a b e n d o ensem.* VIRG. *Is f ī n i s c e n s e n d o factus est.*

704.—*Obs.* 4. The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative case,

---

native of the gerund, is really the neuter of the participle in *dus*, in a passive sense, joined with the verb *est* used impersonally. Thus, *studendum est mihi*, they think should be literally rendered "it is to be studied by me." Though this solution is plausible, and would seem to answer in many cases, there are others in which we, at least, cannot see how it could be applied. It cannot be applied unless the participle in *dus* in *all cases* has, or may have, a passive sense; but of this there is no evidence, and facts are opposed to it. Thus, it will hardly be admitted as a literal rendering of *moriendum est omnibus*, to say "it is to be died by all," and it certainly cannot be so used in those examples in which it governs the same case that it does in its active sense; thus, *utrum p ā c e nōbis an b e l l o esset utendum.* CIC. *Quum suo cuique j u d i c i o utendum sit.* Indeed, the fact that gerunds, in all cases, do govern the case of their own verb, seems to be opposed to their being considered as parts of the passive participle in *dus*.

when not the subject of the infinitive, is governed by the prepositions, *ad*, *inter*, &c.; as,

Inter docendum, In time of teaching.

705.—*Obs.* 5. The gerund in *do*, of the ablative case, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

Pœna a peccando absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

Or, without a preposition, as the ablative of manner, or cause; as,

Memoria excolendo augētur, The memory is improved by exercising it.
Defessus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

706.—*Obs.* 6. The gerund, as a verbal noun, resembles the infinitive, and is often put for it; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legĕre*. The gerund, however, is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidium vocarētur ad imperandum*—"*to receive orders*;" *ūrit videndo*,—"*by being seen*," i. e. *dum vidētur*.

CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDIVES.

707.—LXII. Gerunds governing the accusative, are elegantly turned into gerundives in *dus*, which, with the sense of the gerund, instead of governing, agree with their substantive in gender, number, and case; as,

Gerund,	*Tempus petendi pācem*,	Time of seeking peace.
Gerundive,	*Tempus petendæ pācis*,	
Gerund,	*Ad petendum pācem*,	To seeking peace.
Gerundive,	*Ad petendam pācem*,	
Gerund,	*A petendo pācem*,	From seeking peace.
Gerundive,	*A petendâ pāce*,	

708.—EXPLANATION.—This rule applies only to the oblique cases. In the first of these examples, the Gerund *petendi* is governed in the genitive by *tempus* according to Rule VI., 332, and then governs *pacem* in the accusative by Rule XX., 486. In the gerundive form, the genitive *pācis* is governed by *tempus*, by Rule VI., 332, and the gerundive *petendæ* agrees with it by Rule II., 263. In the gerund form, the *gerund* is governed, and then governs the noun. In the gerundive form, the *noun* is governed, and then the gerundive agrees with it by R. II. In order to change from the gerund to the gerundive, it is necessary only to change the accusative of the noun, into the case of the gerund, and then make the gerundive agree with it; and from the gerundive to the gerund, change the noun into the accusative, and the gerundive into the gerund, in the same case as before.

The following are examples to be changed:

GEN. *Consilia urbis delendæ;—civium trucidandōrum;—nomĭnis Romāni extinguendi*

DAT. *Perpetiendo labōri idoneus;—capessendæ reipublĭcæ habĭlis;—nātus miserĭæ ferendo;—ad miserĭas ferendas;—onĕri ferendo aptus.*

ACC. and AB. *Ad defendendam Rōmam;—ab oppugnando Capuam;—ad collocandum signa;—in diripiendis castris.*

709.—*Obs.* 7. Instead of the gerundive in the genitive plural, to agree with a noun in that case, the gerund in the genitive singular is often retained, probably for the sake of Euphony; as, *Fuit exemplōrum eligendi potestas.* CIC. *Facultas agrōrum condonandi; sui* (pl.) *condonandi*, instead of *eligendōrum, condonandōrum.* Also, sometimes when the noun is singular and feminine; as, *ejus* (fem.) *videndi cupĭdus.* TER.

710.—*Obs.* 8. The gerunds of verbs, which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the gerundive, except those of *medeor, ūtor, abūtor, fruor, fungor,* and *potior;* as, *spes potiundi urbe,* or *potiundæ urbis;* but we always say, *Cupĭdus subveniendi tĭbi*, never *tui.*

711.—*Obs.* 9. After *esse, fŏre,* the gerund and the gerundive in the genitive (364), are used, to express tendency to a thing, or serving a certain purpose; as, *Regium imperium initio conservandæ libertātis, atque augendæ reipublĭcæ fuĕrat.* SALL., Cat. VI., "The regal government at first *had served the purpose of preserving* liberty, and *increasing* the state," [*Aiēbant*] *ea prodendi imperii Romāni, tradendæ Hannibăli victoriæ esse,* "They said that these things *had a tendency to betray* the Roman government, and to *give* the victory to Hannibal." LIV. *Quum animadvertisset plerăque dissolvendārum religiōnum esse,* "When he had perceived that most of them *tended to destroy* religion." LIV.

---

§ 148. CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in* UM.

712.—RULE LXIII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulātum, He hath gone to walk.

So, *Ducĕre cohortes prædātum.* LIV. *Nunc vĕnio irrīsum domĭnum? Quod in rem tuam opĭtumum factu arbĭtror, te id admonĭtum venio.* PLAUT.

713.—*Obs.* 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo,* to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *it se perdĭtum,* the same with *id ăgit,* or *opĕram dat, ut se perdat,* "he is bent on his own destruction." TER. So, *ut perdĭtum eātis*=*ut perdātis; ereptum eunt,*=*eripiunt.* SALL. This supine with *īri,* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the future infinitive passive; as, *an credēbas illam sine tuā opĕrā īri deductum dŏmum?* Which may be thus resolved; *an credēbas īri* (*a te,* or *ab aliquo*) *deductum* (i. e. *ad deducendum*) *illam dŏmum.* TER. The supine here may be considered as a verbal substantive governing the accusative, like the gerund.

714.—*Obs.* 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides those of motion; as, *dĕdit filiam nuptum; cantātum provocēmus.* Ter. *Revocātus defensum patriam; divīsit copias hiemātum.* Nep.

715.—*Obs.* 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *vēnit orātum opem:* or 1. *Vēnit ŏpem orandi causā*, or *ŏpis orandæ.* 2. *Vēnit ad orandum ŏpem*, or *ad orandam ŏpem.*

2. *The Supine in* U.

716.—Rule LXIV. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facĭle dictu, Easy to tell, *or* to be told.

So, *nihil dictu fœdum, visūque, hæc limĭna tangat, intra quæ puer est.* Juv. *Difficĭlis res est inventu vērus amīcus;—fas est*, or *nĕfas est dictu;—ŏpus est scītu.* Cic.

717.—*Obs.* 4. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *nunc obsonātu redeo,—"from getting provisions."* Plaut. *Primus cubĭtū surgat* (villicus), *postrēmus cubĭtum eat*, "let the overseer be the first to rise, and the last *to go to bed.*" Cato.

718.—*Obs.* 5. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad;* as, *difficĭle cognĭtu, cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum; res facĭlis ad credendum.* Cic.

719.—*Obs.* 6. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood;—the supine in *um*, by the preposition *ad;* and the supine in *u*, by the preposition *in.*

---

§ 149. CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

720.—Rule LXV. The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, nĕque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple similar cases and moods; as,

Honōra patrem et matrem, Honor father and mother.
Nec lĕgit nec scrĭbit, He neither reads nor writes.

721.—EXPLANATION.—Words coupled by a conjunction under this Rule, are in the same construction, i. e. two nominatives coupled together are the subject of the same verb, or predicates of the same subject; and *nouns* coupled together in the oblique cases are governed by the same word, as in the first example. *Verbs* thus coupled have the same subject or nominative, as in the second example.

722.—*Obs.* 1. The copulative conjunctions under this Rule are such as *et, ac, atque, etiam, que;* the disjunctives *nec, nēque, aut, vel, seu, sīve, ve, nīve, neu;* also *quam, prætĕrquam, nīsi, an, nempe, quamvis, necdum, sed, autem, vērum,* and, in general, such connectives as do not imply a dependence of the following, on the preceding clause.

723.—*Obs.* 2. These conjunctions connect not only words, but also clauses whose construction is the same, i. e. whose subjects are in the same case, and their verbs in the same mood; as, *concĭdunt venti, fugiuntque nūbes.*

724.—*Obs.* 3. Words in the same construction are sometimes in a different case: still they are connected by the copulative conjunctions; thus, *mea et reipŭblĭcæ interest.* Here, *mea* and *reipŭblĭcæ,* though in different cases, are in the same construction by R. XVIII. (415). So, *constĭtit asse et plūris,* Rule XLIV. (581). *Vir magni ingenii, summāque industriâ,* Rule VII. (339), &c. The subjunctive being often used for the imperative is sometimes coupled with it; as, *disce nec invideas.*

725.—*Obs.* 4. The indicative and subjunctive may be connected in this manner, if the latter does not depend on the former.

726.—*Obs.* 5. When two words coupled together have each a conjunction, such as, *et, aut, vel, sīve, nec,* &c., without being connected with a preceding word, the first *et* is rendered *both* or *likewise;* the first *aut* or *vel,* by *either;* the first *sive,* by *whether;* and the first *nec* or *nēque,* by *neither.* So, also, *tum . . . . tum,* and *cum . . . . tum,* "not only . . . . but also" *or* "both . . . . and;" and so of others; as, *nunc . . . . nunc; jam, ... jam,* &c. In such cases, the conjunctive before the first word renders it more emphatic: *tum . . . . tum* often mean, "at one time, . . . at another time."

727.—*Note.* Affirmative and negative sentences are connected by conjunctions in pairs, as follows:

Affirmative.	*Negative.*
et—et very common.	*neque—neque, nec—nec,*
et—que, not unfrequently.	*neque—nec,* not unfrequently.
que—et, connecting single words.	*nec—neque,* seldom.
que—que, only in poetry & Sall.	

Affirmative and negative.

et—neque, nec,	very frequent.
neque, nec—et,	very frequent.
nec, neque—que,	occasionally.

728.—*Obs.* 6. After words expressing similarity or dissimilarity, *ac* and *atque* signify "as;" and "than;" as, *făcis ac si me rŏges,* "you do *as* if you should ask me;"—*me cŏlit æquè atque patrŏnum suum,* "he shows me *as much* attention *as,*" &c.;—*si alĭter scrĭbo ac sentio,* "if I write *otherwise than* I think."

729.—*Obs.* 7. Conjunctions that do not imply doubt and contingency, are usually joined with the indicative mood; those which do imply doubt, contingency and dependence, are, for the most part, joined with the subjunctive (628).

§ 150. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A FIGURE is a manner of speaking different from the regular and ordinary construction, used for the sake of beauty or force.

730.—The figures of Syntax, or, construction, may be reduced to four: *Ellipsis, Pleonasm, Enallăge,* and *Hyperbăton.* Of these, the *first,* and *second,* and *third,* respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the *fourth* respects only the arrangement of words.

731.—1. ELLIPSIS, is the omission of one or more words necessary to complete the sense; as,

Aiunt, fĕrunt, &c., sc., *homĭnes. Abĕrant bidui,* sc., *ĭter,* or *itinĕre. Quid multa?* sc., *dĭcam.* Under this may be comprehended,

1st. ASYNDETON, or the omission of a conjunction; as, *vēni, vīdi, vīci. Deus optĭmus, maxĭmus,* sc., *et.*

2d. *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns or infinitives to a verb which is applicable only to one of them; as, *pācem an bellum gĕrens,* SALL., where *gĕrens* is applicable to *bellum* only. In this way, *nĕgo* is sometimes used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Nĕgant Cæsărem mansūrum, postulatăque interpŏsita esse;* i. e. *dicuntque postulāta.*

3d. *Syllepsis* is when an adjective or a verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another. See examples 266, 267.

4th. *Synecdŏche* is the use of an accusative of the part affected instead of an ablative; as, *Explēri mentem nequit,* 538. VIRG.

732.—2. PLEONASM, is using a greater number of words than is necessary, to express the meaning; as,

Sic ōre locūta est, "thus she spoke *with her mouth.*" VIRG. Under this are included,

1st. *Polysyndeton,* or, a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *unà Eurus que Notus que ruunt.* VIRG.

2d. *Hendiădys,* or the expression of an idea, by two nouns connected by a conjunction, instead of a noun limited by an adjective or genitive; as, *Patĕris lībāmus et auro,* "We offer a libation *from cups* and *from gold,*" instead of *patĕris aureis,* "from golden cups."

3d. *Periphrasis,* or a circuitous mode of expression; as, *tenĕri fœtus ovium,* "the tender young of the sheep," instead of *agni,* "lambs."

733.—3. ENALLAGE, is a change of words, or a change of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice, of the same word, for another. It includes,

1st. *Antimeria,* or the using of one part of speech for another; as, *nostrum vivĕre,* for *nostra vīta; conjugium vidēbit,* for *conjŭgem,* &c.

2d. *Heterōsis,* or the using of one form of a noun, pronoun, or verb, for another; as, *Romānus prœlio victor,* for *Romāni victōres. Truncus me sustulĕrat,* for *sustulisset.* HOR.

3d. *Antiptōsis*, or the using of one case for another; as, *cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo*, for *Iūlus*. (261 and 433). VIRG. *Uxor invicti Jŏvis esse nescis*, for *te esse uxōrem*. HOR. See 675.

4th. *Synèsis*, or *Synthèsis*, is adapting the construction to the sense of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Concursus pŏpŭli mirantium;—Pars in crucem acti;—scèlus qui*, &c. 278 and 292.

5th. *Anacoluthon*, or a departure in the end of a sentence, from the construction with which it commenced. Thus, *Nam nos omnes, quĭbus est alicunde alĭquis objectus lăbos . . . . . lucro est.* Here the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habēmus*, and ended as if he had said *nōbis omnĭbus*. As it is, the nominative *nos* has no verb, and *est*, which, in such sentences, requires the dative of a person, is without it.

734.—4. HYPERBATON, is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses. It includes,

1st. *Anastrŏphé*, or an inversion of the order of two words; as *Transtra per et rēmos*, for *per transtra*, &c.;—*Collo dăre brachia circum*, for *circumdăre*, &c.

2d. *Hystĕron protĕron*, or reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus*. VIRG. *Vălet atque vivit*. TER.

3d. *Hypallăgé*, or an interchange of constructions; as, *In nŏva fert ănĭmus mutātas dicĕre formas corpŏra*; for *corpŏra mutāta in nŏvas formas. Dăre classĭbus Austros*, for *dăre classes Austris*.

4th. *Tmesis*, or separating the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta trĭōni gens*, for *Septentrĭōni*. VIRG. *Quæ me cunque vŏcant terræ*, for *quæcunque*, &c.

5th. *Parenthesis*, or the insertion of a word or clause in a sentence, which interrupts the natural connection; as, *Tĭtÿre, dum redeo, (brĕvis est via) pasce capellas*. VIRG.

To these may be added,

735.—ARCHAISM, which in Syntax means the use of ancient forms of construction; as, *Opĕram abutĭtur*, for *opĕrâ*. TER. *Quid tĭbi hanc curatio est rem?*

736.—HELLENISM, or the use of Greek constructions; as, *Abstinēto irārum*, for *īris*. HOR. *Tempus desistĕre pugnæ*, for *pugnâ*. VIRG.

---

§ 151. LATIN ARRANGEMENT.

737.—In all languages, the arrangement of words in a sentence is different; and all, it is probable, consider the order of arrangement in their own language the most natural, being that to which they have themselves been most accustomed. In a language like the English, however, the words of which have but few changes of form or termination, much more

depends on their position in a sentence than in those languages which are able, by the changes of form only, to indicate the relation of words to each other, however they may be arranged. Thus, when we say in English, "*Alexander conquered Darius*," if we change the order of the words, we necessarily change the meaning also; as, *Darius conquered Alexander.* But whether we say in Latin, *Alexander vīcit Darium*, or *Darium vīcit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vīcit*, or *Darium Alexander vīcit*, or place these words in any other possible order of arrangement, the meaning is the same, and cannot be mistaken; because it depends, not on the *position*, but on the *form* of the words. This gave the Latin writer much more scope to arrange his words in that order which would best promote the strength or euphony of the sentence, without endangering its perspicuity. Still, even in Latin, custom has established a certain order of arrangement which is considered the best. And, though no certain rules can be given on this subject, which are applicable to every instance, the following general principles and Rules may be noticed.

738.—*General principles of Latin Arrangement.*

1. The word governed is placed before the word which governs it.

2. The word agreeing is placed after the word with which it agrees. More particularly,

739.—*Rule* I. The subject is generally put before the verb; as, *Deus mundum gubernat.*

Exc. 1. When the subject is closely connected with a clause following the verb, it is placed after the verb; as, *ĕrant omnīno duo itinĕra, quĭbus*, &c.

Exc. 2. When the subject is emphatic, it usually follows the verb and concludes the sentence.

740.—*Rule* II. The adjective or participle most commonly follows the substantive with which it agrees.

With few exceptions, however, the place of the adjective or participle is entirely arbitrary. The following usages may be noticed:

1st. The adjectives, *prīmus, medius, ultĭmus, extrēmus, summus, infĭmus, ĭmus, suprēmus, rĕliquus, cætĕrus*, denoting the first part, the middle part, &c., are generally put before the substantive; as, *summus mons; extrēmo libro*, "the top of the mountain," &c.

2d. When the substantive governs another in the genitive, the adjective generally precedes both; as, *Duo Platōnis precepta.*

3d. When the substantive is governed by a preposition, the adjective is frequently put before the substantive; as, *Hâc in questiōne; magnâ in parte.*

4th. The adjective is often put before the substantive for the sake of Euphony.

5th. *Is, ille, hic, iste,* are generally placed before the substantive, and, if used substantively, are placed before the participle.

741.—*Rule* III. The relative is commonly placed after, and as near as possible to its antecedent.

Obs. 1. The relative is commonly the first word of its own clause, and when it stands for *et ille, et hic, et is,* or for these pronouns without *et,* (295, 1st,) it is always first. Sometimes, however, the relative and its clause, precede the antecedent and its clause.

742.—*Rule* IV. The governing word is generally placed after the word governed; as, *Carthaginiensium dux—laudis avĭdus—Romanōrum ditissĭmus—hostem fŭdit,* &c. Hence,

Obs. 2. The finite verb is commonly the last in its own clause. To this, however, there are many exceptions.

743.—*Rule* V. Adverbs are generally introduced before the word which they are intended to modify; as, *Levĭter ægrotantes, lenĭter cūrant.* Cic.

744.—*Rule* VI. Conjunctions generally introduce the clause to which they belong; as, AT *si dăres;*—SED *profecto in omni re fortūna dominātur.*

Exc. 1. The enclitics *que, ve, ne,* are always annexed—the two first, to the latter of the two words which they serve to connect; as, *albus aterve.* Cic. *Bŏni malique;*—and the last, to the subject which the question chiefly regards; thus, *loquarne?* "shall I *speak?*" *egŏne lŏquar?* "shall *I* speak?"

Exc. 2. The conjunctions *autem, ĕnim, vĕro, quŏque, quĭdem,* are always placed after the introductory word of the clause, generally in the second place, and sometimes in the third; *etiam, igĭtur,* and *tămen,* more frequently in the second and the third place than in the first.

745.—*Rule* VII. Words connected in sense, should be as close as possible to each other, and the words of one clause should never be mixed with those of another.

746.—*Rule* VIII. Circumstances, viz: the *cause,*—the *manner,*—the *instrument,*—the *time,*—the *place,* &c., are put before the predicate; as,

Eum ferro occīdi;—Ego te ob egregiam virtūtem semper amāvi.

747.—*Rule* IX. The proper name should precede the name of rank or profession; as, *Cicĕro orātor.*

748.—*Rule* X. The vocative should either introduce the sentence, or be placed among the first words; as, *Crēdo vos, judĭces.*

749.—*Rule* XI. When there is an antithesis, the words chiefly opposed to each other, should be as close together as possible; as, *Appĕtis pecuniam, virtūtem abjĭcis.*

750.—*Rule* XII. Dependent clauses, as well as single words, are placed before the principal finite verb, upon which they chiefly depend.

751.—*Rule* XIII. As a general rule, where the case will admit, it is proper to proceed from shorter to longer words, and from shorter to longer clauses and members of a sentence, as we advance towards the close.

Hence, it will follow, that a sentence should not conclude with a monosyllable, when it can be avoided.

REMARK.—These are to be considered only as general Rules, subject to many modifications and exceptions, according to the taste of different writers. However, as a general guide, with close attention to classical usage and euphony, they may be of use to enable the student to avoid errors on this subject.

752.—§ 152. ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

A sentence is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *hŏmo mortālis est*, "man is mortal."

All sentences are either *simple* or *compound*.

A *simple* sentence contains only a single affirmation; as, *vīta brĕvis est*.

A *compound* sentence consists of two or more simple sentences connected together; as, *bis dat, qui cĭto dat*.

753.—SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence or proposition consists of two parts—the *subject* and the *predicate*.

The *subject* is that of which something is affirmed.

The *predicate* is that which is affirmed of the subject.

The subject is commonly a noun or pronoun, but may be anything, however expressed, about which we can speak or think.

The predicate properly consists of two parts,—the *attribute* affirmed of the subject, and the *copula*, by which the affirmation is made; thus, in the sentence, *vīta brĕvis est*, the subject is *vīta*; the predicate is *brĕvis est*, of which *brĕvis* is the *attribute*, and *est* the *copula*. In most cases, the attribute and copula are expressed by one word; as, *ĕquus currit*, "the horse runs" = *ĕquus currens est*, "the horse is running."

The name of a person or thing addressed forms no part of a sentence.

The predicate may be a noun, a pronoun, an adjective, a preposition with its case, an adverb, a participle, an infinitive mood, or clause of a sentence, as an attribute, connected with the subject by a substantive verb as a copula; or it may be a verb which includes in itself both attribute and copula, and is therefore called an *attributive verb*.

754.—THE SUBJECT.

The subject of a proposition is either *grammatical* or *logical*.

I. The *grammatical* subject is the person or thing spoken of, *unlimited* by other words.

The *logical* subject is the person or thing spoken of, together with all the words or phrases by which it is limited or defined; thus, in the sentence, *vir bŏnus sui simĭlem quærit*, the grammatical subject is *vir;* the logical, *vir bŏnus*. Again:

II. The subject of a proposition may be either *simple* or *compound*.

A *simple* subject consists of one subject of thought, either unlimited, as the grammatical, or limited, as the logical subject.

A compound subject consists of two or more simple subjects, to which belongs but one predicate; as, *Romŭlus et Rēmus fratres ĕrant*.

755.—MODIFICATIONS OF THE SUBJECT.

A *grammatical* subject may be modified, limited, or described in various ways; as,—

1. By a noun in apposition; as, *Cicĕro ōrātor factus est consul*.
2. By a noun in the genitive; as, *Ira Dei lenta est*.
3. By an adjunct; as, *De victorĭā Cæsăris fāma perfertur*.
4. By an adjective word, i. e. an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as, *Justitiā gaudent vĭri bŏni.—Suus cuīque ĕrat lŏcus definītus.—Vox missa nescit reverti*.
5. By a relative and its clause; as, *Vir săpit, qui pauca loquĭtur*.

Each grammatical subject may have several modifications; and if it has none, the grammatical and logical subject are the same.

756.—MODIFICATION OF MODIFYING WORDS.

Modifying, or limiting words, may themselves be modified.

1. A noun modifying another may itself be modified in all the ways in which a noun, as a grammatical subject, is modified.
2. An adjective qualifying a noun may itself be modified—
   1st. By an adjunct; as, *campi ad prœlium bŏni: liber a delictis*.
   2d. By a noun; as, *Major pietāte:—æger pedĭbus*.
   3d. By an infinitive mood or clause of a sentence, a gerund, or a supine; as, *Hŏmo dignus cantāri—dignus qui impĕret—dignus ut fĭgat pălam in parĭēte.—Charta utĭlis scribendo.—Monstrum mirabĭle dictu*.
   4th. By an adverb; as, *Hŏmo longe dissimĭlis;—facĭle princeps*.
3. An adverb may be modified—
   1st. By another adverb; as, *multŏ magis*.
   2d By a substantive in an oblique case; as, *convenienter nātūræ, optĭme omnium; proxĭme castris*.

757.—The subject of a proposition may be an infinitive mood, with or without a subject; or a clause of a sentence; as, *humānum est errāre. Incerta pro certis habēre stultissimum est. Nunc ŏpus est, te animo valēre. Reliquum est, ut officiis certēmus inter nos.*

758.—THE PREDICATE.

I. The *Predicate*, like the subject, is either grammatical or logical.

The *grammatical* predicate consists of the attribute and copula, not modified by other words.

The *logical* predicate is the grammatical, with all the words or phrases that modify it; thus, *vir bŏnus sui sĭmĭlem quærit;* the grammatical predicate is *quærit;* the logical, *quærit simĭlem sui.*

When the grammatical predicate has no modifying terms, the logical and grammatical are the same.

II. The predicate, like the subject, is either simple or compound.

A *simple* predicate affirms but one thing of its subject; as, *vīta brĕvis est; ignis ūrit.*

A *compound* predicate consists of two or more simple predicates affirmed of one subject; as, *Cæsar vēnit, vīdit, vīcit. Probĭtas laudātur et alget.*

759.—MODIFICATIONS OF THE PREDICATE.

The grammatical predicate may be modified or limited in different ways.

I. When the attribute in the predicate is a noun, it is modified—

1. By a noun or pronoun limiting or describing the attribute; as, *hŏnor est præmium virtūtis. Invidia est supplicium suum.*

2. By an adjective or participle limiting the attribute; as, *ira fŭror brĕvis est.*

II. When the grammatical predicate is an attributive verb, it is modified—

1. By a noun or pronoun as its object; as, *res amīcos invēnit. Laus debētur virtūti. Sapiens impĕrat cupiditatĭbus. Venter cĕret auribus.*
2. By an adverb; as, *bis dat qui cĭto dat; bĕne scrībit.*
3. By an adjunct; as, *vēnit in urbem; ex urbe vēnit.*
4. By an infinitive; as, *cupio discĕre.*
5. By a dependent clause; as, *pœta dīcit īram esse brĕvem insaniam.—Constituit ut lūdi fĭerent.*

760.—Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and other words modifying the predicate, may themselves be modified, as similar words are when modifying the subject.

Infinitives and participles modifying the predicate, may themselves be modified in all respects, as the attributive verb is modified.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

761.—A *Compound* sentence consists of two or more simple sentences

or propositions connected together. The propositions which make up a compound sentence, are called *members* or *clauses*.

762.—The propositions or clauses of a compound sentence, are either independent or dependent; in other words, *coördinate*, or *subordinate*.

An *independent* clause is one that makes complete sense by itself.

A *dependent* clause is one that makes complete sense only in connection with another clause.

The clause on which another depends, is called the *leading* clause; its subject is the *leading* subject; and its predicate, the *leading* predicate.

763.—Clauses of the same kind, whether *independent* or *dependent*, are connected by such conjunctions as *et, ac, atque, nec, nĕque, aut, vel*, &c.

764.—Dependent clauses having finite verbs, are connected with their leading clauses in three different ways.

1. By a relative; as, *vir săpit, qui pauca loquĭtur.*
2. By a conjunction; as, *loquăces, si sapiat, vĭtet.*
3. By an adverb; as, *ubi quid dătur otii, illūdo chartis; rogābat cur unquam fugisset.*

765.—A subordinate clause, consisting of an infinitive with its subject, is joined to a leading clause without a connecting word; as, *gaudeo te valēre.*

ABRIDGED PROPOSITIONS.

766.—A compound sentence is sometimes converted into a simple one, by rejecting the connective, and changing the verb of the dependent clause into a participle. A simple sentence thus formed is called an *abridged proposition;* as, *bello confectō discessit*, for *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit. Cæsar, hæc locūtus, profectus est*, for *quum Cæsar hæc locūtus esset, profectus est.*

767.—EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS.

1. *Vīta brĕvis est.*

This is a simple sentence, of which

The logical subject, and also the grammatical, is *vīta.*

The logical predicate, and also the grammatical, is *brĕvis est*, in which *brĕvis* is the attribute, and *est* the copula.

2. *Labuntur anni.*

This is a simple sentence, of which

The logical subject, and also the grammatical, is *anni.*

The logical predicate, and also the grammatical, is *labuntur*, an attributive verb including both the attribute and copula.

3. *Vērum dĕcus in virtūte posĭtum est.*

This is a simple sentence, of which

The logical subject is *vērum dĕcus.*

The logical predicate is, *in virtūte posĭtum est.*

The grammatical subject is *dĕcus*, qualified by the adjective *vērum*.

The grammatical predicate is *positum est*, modified by the adjunct *in virtūte*.

4. *Romulus et Remus fratres ĕrant.*

This is a simple sentence, having a compound subject.

The logical subject is *Romulus et Remus*, compound, consisting of two subjects connected by *et*.

The logical predicate is *fratres ĕrant*.

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.

5. *Probĭtas laudātur et alget.*

This is a simple sentence with a compound predicate.

The logical subject is *probĭtas*.

The logical predicate is *laudātur et alget*, compound, the parts of which are connected by *et*.

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.

6. *Video melĭōra probōque; deteriōra sĕquor.*

This is a compound sentence, consisting of two independent or coördinate clauses in juxta-position.

The first clause is a simple proposition with a compound predicate, of which

The logical subject is *ĕgo*, understood.

The logical predicate is *video melĭōra probōque*.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *video prŏbo que*, compound, consisting of two predicates connected by *que*, both modified by their object, *negotia*, understood, and that qualified by the adjective *melĭōra*.

The second clause, *deteriōra sĕquor*, is a simple proposition, of which

The logical subject is *ĕgo*, understood.

The logical predicate is *deteriōra sĕquor*.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *sĕquor*, modified by its object, *negotia*, understood, qualified by the adjective, *deteriōra*.

7. *Quæ in terrâ gīgnuntur, ad ūsum hominis omnia creantur.*

This is a compound sentence, consisting of one leading, and one dependent clause, connected by *quæ*.

The leading clause, *ad ūsum hominis omnia creantur*, is a simple sentence, or proposition, of which

The logical subject is *omnia* (*negotia*), restricted by the relative clause, *quæ in terrâ gignuntur*.

The logical predicate is, *ad ūsum hominis creantur*.

The grammatical subject is *negotia* understood, qualified by the adjective *omnia*, and restricted by the relative clause.

The grammatical predicate is *creantur*, modified by the adjunct *ad ūsum*, and that modified by *hominis*.

The dependent clause is *quæ in terrâ gignuntur*, of which

The logical subject is the *quæ*, which, being a relative, connects the dependent with the leading clause. (125.)

The logical predicate is, *in terrâ gignuntur*.

The grammatical subject is *quæ*, the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *gignuntur*, modified by the adjunct *in terrâ*.

CONSTRUING.

768.—In Latin and English, the *general* arrangement of a sentence is the same, i. e. the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how "to take it in," or to arrange it in the order of the English. This is technically called *construing* or *giving the order*. To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

DIRECTIONS FOR BEGINNERS.

769.—Direction 1. As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or NOMINATIVE, and the predicate or VERB; the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to this,

First. Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future, of the indicative, or in the imperative mood,* and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

Second. Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is commonly a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so, 739, R. I. with exceptions.

770.—Direction 2. Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows:

1st. Take the *Vocative, Exciting, Introductory*, or *connecting words*, if there are any.

2d. The NOMINATIVE.

3d. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, i. e. words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the *verb*.

4th. The VERB.

5th. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, i. e. words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it. 759, II.

* All the other parts of the verb are generally used in subordinate clauses. So, also, is the pluperfect indicative. In oblique discourse, the leading verb is in the infinitive. 652.

6th. Supply everywhere the words *understood.*

7th. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

771.—Direction 3. In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

772.—RULES FOR CONSTRUING.

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.

Exc. The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it, or be coupled with it, is put *before* its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb (in English, between the auxiliary and the verb). Interrogative words, however, such as *quis, quōtus, quantus, uter,* &c., come before the verb.

VI. After a transitive active verb, look for an accusative;—and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative; and arrange the words accordingly

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, &c., should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself, in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions are to be placed before the last of two words, or sentences connected.

773.—*Examples of Resolution.*

First. Etĕnim omnes artes, quæ ad humanitātem pertĭnent hăbent quoddam commūne vinculum, et quăsi cognatiōne quădam inter se continentur. Cic.

1. In looking over this sentence, according to Direction first, we find the first leading verb to be *hăbent,* which must have a plural nominative. This leads us at once to *artes,* as the nominative. The nominative and verb being thus found on which the other parts depend, then

2. By direction 2, the general arrangement will be—

1. Connective word, *etĕnim.*
2. NOMINATIVE, *artes.*
3. Words limiting and explaining, *omnes, quæ ad humanitātem pertĭnent.*.
4. The VERB, *habent.*
5. Words governed by it, *quoddam commūne vincŭlum.*

8. Then by the rules in direction 3, the words in each of these divisions, will be arranged thus: 1. *Etĕnim;* 2. and 3. *omnes artes,* (R. II.) *quæ* (R. III.) *pertĭnent ad humanitātem,* (R. VIII.) 4. *hăbent,* 5. *quoddam commūne vincŭlum,* (R. II.)

By proceeding in the same manner with the next clause, the whole will then stand thus:

Etĕnim omnes artes, quæ pertĭnent ad humanitātem, hăbent quoddam commūne vincŭlum, et continentur inter se quăsi quădam cognatiōne;—and may be translated as follows:

"For all the arts which pertain to liberal knowledge (civilization), have a certain common bond, and are connected together as if by a certain affinity between them."

The pupil will now see, that in the first clause, or simple sentence, the grammatical subject is *artes;* the logical—*omnes artes quæ ad humanitātem pertĭnent.*—The grammatical predicate is *hăbent;* the logical—*hăbent quoddam commūne vincŭlum* (758–1); and so with the next clause.

In like manner proceed with every new simple sentence, or with every succeeding clause of a compound sentence.

774.—§ 153. ETYMOLOGICAL AND SYNTACTICAL PARSING.

Having arranged and translated a sentence, the next thing is to parse it, in doing which, every word should be fully described by its accidents, traced to its primitive, if a derivative,—analyzed into its parts if compound, and its concord or government pointed out. The following scheme, with each part of speech, may be useful to the beginner.

1. NOUN.—1. Kind; 2. Gender; 3. Declension; 4. Decline; 5. Derived from (if derived); 6. It is found in——case; 7. Number; 8. is the nominative to——, or the predicate nominative after——(if the nominative); is governed by—(if governed); 9. Rule.

2. ADJECTIVE.—1. Declension; 2. Decline it; 3. Compare it (if compared); 4. It is found in—case; 5. Number; 6. Gender; 7. agrees with —; 8. Rule.

3. PRONOUN.—1. Kind (i. e. personal, relative or adjective,); 2. Decline it; then—

If personal, 3. Person; 4. found in—case; 5. Number; 6. Reason of the case; 7. Rule; 8. stands for—

If a Relative pronoun, 3. found in—case; 4. Number; 5. Reason of the case; 6. Rule; 7. Its antecedent; 8. Rule.

If an Adjective pronoun; then, 3. Kind (i. e. possessive, indefinite, demonstrative, &c.), 4. It is found in—case; 5. Number; 6. Gender· 7. Agrees with; 8. Rule.

4. VERB.—1. Kind, viz: Transitive, or Intransitive. 2. Conjugation (or Irregular, if it is so); 3. Conjugate it; 4. Derived from (if derived); 5 Compounded of (if compounded); 6. It is found in—tense; 7. Mood; 8 Voice; 9. Person; 10. Number; 11. agrees with—as its subject; 12. Rule; 13. give a Synopsis.

5. ADVERB.—1. Derived from (if derived); 2. Compounded of (if compounded); 3. Compared (if compared); 4. It modifies——; 5. Rule.

6. PREPOSITION.—1. Governs——case; 2. Rule; 3. It points out the relation between——and——.

7. INTERJECTION.—1. Kind; 2. Governs, or is put with the——case; 3 Rule.

8. CONJUNCTION.—1. Kind; 2. Connects——; 3. Rule.

775.—*Example of Parsing by the foregoing Scheme.*

The sentence construed (773) may serve as an example of Etymological and Syntactical parsing, and for this purpose we arrange it in the order of translation, as above.

"Etĕnim omnes artes, quæ pertĭnent ad humanitātem, hăbent quoddam commūne vincŭlum, et continentur inter se quăsi quâdam cognatiōne."

Etĕnim . Conjunction, casual, connecting the following sentence with the preceding, as containing the *cause* or *reason* of what is there stated.

omnes... An adjective, third declension, *omnis, -is, -e,* &c.; not compared, because incapable of increase,—in the nominative, plural, feminine, and agrees with *artes*, (Rule,) "An adjective agrees," &c

artes... A noun (or substantive), feminine, third declension, *ars,** *artis,* &c.—in the nominative plural,—the nominative to, (or subject of,) *hăbent.*

quæ.... Relative pronoun,—in the nominative plural, feminine, nominative to *pertĭnent*, agrees with its antecedent *artes*, Rule III., and connects its clause with *artes* which it restricts.

pertĭnent, Verb intransitive, second conjugation, *pertinĕo, -ēre, -ui, pertentum;* compounded of *per*, and *tenĕo*,—in the present indicative, active, third person plural, and agrees with *quæ*. Rule IV. "A verb agrees," &c.

---

* As all nouns are *common* except proper nouns; to save time in parsing, this may always be taken for granted, mentioning, however, when the noun is proper. For the same reason, the words "gender," "number," "mood," "tense," may be omitted, these being sufficiently indicated by the words *masculine, singular, indicative*, &c.

ad..... Preposition, governs the accusative, and shows the relation between *pertĭnent* and *humanitātem*.

humanitātem, Noun, feminine, third declension, *humanitas*,—*ātis*, &c. Abstract, derived from *humānus* (33–2), in the accusative, singular, governed by *ad*. Rule XLVIII. "Twenty-eight prepositions," &c.

hăbent,.. Verb transitive, second conjugation, *habeo*, *-ēre*, *-ui*, *-ĭtum*,—in the present indicative active, third person plural—and agrees with *artes*. Rule IV. "A verb agrees," &c. Synopsis.

quoddam, Indefinite adjective pronoun, *quīdam*, *quædam*, &c., compounded of *quis* and the syllable *dam*.—in the accusative, singular, neuter, and agrees with *vincŭlum*. Rule II. "An adjective agrees," &c.

vincŭlum, Noun, neuter, second declension, *vincŭlum*, *-i*, &c.—in the accusative singular, governed by *hăbent*. Rule XX. "A transitive verb in the active voice" &c.

et,.;..... A conjunction, copulative, connecting *continentur* with *hăbent*, which are consequently in the same construction (721), and have the same nominative, *artes*.

continentur, A verb transitive, second conjugation; *contineo*, *continēre*, *continui*, *contentum*; compounded of *con* and *teneo*,—in the present indicative passive, third person plural, and agrees with *artes*. Rule IV. "A verb agrees," &c. Synopsis.

inter,... A preposition which governs the accusative, and here points out the relation of reciprocity between the individuals represented by *se*. 118–5.

se, ... Substantive pronoun, third person, in the accusative plural, feminine, governed by *inter*. Rule XLVIII. "Twenty-eight prepositions," &c., refers to *artes*, the subject of *continentur*, and is here taken *reciprocally*. 118–5.

quăsi, .. An adverb of *manner* modifying *continentur*. Rule XLV. "Adverbs are joined," &c.

quŏddam, Indefinite adjective pronoun, *quīdam*, *quædam*, &c., compounded of *quis* and the syllable *dam*,—in the ablative singular, and agrees with *cognatiōne*. Rule II. "An adjective agrees," &c.

cognatiōne, A noun, feminine, third declension, *cognatio*, *-ōnis*, &c., from *cognātus*, "related by birth," (from *con* and *nascor*)—in the ablative of *manner*, relating to *continentur inter se*. Rule XXXV. "The cause, manner," &c.

Note.—In this way, by stating everything respecting a word in the shortest manner, and without waiting to be questioned, parsing may be done rapidly, and much time saved; and then such questions may be put as will draw attention to anything not included in the above scheme. By a little attention, on the part of the teacher, in leading the pupil to understand and apply the preceding rules for arranging a sentence in the order of translation, he will save much time and labor to himself afterwards; and teach the learner to form the important habit of reasoning out a difficult sentence, and so, by repeated victories, to gain confidence in his own powers

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

776.—PROSODY, in its common acceptation, treats of the quantity of syllables, and the construction of verses; in other words, of *Quantity* and *Metre*.

§ 154. OF QUANTITY.

777.—QUANTITY means the relative length of time taken up in pronouncing a syllable.

1. In respect of quantity, every syllable is either *long* or *short*. When a syllable is sometimes long, and sometimes short, it is said to be *common*.

2. The quantity of syllables is determined by certain established rules; or, when no rule applies,—by the *authority* of the poets.

3. The rules of quantity are either *general* or *special;* the former apply alike to all the syllables of a word; the latter, to particular syllables.

§ 155. GENERAL RULES.

778.—RULE I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *dĕus, ălius, nĭhil.*

779.—EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to a vowel before another vowel or diphthong in a different syllable, whether it be in the same, or in a different word. The letter *h*, in verse, being considered as only a breathing, is wholly disregarded; hence, such words as, *nihil, mihi, ŏhe*, &c., come under this rule. A diphthong before a vowel does not come under this rule, except as in Rule V., *Exc.* 1.

780.—EXCEPTIONS.

1. *A* is long in *āër, Cāī, aulāī, terrāï*, and the like.
2. *E* is long after *i* in the genitive and dative of the fifth declension as, *speciēi;* not after *i*, it is common.

E is long in *dheu, Pompēī.*

3. *I* not before *er*, is long in *fio;* as, *fīo, fīebam.* Also in *alīus*, the genitive of *alius.*

I is common in *Diāna* (*Dĭāna* or *Dĭăna*), and genitives in *iūs;* but is short in *alterĭus.* Genitives in *ĭus*, in prose, have *ī* long.

4. *O* is common in *Ohe.*

5. Greek words vary. As a general rule, when the vowel before another represents a long vowel or diphthong in the Greek word, it is long; otherwise it is short.

781.—RULE II. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, is long by position; as,

ārma, fāllo, āxis, gāza, mājor.

782.—EXPLANATION.—When a final syllable is long by another rule, this rule does not apply; the double consonants under this rule are, the same consonant doubled; as, *ll, tt, rr*, &c., and the letters, *j, x*, and *z*, equivalent to *dg, ks, ds.*

783.—EXCEPTIONS.

1. A short vowel in the end of a word, before two consonants in the next, is common; before *sc, sp, sq, st*, it is usually long; before a double consonant, it is short.

2. A vowel before *j*, is short in compounds of *jŭgum*; as, *bĭjŭgus.*

784.—RULE III. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, is common; as, *volŭcris*, or *volūcris.*

785.—EXPLANATION.—Under this rule, the vowel must be naturally short, and the mute must come before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. But if the vowel is naturally long, it remains so; as, *mātris* (from *μήτηρ*), *salūbris*, &c. If the mute and the liquid are in different syllables, the vowel preceding is long by position; as, *ābluo, ōbruo.* In Latin words, the liquids are *l* and *r* only. In Greek words, *l, r, m, n.*

786.—*Obs.* 1. This rule is properly an exception to Rule II. A short vowel in the end of a word, is seldom affected by a mute and a liquid in the next.

787.—RULE IV. A contracted syllable is always long; as,

Nīl, for *nihil; mī*, for *mihi; alīus*, for *aliius; īt*, for *iit; sōdes*, for *si audes; nōlo*, for *non vōlo; bīgæ*, for *bijŭgæ; scīlicet*, for *scīre licet*, &c.

788.—RULE V. A diphthong is long; as, *Cæsar, Aūrum, Eūbœa.*

789.—EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Præ*, in composition, before a vowel, is commonly short; as, *prĕire prăustus*, &c.

2. Also, *æ* is sometimes short in the end of a word, when the next begins with a vowel; as, *Insŭlæ Ionio*, &c.

Note.—U, after *q* and *g*, does not form a diphthong with a vowel following it, but has a force similar to the English *w;* as, *lingua, quĕror*, &c., pronounced *lingwa, kweror.* 8–2.

SPECIAL RULES.

§ 156. FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

790.—Rule VI. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former; as, *vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*.

791.—*Exc.* 1. Those which are short by Rule I; as, *rŭi*, *lŭi*, &c.

Exc. 2. Seven have the first syllable short; viz: *bĭbi*, *dĕdi*, *fĭdi* (from *findo*), *scĭdi*, *stĕti*, *stĭti*, and *tŭli*.

792.—Rule VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, shorten the first and second; as, *cĕcĭdi*, *tĕtĭgi*, *pĕpŭli*, &c., from *cădo*, *tango*, *pello*.

Exc. Cĕcīdi, from *cædo*; and *pepēdi*, have the second long.

793.—Rule VIII. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former; as, *cāsum*, *mōtum*, *vīsum*, from *cădo*, *mŏveo*, *vĭdeo*.

794.—*Exc.* Ten have the first syllable short; viz: *cĭtum* (from *cĭeo*), *dătum*, *ĭtum*, *lĭtum*,—*quĭtum*, *rătum*, *rŭtum*, *sătum*,—*sĭtum*, and *stătum*.

795.—Rule IX. In polysyllables, *a*, *e*, and *u*, are long before *tum*, of the Supine; as, *amātum*, *delētum*, *indūtum*.

796.—Rule X. In polysyllables, *i* is short before *tum*, of the Supine; as, *monĭtum*. *I* is long in *divīsum*.

797.—*Exc.* But Supines in *ītum*, from preterites in *īvi*, have *i* long; as, *cupīvi*, *cupītum*; *audīvi*, *audītum*, &c.

798.—*Obs. Recensĕo* has *recensītum*, from *ui* in the preterite, because originally from *censĭo*, *censīvi*. *Eo* and its compounds have *i* short; as, *ĭtum*, *redĭtum*, &c. Except *ambio*, *ambītum*, fourth conjugation.

799.—Rule XI. Participles in *rus* have *u* long in the penult; as, *amatūrus*, &c.

800.—§ 157. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

1. A noun is said to *increase*, when any of its cases has more syllables than the nominative singular; as, *rex*, *rēgis*; *sermo*, *sermōnis*.

2. With only few exceptions, nouns have but *one increase* in the singular number: *ŭter*, *supellex*, and compounds of *căput* ending in *ps*, have two; as, *ĭtĭnĕris*, *supellĕctĭlis*, *præcĭpĭtis*, from *præceps*.

3. The increment, or increasing syllable, to which the following rules apply, is never the last syllable, but the one preceding it, if there is only one increment; or the two preceding it, if there are two.

4. The rules for the increase of nouns, apply to adjectives and participles.

5. Nouns of the *fourth* declension have no increment in the singular; those of the *first* and *fifth*, have none but what come under Rule I. (778).

and its exceptions. (780.) In the *second* declension, those only increase in the singular which end in *r*, according to the following—

801.—RULE. The increment of the second declension is short; as—

Puĕri, vĭri, satŭri, &c., from *puer, vir, sătur.*

Exc. But *Iber* and *Celtĭber*, have *Ibĕri* and *Celtibĕri.*

INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

802.—XII. Increments of the third declension, have *a* and *o* long; *e*, *i*, and *u*, short; as—

Pietātis, honōris, mulĭĕris, lapĭdis, murmŭris.

Rules with Exceptions.

A.

803.—1. Increments in *a*, of the third declension, are long.

Exc. 1st. The increment in *a*, from masculines in *al* and *ar* is short, also from *par* and its compounds;—from *anas, mas, vas* (*vădis*), *bqccar, hepar, jubar, lar, nectar,* and *sal.*

Exc. 2d. The increment in *a*, from nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, is short; as, *Arabs, Arăbis.*

Exc. 3d. The increment in *a*, from Greek nouns in *a*, *-ătis;* and *as*, *-ădis*, is short; as, *poĕma, poemătis; lampas, lampădis.*

Exc. 4th. Also the following in *ax;* viz: *abax, anthrax, Atax, Atrax, climax, colax, corax, dropax, fax, harpax, panax, phylax, smilax,* and *styrax*, increase with *ă* short.

O.

804.—2. Increments in *o*, of the third declension, are long.

Exc. 1st. The increment in *o*, from neuter nouns is short; as, *marmor, marmŏris; corpus, corpŏris.* But *os, ŏris*, and neuter comparatives increase in *ō* long; *ador* has *adŏris*, or *adōris.*

Exc. 2d. The increment in *o*, from nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as, *scrobs, scrŏbis; inops, inŏpis.* But *Cecrops, Cyclops,* and *Hydrops*, have *ō long.*

Exc. 3d. Generally from Gentile and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*, the increment is short; as, *Macĕdo, Macedŏnis;* but some are long, and some are common.

Exc. 4th. Greek nouns in *tor*, shorten the increment; as, *Hector—ŏris.*

Exc. 5th. Greek nouns in *pus* (*πούς*); as, *tripus, Polypus;* also, *arbor, mĕnor, bos, compos, impos*, and *lĕpus*, have *o* short in the increment; as, *tripus, tripŏdis,* &c.

E.

805.—3. Increments in *e*, of the third declension, are short.

Exc 1st. The increment in *-ēnis* from *en* and *o* is long; as, *Siren, Sirēnis; Anio, Aniēnis.*

Exc. 2d. The increment in *e* is long, from *hæres, locuples, mansues, merces,* and *quies.* Also, from *Iber* and *ver*—from *lex, rex,* and *vervex*—*plebs, seps,* and *halec.*

Exc. 3d. Greek nouns in *er* and *es* increase *e* long; as, *crāter, cratēris; magnes, magnētis.*

I.

806.—4. Increments in *i*, of the third declension, are short.

Exc. 1st. Verbals in *trix*, and adjectives in *ix*, have *i* long; as *victrix, victrīcis; felix, felīcis.*
Also, *cervix, cicatrix, cornix, coturnix, lodix, matrix, perdix, phœnix, radix,* and *vibex.*

Exc. 2d. Greek nouns in *is* and *in*, with the genitive in *inis*, increase long; as, *Salamis, Salamīnis.*

Exc. 3d. *Dis, glis,* and *lis*, with *Nesis, Quiris,* and *Samnis*, increase long.

U.

807.—5. Increments in *u*, of the third declension, are short.

Exc. 1st. Genitives in *ūdis, ūris,* and *ūtis*, from nominatives in *us*, have the increase long; as, *palus, palūdis,* &c. But *Ligus, intercus,* and *pecus*, increase with *ŭ* short.

Exc. 2d. *Fur, frux, lux,* and *Pollux*, have *ū* long.

Y.

808.—6. Increments in *y* are short.

Exc. Greek nouns, with the genitive in *ynis*, have the increase long. Also, *Bombyx, Ceyx,* and *gryps*, which increase long.

INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

809.—A noun in the plural number, is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any case, than in the nominative plural.

810.—An increment in the plural, can occur only in the genitive, dative, and ablative; and in these, it is the syllable next to the last. When any of these cases has no more syllables than the nominative, it has no plural increment. Thus, *sermōnum, puĕris, capĭtum,* have no plural increase, because they have no more syllables than *sermōnes, puĕri, capĭta;* still, they all have the increment of the singular, because they have more syllables than *sermo, puer,* and *căput.* But *sermōnĭbus, puĕrōrum,* and *capĭtĭbus,* have both the singular and plural increment.

811.—Rule XIII. Plural increments in *a, e,* and *o*, are long; in *i* and *u*, short; as,

	Musārum,	*rērum,*	*virōrum,*	*partĭbus,*	*lacŭbus.*
from	*Musæ,*	*res,*	*viri,*	*partes,*	*lacus.*

812.—EXPLANATION.—All the increments of the singular remain in the plural, and to these the plural increment is added. The rule here given, applies to the plural increments only, and not to the increments of the singular in the plural. Thus, in *itinĕribus* from *iter*, the second and third syllables are increments of the singular, to be found in *itinĕris;* the fourth is the plural increment, which comes under this rule.

§ 158. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

813.—A verb is said to increase when it has more syllables in any part, than in the second person singular, of the present indicative, active; as, *ămas, amātis, amābātis,* &c.—A verb in the active voice may have three increments, and in the passive four. If there is but one increment, it is the syllable next the last. If there are two, the second increment is the syllable next the last, and the first the syllable preceding that, &c.; thus,

1 1 2 1 2 3
ă-mas,—am-ā-mus,—am-ā-bā-mus,—am-āv-ĕr-ā-mus, &c.

The increments of deponent verbs, are determined in the same manner as if they had an active form.

814.—RULE XIV. In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o* are long; *i* and *u*, short; as,

Amārēmus, amātōte; legĭmus, possŭmus.

815.—*Exceptions in* A.

1. The first increment of *do* is short; as, *dămus, dăbāmus, dărēmus,* &c.

Exceptions in E.

2. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim*, and *ro*.

But when contracted by syncope, it is long; as, *flēram*, for *flĕvĕram*.

3. In the third conjugation, *e* is short before *r* in the first increase of the present and imperfect; as,

Legĕre, legĕrem, Act. *Legĕrēris, legĕrēre, legĕre*, Pass.

4. In the first and second conjugations, *e* is short in—*bĕris* and—*bĕre*.

Note.—ērunt and *-ēre* in the perfect come under the general rule; sometimes they are shortened. 867–5.

Exceptions in I.

5. In preterite tenses, *i* is long before *v;* as—

Audīvi, audīvēram, audīvērim, &c.

6. In the first increase of the fourth conjugation, except *imus* of the perfect, *i* not before a vowel is always long; as,

Pres. *venīmus*; Perf. *venĭmus*. So, also, *ībam*, and *ībo*, from *eo*.

7. *I* is long in *sīmus*, *sītis*, *velīmus*, *velītis*; and their compounds; as, *possīmus*, *nolīmus*, &c.

8. In *rimus* and *ritis* of the future perfect indicative, and perfect subjunctive, *i* is common; as,

Dixĕrīmus, or *dixĕrĭmus*; *vidĕrĭtis* or *vidĕrītis*.

Note.—*U* long before *tum* of the supine comes under Rules VIII. and IX. It is long also in the penult of the perfect participle by the same rules, because the perfect participle is always derived from the supine.

---

§ 159. QUANTITY OF PENULT SYLLABLES.

816.—For the quantity of penult syllables, no definite rule can be given which is not rendered nearly useless by the number of exceptions occurring under it. The following observations are usually given rather as a general guide, than certain rules; and they might be easily extended, were it of any practical advantage.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as,

Priamĭdes, *Atlantĭădes*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelīdes*, *Tydīdes*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE* commonly lengthen the penult; as,

Achāīs, *Ptolemāīs*, *Chrysēīs*, *Ænēīs*, *Memphītis*, *Latōīs*, *Icariōtis*, *Nerīne*, *Acrisiōne*. Except *Thebāïs*, and *Phocāïs* short; and *Nereïs*, which is common.—*Nerēis* or *Nerēïs*.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as,

Ægyptĭăcus, *academĭcus*, *lepĭdus*, *legĭtĭmus*: also superlatives; as, *fortissĭmus*, &c. Except *opācus*, *amīcus*, *aprīcus*, *pudīcus*, *mendīcus*, *antīcus*, *posticus*, *fīdus*, *infīdus* (from *fīdo*), *bīmus*, *quadrīmus*, *patrīmus*, *matrīmus*, *opīmus*; and the two superlatives, *īmus*, and *prīmus*: but *perfĭdus*, from *per* and *fĭdes*, has the penult short.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as,

Dotālis, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *æstīvus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbărus*, *opipărus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult; as *agĭlis, facĭlis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as,

Anīlis, civīlis, herīlis, &c. To these add *exīlis, subtīlis;* and names of months, *Aprīlis, Quinctīlis, Sextīlis:* Except *humĭlis, parīlis;* and also *simĭlis.* But all adjectives in *atĭlis*, are short; as, *versatĭlis, volatĭlis, umbratĭlis, plicatĭlis, fluviatĭlis; saxatĭlis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS*, derived from words denoting inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c., also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as,

Amaracĭnus, crocĭnus, cedrĭnus, fagĭnus, oleagĭnus; adamantĭnus, crystallĭnus, crastĭnus, pristĭnus, perendĭnus, carĭnus, annotĭnus, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as,

Agnīnus, canīnus, leporīnus, bīnus, trīnus, quīnus, austrīnus, clandestīnus, Latīnus, marīnus, supīnus, vespertīnus, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS, OLA, OLUM;* and *ULUS, ULA, ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as,

Urceŏlus, filiŏla, musæŏlum; lectŭlus, ratiuncŭla, corcŭlum, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as,

Oppidātim, virītim, tribūtim. Except *affātim, perpĕtim*, and *stātim.*

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenult, which, in the second and third persons, is the penult; as,

Esŭrio, esŭris, esŭrit. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio, ligūris; scatūrio, scatūris*, &c.

817.—PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

1. *The following proper names lengthen the penult:* Abdēra, Abȳdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alarīcus, Alcīdes, Amȳclæ, Andronīcus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristīdes, Aristobūlus, Aristogīton, Arpīnum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busīris, Buthrōtus; Cethēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes; Darīci, Demonīcus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphȳle, Eubūlus, Euclīdes, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Eurīpus, Euxīnus; Gargānus, Gætūlus, Granīcus; Heliogabālus, Henrīcus, Heraclīdes, Heraclītus, Hippōnax, Hispānus; Irēne; Latōna, Leucāta, Lugdūnum, Lycōras; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximīnus, Meleāger, Messāla, Messāna, Milētus; Naaica, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pachȳnus, Pandōra, Pelōris & -us, Pharsālus, Phœnīce, Polītes, Polyclētus, Polynīces, Priāpus; Sardanapālus, Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonīce, Suffētes; Tigrānes, Thessalonica; Verōna, Veronīca.

2. *The following are short:* Amăthus, Amphipŏlis, Anabăsis, Anticȳra, Antigŏnus, & -ne, Antilŏchus, Antiŏchus, Antiŏpa, Antĭpas, Antipăter, Antiphănes, Antiphătes, Antiphĭla, Antĭphon, Anȳtus, Apŭlus, Areopăgus Arimĭnum, Arrĕnus, Athĕsis, Attălus, Attĭca; Bitŭrix, Bructĕri; Calăber, Callicrătes, Callistrătus, Candăce, Cantăber, Carneădes, Cherĭlus, Chrysostŏmus, Cleombrŏtus, Cleomĕnes, Coryecŏs, Constantinopŏlis, Cratĕrus, Cratȳlus, Creměra, Crustumĕri, Cybĕle, Cyclădes, Cyzĭcus; Dalmătæ, Damŏcles, Dardănus, Dejŏces, Dejotărus, Democrĭtus, Demĭpho, Didȳmus, Dio-

gĕnes, Drepănum, Dumnŏrix; Empedŏcles, Ephĕsus, Evergĕtes, Eumĕnes, Eurymĕdon, Euripȳlus; Fucīnus; Geryŏnes, Gyărus; Hecȳra, Helipŏlis, Hermiŏne, Herodŏtus, Hesiŏdus, Hesiŏne, Hippocrătes, Hippotămos, Hypăta, Hypănis; Icărus, Icĕtas, Illȳris, Iphĭtus, Ismărus, Ithăca; Laodĭce, Laomĕdon, Lampsăcus, Lamȳrus, Lapĭthæ, Lucretĭlis, Libănus, Lipăre, *or* -a, Lysimăchus, Longimănus; Marăthon, Mænălus, Marmarĭca, Massagĕtæ, Matrŏna, Megăra, Melītus, *&c* -ta, Metropŏlis, Mutīna, Miccŏnus; Neŏcles, Nerītos, Noricum; Omphăle; Patăra, Pegăsus, Pharnăces, Pisistrătus, Polydămus; Polyxĕna, Porsĕna, *or* Porsenna, Praxitĕles, Puteŏli, Pylădes, Pythagŏras; Sarmătæ, Sarsĭna, Semĕle, Semirămis, Sequăni, *&c* -a, Sisȳphus, Sicŏris, Socrătes, Sodŏma, Sotădes, Spartăcus, Sporădes, Strongȳle, Stymphălus, Sybăris; Taygĕtus, Telegŏnus, Telemăchus, Tenĕdos, Tarrăco, Theophănes, Theophĭlus, Tomȳris; Urbĭcus; Veněti, Vologĕsus, Volŭsus; Xenocrătes; Zoīlus, Zopȳrus.

3. The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batăvi.* LUCAN. *Batāvi.* JUV. and MART. *Fortuĭtus.* HOR. *Fortuītus.* MARTIAL. Some make *fortuĭtus* of three syllables, but it may be shortened like *gratuĭtus.* STAT. *Patrimus, matrimus, præstolor,* &c., are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

---

§ 160. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A *final.*

818.—RULE XV. *A,* in the end of a word, declined by cases, is short; as, *Musă, templă,* &c.

Exc. 1. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musā,* &c.

Exc. 2. The vocative of Greek nouns in *as,* is long; as, *O Ænēā, O Pallā.*

819.—RULE XVI. *A,* in the end of a word not declined by cases, is long; as, *amā, frustrā, ergā, intrā,* &c.

820.—*Exc. Ità, quiă, ejă, posteă, pută* (adv.), are short; sometimes, also, the prepositions, *contră* and *ultră;* and the compounds of *ginta,* as *triginta,* &c. But, *contrā* and *ultrā,* as adverbs, are always long.

E *final.*

821.—RULE XVII. *E* in the end of a word is short; as, *natĕ, sedīlĕ, ipsĕ, possĕ, nempĕ, antĕ.*

822.—*Special Rules and Exceptions.*

RULE 1. Monosyllables in *e* are long; as, *mē, tē, sē.*

Exc. The enclitics *quĕ, vĕ, nĕ,* are short; also, *ptĕ, cĕ, tĕ.*

RULE 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declensions have final *e* long; as, *Calliŏpē, Anchisē, diē,* &c.

Also Greek neuter plurals; as, *Cetē, melē, Tempē,* &c.

RULE 3. Verbs of the second conjugation have *e* long in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *docē*, *manē*, &c. But *cave*, *vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

RULE 4. Adverbs, from adjectives of the first and second declensions, have final *e* long; as, *placidē*, *pulchrē*, *valdē* (contracted for *validē*). So, also, *fermē*, *ferē*, and *ohē*.

Exc. But, *benĕ*, *malĕ*, *infernĕ*, and *supernĕ*, are short.

I *final.*

823.—RULE XVIII. *I* final is long; as, *domĭnī*, *filī*, &c.

Exc. 1. *I* final is common in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*; also in *ibi*, *ubi*, *nisi*, *quasi*. Sometimes *uti*, and *cui* as a dissyllable, have *i* short. *Sicutĭ*, *sicubĭ*, and *necubĭ*, are always short.

Exc. 2. *I* final is short in Greek vocatives and datives; as, *Alexĭ*, *Daphnĭ*; *Palladĭ*, *Troadĭ*, and *Troasĭn*.

O *final.*

824.—RULE XIX. *Ŏ* final is common; as, *Virgo*, *ămo*, *quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *O*, *dō*, *stō*, *prō*.

Exc. 2. The dative and ablative in *o* are long; as, *librō*, *dominō*. Also Greek nouns in *o*; as, *Didō*, *Sapphō*.

Exc. 3. Ablatives used as adverbs have *o* long; as, *certō*, *falsō*, *paulō*; *quō*, *eō*, and their compounds; *illō*, *idcircō*, *citrō*, *retrō*, *ultrō*, *ergō* (for the sake of).

Exc. 4. *Egŏ*, *scio*, the defective verb *cedŏ*; also *homŏ*, *citŏ*, *illicŏ*, *immŏ*, *duŏ*, *ambŏ*, *modŏ*, and its compounds; *quomŏdŏ*, *dummŏdŏ*, *postmŏdŏ*, are almost always short.

Exc. 5. In Virgil, the gerund in *do* is long; in other poets, mostly short.

U, and Y, *final.*

825.—RULE XX. U final is long; Y final is short; as, *vultū*, *Molў*.

B, D, L, M, R, T, *final.*

826.—RULE XXI. B, D, L, R, and T, in the end of a word, are short; as, *ăb*, *apŭd*, *semĕl*, *consŭl*, *patĕr*, *caput*.

827.—EXPLANATION.—This rule does not apply, if any of these final letters are preceded by a diphthong, or if the syllable is contracted, or made long by position: as, *aut*, *abīt* for *abiit*, *amānt*.

828.—EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Sāl, sōl,* and *nīl* are long.

Exc. 2. *Aēr* and *aether*, have the final syllable long. Also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, Ibēr,* &c.

Exc. 3. *Far, lar, Nar, par, cur,* and *fur,* are long.

Exc. 4. The Hebrew names *Jōb, Danĭēl,* are long; but *David* and *Bogud* are common.

829.—*Obs. M* final anciently made the preceding vowel short; as, *Milĭtŭm octo.* By later poets it is usually cut of, by Echthlipsis (§ 166–2.), when the next word begins with a vowel. When not so cut off, it is short.

C, N, *final.*

830.—RULE XXII. C and N in the end of a word are long; as, *āc, sīc, illūc, ēn, nōn,* &c.

Exc. 1. *Nĕc* and *donĕc* are short; *hic* and *fac,* common.

Exc. 2. *Forsităn, ĭn, forsăn, tamĕn, ăn, viděn,* are short.

Exc. 3. *En* having *ĭnis* in the genitive is short; as, *carmĕn, carmĭnis.* Also Greek nouns in *an, on, in, yn,* originally short, and the dative plural in *sin,* have the final syllable short; as, *Iliŏn, Eratiŏn, Maiăn, Alexĭn, chelÿn, Troasĭn,* &c.

As, Es, Os, *final.*

831.—RULE XXIII. *As, es, os,* in the end of a word are long; as, *mās, quiēs, bonōs.*

Exc. 1. *As* is short in *anăs,* and Greek nouns which have *adis* or *ados* in the genitive; as, *Arcăs, lampăs,* &c.

Exc. 2. *Es* is short, 1st, in nouns and adjectives which increase short in the genitive; as, *hospĕs, limĕs, hebĕs.* But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs,* and *pēs,* with its compounds, are long. 2d. *Es* from *sum,* and *penĕs* are short. 3d. Greek neuters in *es,* and nominatives and vocatives of the third declension which increase in the genitive otherwise than in *eos,* have *es* short; as *Arcadĕs, Troĕs,* &c.

Exc. 3. *Os* is short in *compŏs, impŏs, ŏs* (*ossis*),—in Greek words of the second declension, and in neuters and genitives of the third; as, *Iliŏs, Tyrŏs, chaŏs, epŏs, Palladŏs,* &c.

Is, Us, Ys, *final.*

832.—RULE XXIV. *Is, us,* and *ys,* in the end of a word are short; as, *Turrĭs, legĭs, legimŭs, Capÿs.*

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; but the dative and ablative in *ŏus* are short.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* with the genitive in *ītis, ĭnis,* or *entis* are long; as, *Samnīs, Salamīs, Simoīs.*

Exc. 3. *Is* is long in *glīs, vīs, grātis, fōris.* And in the second person

singular, present indicative, active, of the fourth conjugation; as, *audīs*. Also in *fīs, īs, sīs, vīs, velīs*, and their compounds *possīs, quamvīs, malīs, nolīs*, &c.

Exc. 4. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs, sūs*, &c.

Also those which have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, untis*, or *ōdis*, in the genitive; as *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, Amathūs, tripūs*. To these add Greek genitives in *us*; as, *Didūs, Sapphūs*, &c.

Exc. 5. *Tethys* is sometimes long, likewise nouns in *ys*, which have also *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcȳs* or *Phorcȳn*.

---

§ 161. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVES AND COMPOUNDS.

833.—RULE XXV. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Amīcus,	*from*	ămo.	Decŏro,	*from*	decus, -ŏris.
Auctiōnor,		auctio, -ōnis.	Exŭlo,		exul, -ŭlis
Auctōro,		auctor, -ōris.	Pāvĭdus,		pāvĕo.
Audītor,		audītum.	Quirīto,		Quiris, -ītis
Auspĭcor,		auspex, -ĭcis.	Radīcītus,		radix, -ĭcis.
Caupōnor,		caupo, -ōnis.	Sospīto,		sospes, -ĭtis
Competītor,		compĕtītum.	Nātūra,		nātus.
Cornĭcor,		cornix, -ĭcis.	Māternus,		māter.
Custōdio,		custos, -ōdis.	Lĕgēbam, &c.		lĕgo.
Deeōrus,		decor, -ōris.	Lēgĕram, &c.		lēgi.

834.—EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Long from Short.*

Dēni, *from* dĕcem.				Mōbĭlis, *from* mŏveo.	
Fōmes,	fŏveo.	Sēdes,	sĕdeo.	Hūmor,	hŭmus.
Hūmānus,	hŏmo.	Sēcius,	sĕcus.	Jūmentum,	jŭvo.
Rēgŭla,	rĕgo.	Pēnūria,	pĕnus.	Vox, vōcis,	vŏco, &c.

2. *Short from Long.*

Arĕna *and* ărista, *from* āreo.		Lŭcerna, *from* lūceo.	
Nŏta *and* nŏto,	nōtus.	Dux, -ŭcis,	dūco.
Vădum,	vādo.	Stăbĭlis,	stābam.
Fĭdes,	fīdo.	Dītio,	dis, dītis.
Sŏpor,	sōpio.	Quăsillus,	quālus, &c.

835.—EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to all those parts of the verb derived or formed from the primary parts, §§ 51 and 52, i. e. the quantity of the primary part remains in all the parts formed from it.

836.—RULE XXVI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

ădămo, from *ăd* and *ămo*; *dēdūco*, from *dē* and *dūco*.

837.—*Obs.* 1. The change of a vowel or diphthong, in forming the compound, does not alter its quantity; as, *cădo, concīdo; cædo, concīdo; claudo, reclūdo; æquus, inīquus,* &c.

838.—*Obs.* 2. When a short syllable in the first part of the compound ends with a consonant, it becomes long by position when joined to another word beginning with a consonant; as, *pērmaneo,* from *pĕr* and *maneo;* but if the second word begin with a vowel, the first retains its quantity; as, *pĕrambŭlo,* from *pĕr* and *ambŭlo.*

839.—*Obs.* 3. When the second part of a compound word begins with a vowel, the vowel ending the first part is short by Rule I. When it begins with two consonants, or a double consonant, the vowel preceding is long by Rule II. But if it begins with a simple consonant, followed by a vowel or diphthong, the vowel preceding is sometimes long, and sometimes short, by the following—

Special Rules for the first part of a compound, ending with a vowel.

840.—*Rule* 1. The first part of a compound, if a preposition of one syllable, has the final vowel long; as, *dēcido, prōtendo.*

Exc. 1. *Pro* is short in *prŏcella, prŏfanus, prŏfari, prŏfecto, prŏfestus, prŏficiscor, prŏfiteor, prŏfugio, prŏfugus, prŏfundus, prŏnepos, prŏneptis, prŏpero,* and *prŏternus.* It is common in *procūro, profundo, propāgo, propello, propīno, propulso.*

Exc. 2. The Greek *pro* (before), is always short; as, *prŏphēta, prŏlogus.*

Note.—The final vowel of a preposition of more than one syllable, retains its own quantity; as, *contrādico, antēcedo.*

841.—*Rule* 2. The inseparable prepositions, *se* and *di,* are long; *re* is short; as, *Sēpono, dīvello, rĕpello.*

Exc. 3. *Di* is short in *dĭrimo* and *dĭsertus. Re* is long in *rēfert.*

842.—*Rule* 3. The first part of a compound, not a preposition, has final *a* long; *e, i, o, u,* and *y,* short; as,

Mālo, nēfas, ĭnceps, philŏsophus, dŭcenti, Polўdōrus.

843.—EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. A—In *quāsi, eădem,* not in the ablative, and in some Greek compounds, *a* is short.

Exc. 2. E—The *e* is long in *nēmo, nēquam, nēquando, nēquaquam, nēquidquam, nēquis, nēquitia; mēnet, mēcum, tēcum, nēcum, vēcors, vēsanus, vensficus.* Also in words compounded with *se* for *sex,* or *xemi;* as, *sēdecim, sēmestris,* &c. *E* is common in some compounds of *facio;* as, *liquefacio, patefacio, rarefacio,* &c.

Exc. 3. I—When the first part of a compound is declined, *i* is long; as, *quīdam, quīlibet, rēipublicæ*, &c., or when the first can be separated from the last, and yet both retain their form and meaning; as, *ludī-magister, lucrī-facio, sī-quis, agrī-cultura*, &c.

I is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *bīgæ, scīlicet, bīmus*, &c., for *bĭjugæ, scīre lĭcet, bis annus*, or *biennius*. It is also long in *īdem* (masculine), *ubīque, utrobīque, ibīdem, nīmirum*, and the compounds of *dies*, such as, *bīduum, prīdie; merīdies*, &c. In *ubicunque* and *ubivis*, it is common.

Exc. 4. O—*Contro, intro, retro*, and *quando*, in compounds, have the final *o* long; as, *contrōversia, introduco, retrōcedo, quandōque*, (except *quandōquidem*.)

O is long in compounds of *quo;* as, *quōmodo, quōcunque, quōmĭnus, quōcirca, quōvis, quōque*, (from *quisque;*) but in *quŏque*, the conjunction, it is short.

Exc. 5. U—*Jūpiter, jūdex*, and *jūdicium*, have *u* long; also *usūcapio* and *usūvenio*, being capable of separation, as in *Exc.* 3.

844.—RULE XXVII. The last syllable of every verse is common.

845.—EXPLANATION.—This means that a short syllable at the end of a line, if the verse requires it, is considered long; and a long syllable, if the verse requires it, is considered short.

846.—N. B. A syllable which does not come under any of the preceding rules, is said to be long, or short, by "authority," viz.: of the poets.

§ 162. VERSIFICATION.

847.—A verse is a certain number of long and short syllables, disposed according to rule. The parts into which a verse is divided are called *Feet.*

FEET.

848.—A FOOT, in metre, is composed of two or more syllables, strictly regulated by time, and is either simple or compound. The simple feet are twelve in number, of which four consist of two, and eight of three syllables. There are sixteen compound feet, each of four syllables. These varieties are as follows:

849.—*Simple feet of two Syllables.*

Pyrrhic	⏑ ⏑	as Dĕŭs.
Spondee	— —	as fūndūnt.
Iambus	⏑ —	as ĕrānt.
Trochee	— ⏑	as ārmă.

850.—*Simple feet of three Syllables.*

Tribrach	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	as făcĕrĕ.
Molossus	— — —	as cōntēndūnt.
Dactyl	— ⏑ ⏑	as cōrpŏră.
Anapæst	⏑ ⏑ —	as dŏmĭnī.
Bacchius	⏑ — —	as dŏlōrēs.
Antibacchius	— — ⏑	as Rōmānŭs.
Amphibrach	⏑ — ⏑	as hŏnōrĕ.
Amphimacer	— ⏑ —	as chārĭtās.

851.—*Compound feet of four Syllables.*

Choriambus	— ⏑ ⏑ —	pōntĭfĭcēs	Trochee and Iambus.
Antispastus	⏑ — — ⏑	ămābātĭs	Iambus and Trochee.
Ionic a majore	— — ⏑ ⏑	cālcārĭbŭs	Spondee and Pyrrhic.
Ionic a minore	⏑ ⏑ — —	prŏpĕrābānt	Pyrrhic and Spondee.
First Pæon	— ⏑ ⏑ ⏑	tēmpŏrĭbŭs	Trochee and Pyrrhic.
Second Pæon	⏑ — ⏑ ⏑	pŏtēntĭă	Iambus and Pyrrhic.
Third Pæon	⏑ ⏑ — ⏑	ănĭmātŭs	Pyrrhic and Trochee.
Fourth Pæon	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ —	cĕlĕrĭtās	Pyrrhic and Iambus.
First Epitrite	⏑ — — —	vŏlŭptātēs	Iambus and Spondee.
Second Epitrite	— ⏑ — —	cōnditōrēs	Trochee and Spondee.
Third Epitrite	— — ⏑ —	dĭscōrdĭās	Spondee and Iambus.
Fourth Epitrite	— — — ⏑	ădductĭstĭs	Spondee and Trochee.
Proceleusmaticus	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑	hŏmĭnĭbŭs	Two Pyrrhics.
Dispondee	— — — —	ōrātōrēs	Two Spondees.
Diiambus	⏑ — ⏑ —	ămāvĕrānt	Two Iambi.
Ditrochee	— ⏑ — ⏑	Cāntŭlēnă	Two Trochees.

852.—ISOCHRONOUS FEET.

1. In every foot, a long syllable is equal in time to two short ones. To constitute feet Isochronpus, two things are necessary: 1st. That they have the same time: 2d. That they be interchangeable in metre.

2. Feet have the same time which are measured by an equal number of short syllables; thus, the Spondee, Dactyl, Anapæst, and Proceleusmaticus, have the same time, each being equal to four short syllables.

3. Feet are interchangeable in metre, when the *ictus* or stress of the voice falls, or may fall, on the same portion of the foot. The part of the foot that receives the ictus, is called *arsis*, or elevation; the rest of the foot is termed *thesis*, or depression.

4. The natural place of the arsis, is the long syllable of the foot. Hence, in the Iambus, it falls on the second syllable, and in the Trochee, on the first. Its place in the Spondee and Tribrach cannot be determined by the feet themselves, each syllable being of the same length.

5. In all kinds of verse, the fundamental foot determines the place of the *arsis* for the other feet admitted into it; thus, in Dactylic verse, and Trochaic verse, the Spondee will have the arsis on the first syllable;—in Anapæstic and Iambic, on the last. In Trochaic verse, the tribrach will have the arsis on the first syllable, ⏑́ ⏑ ⏑, in Iambic on the second. ⏑ ⏑́ ⏑.

6. Those feet, then, according to the ancients, were called *isochronous*, which were capable of being divided into parts that were equal in time, so that a short syllable should correspond to a short; and a long to a long, or to two short; thus, in Iambic and Trochaic verse,

Iambus	⏑ | —	Trochee	— | ⏑
Tribrach	⏑ | ⏑ ⏑	Tribrach	⏑ ⏑ | ⏑

In Dactylic and Anapæstic; thus,

Dactyl	— | ⏑ ⏑	Anapæst	⏑ ⏑ | —
Spondee	— | —	Spondee	— | —

853.—But feet which cannot be divided in this manner, are not isochronous, though they have the same time; thus, the *Iambus* and *Trochee*, though equal in time, cannot be divided so as to have the corresponding parts of equal length; thus,

Iambus,	⏑ | —
Trochee,	— | ⏑

854.—Hence these feet are not interchangeable, or isochronous; and for this reason a Trochee is never admitted into Iambic verse nor an Iambus into Trochaic. The same is true of the Spondee, (— —) and Amphibrach (⏑ — ⏑), and of the Amphibrach with the Dactyl or Anapæst.

855.—§ 163. OF METRE.

1. *Metre*, in its *general sense*, means an arrangement of syllables and feet in verse, according to certain rules; and, in this sense, applies, not only to an entire verse, but to part of a verse, or to any number of verses. A *metre*, in a *specific sense*, means a combination of two feet (sometimes called a syzygy), and sometimes one foot only.

The distinction between rhythm and metre is this:—the former refers to the *time* only, in regard to which, two short syllables are equivalent to one long; the latter refers both to the *time* and the *order* of the syllables. The rhythm of an anapæst and dactyl is the same; the metre different. The term rhythm, is also understood in a more comprehensive sense, and is applied to the harmonious construction and enunciation of feet and words in connection; thus, a line has rhythm when it contains *any number* of metres of *equal time*, without regard to their order. Metre requires *a certain* number of metres, and these arranged in a *certain order*. Thus, in this line,

Panditur interea domus omnipotentis Olympi,

there is both *rhythm* (as it contains six metres of equal value in respect of time) and *metre*, as these metres are arranged according to the canon

for Hexameter heroic verse, which requires a dactyl in the fifth, and a spondee in the sixth place. Change the order thus,

Omnipotentis Olympi panditur interea domus,

and the rhythm remains as perfect as before, but the metre is destroyed; it is no longer a Hexameter heroic line.

2. The principal metres used in Latin poetry are six; namely, 1. Iambic. 2. Trochaic. 3. Anapæstic. 4. Dactylic. 5. Choriambic. 6. Ionic. These are so called from the foot which prevails in them.

These different kinds of verse, in certain varieties, are also designated by the names of certain poets, who either invented them, or made special use of them in their writings. Thus, we have Asclepiadic, Glyconian, Alcaic, Sapphic, Pherecratian, &c., from Asclepiades, Glycon, Alcæus, Sappho, Pherecrates, &c.

3. In Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapæstic verse, a metre consists of two feet (sometimes called a *dipodia*, or *syzygy*), in the other kinds, of one foot.

4. A verse consisting of one metre is called *Monometer;* of two metres, *Dimeter;* of three, *Trimeter;* of four, *Tetrameter;* of five, *Pentameter;* of six, *Hexameter;* of seven, *Heptameter;* &c. Hence, in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapæstic verse, a monometer will contain *two* feet; a dimeter, *four;* a trimeter, *six;* &c. In the other kinds of verse, a monometer contains *one* foot; a dimeter, *two;* a trimeter, *three;* &c.

5. A verse or line of any metre may be complete, having precisely the number of feet or syllables that the canon requires; or, it may be deficient; or it may be redundant. To express this, a verse is variously characterized as follows; viz:

(1.) *Acatalectic*, when complete.

(2.) *Catalectic*, if wanting one syllable.

(3.) *Brachycatalectic*, if wanting two syllables, or a foot.

(4.) *Hypercatalectic*, or *hypermeter*, when it has one or two syllables more than the verse requires.

(5.) *Acephalous*, when a syllable is wanting at the beginning of the line.

(6.) *Asynartete*, when different measures are conjoined in one line.

Hence, in order fully to describe any verse, three terms are employed; the first expressing the kind of verse; the second, the number of metres; and the third, the character of the line; thus,

Nōn vūl- | tŭs īn- | stāntīs | tўrān- | nī |

is described; as, *Iambic, dimeter, hypercatalectic.*

6. Verses, or parts of verses, are further designated by a term expressive of the number of feet, or parts of feet, which they contain. Thus, a line, or a part of a line, containing—

three half feet is called *trimimer*,
five half feet, " *penthemimer*,
seven half feet, " *hephthemimer*.

These are of use to point out the place of—

THE CÆSURAL PAUSE.

856.—*Cæsura*, in metre, is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

It is of three kinds, 1. Of the *foot;* 2. of the *rhythm;* 3. of the *verse.*

1st. Cæsura of the *foot* occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as in the second, third, fourth, and fifth feet of the following line:

Sīlvēs- | trēm tĕnŭ- | ī Mū- | sām mĕdĭ- | tārĭs ă- | vēnā.

2d. Cæsura of the *rhythm* is the separation of the *arsis* from the *thesis* by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding line.

This has sometimes the effect of making a final short syllable long, by the force of the ictus; as,

Pĕctŏrĭ- | *būs* ĭnhĭ- | ānspī- | rāntĭă | cōnsŭlĭt | ĕxtā.

Note.—This effect is not produced by the Cæsura of the foot, nor of the verse, unless they happen to coincide with the cæsura of the rhythm.

3d. The Cæsura of the *verse* is such a division of the line into two parts, as affords to the voice a pause or rest, at a proper or fixed place, without injuring the sense by pausing in the middle of a word.

857.—The proper management of this pause is a great beauty in certain kinds of verse, and shows the skill of the poet. In pentameter verse, its place is fixed; in hexameter and other metres, it is left to the poet. When it occurs at the end of the third half foot, it is called *trimimeris;*—of the fifth, *penthemimeris;*—of the seventh, *hephthemimeris.*

858.—The situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place.*

---

§ 164. DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

The canons, or rules of the different kinds of metre used in Latin poetry, are the following:

859.—1. IAMBIC METRE.

1. A pure iambic line consists of iambic feet only; as,

Phăsē- | bŭs īl- | *lĭ* quēm | vĭdē- | tĭs hŏs- | pītēs. |

Here the single line marks the end of the foot; the double line, the end of the metre; and the Italic syllable, the cæsural pause.

2. A mixed iambic line admits a spondee into the first, third, and fifth places; and again in all these a dactyl or an anapæst is sometimes admitted for a spondee, and a tribrach for the iambus.

3. This verse occurs in all varieties of length, from the dimeter catalectic to the tetrameter.

4. The cæsura commonly takes place at the fifth half foot.

5. Different varieties of this metre are denominated as follows:

1st. *Senarian*, or Trimeter acatalectic, used in tragedy and comedy.

2d. *Archilochian*, or Trimeter catalectic.

3d. *Archilochian*, or Dimeter hypermeter.

4th. *Anacreontic*, or Dimeter catalectic.

5th. *Galliambus*, or Dimeter catalectic, double; i. e. two verses in one line.

6th. *Hipponactic*, or Tetrameter catalectic.

7th. *Choliambus*, or Trimeter Acatalectic. This is called, also, *Scazon* and *Hipponactic trimeter*, and has a spondee in the sixth place, and generally an iambus in the fifth.

8th. *Octonarius*, or Tetrameter acatalectic, called also *quadratus*.

9th. *Acephalous*, or Dimeter, wanting the first syllable of the first foot. This may be resolved into Trochaic dimeter catalectic.

860.—II. TROCHAIC METRE.

1. A pure trochaic line consists of trochees only. These, however, are but seldom used. An acephalous trochaic becomes an iambic line; and an Acephalous iambic becomes a trochaic line.

2. A mixed trochaic line admits a spondee, a dactyl, an anapæst, and sometimes a proceleusmatic in even places, i. e. in the 2d, 4th, 6th, &c. But in the odd places, a trochee, or a triorach, and in the last place, a trochee only.

3. This verse may be used in all varieties, from the Monometer hypercatalectic (two trochees and one syllable) to the tetrameter, or octonarius catalectic. The varieties most used by the Latin poets, are,

1st. The *Trochaic tetrameter catalectic*, rarely pure:

2d. The *Sapphic*, consisting of five feet, viz.: a trochee, a spondee, a dactyl, and two trochees. It has the cæsural pause after the fifth half foot; thus,

Intĕ- | gĕr vī- | *tæ* ‖ scĕlĕ- | rīsquĕ | pūrŭs. HOR.

3d. The *Phalæcian*, or *Phaleucian*, consisting of five feet; viz.: a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees; thus,

Nōn ēst | vīvĕrĕ | sĕd vă- | lērĕ | vītă. MART.

This verse neither requires nor rejects a cæsura.

4th. The *Trochaic dimeter catalectic*, or *Acephalous iambic* dimeter. See I. 9th.

5th. Other varieties, but seldom used, are: 1. The *Paneratic*, monometer, hypercatalectic. 2. The *Ithyphalic*, dimeter brachycatalectic. 3. The *Euripidean*, dimeter catalectic. 4. The *Alcmanic*, dimeter acatalectic. 5. *Anaereontic*, dimeter acatalectic, with a pyrrhic in the first place. 6. The *Hipponactic*, tetrameter acatalectic.

861.—III. ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

1. A pure Anapæstic line consists of Anapæsts only.

2. The mixed anapæstic line has a spondee or a dactyl, feet of equal length, in any place.

3. The following varieties occur, viz.: 1st. The *Anapæstic Monometer*, consisting of two anapæsts. 2d. The *Anapæstic dimeter*, consisting of four Anapæsts.

Obs. Anapæstic verses are usually so constructed, that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

4. Other varieties not much in use are the *Simodian;* monometer catalectic. The *Partheniac;* dimeter catalectic. The *Archebulian;* trimeter brachycatalectic.

862.—IV. DACTYLIC METRE.

1. A pure dactylic verse consists of dactyls only, which have the arsis on the first syllable of the foot.

Of this verse, one foot constitutes a metre, and the lines range in length from dimeter to hexameter. Of these, the most important are—

1. *Hexameter or Heroic verse.*

Hexameter or Heroic verse consists of six feet, of which the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four, a dactyl or a spondee; as,

Lūdĕrĕ | quæ vĕl- | lēm călă- | mō pĕr- | mīsĭt ă- | grēstī. VIRG.

Respecting this verse the following things may be noticed.

1st. When a spondee occurs in the fifth place, the line is called *spondaic*. Such lines are of a grave character, and but rarely occur.

2d. When the line consists of dactyls, the movement is brisk and rapid, when of spondees, slow and heavy. Compare in this respect the two following lines: the first expresses the rapid movement over the plain, of a troop of horse eager for the combat;—the other describes the slow and toilsome movements of the Cyclops at the labors of the forge.

Quādrŭpĕ- | dāntĕ pŭ- | trēm sŏnĭ- | tū quătĭt | ūngŭlă | cāmpūm.

Illi īn- | tĕr sē- | sē māg- | nâ vī | brāchiă | tōllūnt. VIRG.

3d. The beauty and harmony of a Hexameter verse depends on the proper management of the cæsura. The most approved cæsural pause, in heroic poetry, is that which occurs after the arsis of the third foot. Sometimes called the heroic cæsural pause; thus,

At dŏmŭs | ĭntĕrĭ- | ŏr | rē- | gālī | splēndĭdă | lūxū. VIRG.

In reading this line with due attention to quantity, we naturally pause where the cæsural pause is indicated by the double line, and the whole movement is graceful and pleasing. Compare now with this, a line in which no attention is paid to the cæsura, or in which, if one is made, you have to pause in the middle of a word, and the difference is manifest.

Rōmā | mōenĭă | tēr- ‖ rŭĭt | ĭmpĭgĕr | Hănnĭbăl | ārmīs.

Sometimes the cæsura falls after the thesis of the third foot, or the arsis of the fourth. In the last case, a secondary one often occurs in the second foot. The pause at the end of the third foot was the least approved. The following lines are examples of each of these:

1. Infăn- | dūm rē- | gīnă ‖ jŭ- | bēs rĕnŏ- | vārĕ dŏ- | lŏrēm.
2. Prīmă tĕ- | nēt, ‖ plaū- | sūquĕ vŏ- | lāt ‖ frĕmĭ- | tūquĕ sĕ- | cūndō.
3. Cūī nōn | dĭctŭs Hў- | lās pŭĕr ‖ ēt Lā- | tōnĭă | Dēlōs.

2. A species of Hexameter is the *Phalæcean*. It is divisible into two portions of three feet each, of which portions, the first begins generally with a *trochee*, and ends with an *amphimacer*, and the second begins with a *trochee;* as follows,

O cŏ- | lōnĭă | quæ cŭpīs ‖ pōntē | lūdĕrĕ | lōngō. CATULL.

These parts, however, may very well be scanned, the first as a *Glyconic*, and the second, as a *Pherecratic* verse, of which see under (V) Choriambic verse.

3. *Pentameter verse* consists of five feet. It is commonly arranged in two portions or hemistichs, of which the first contains two feet, dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable which ought to end a word; and the second, two dactyls followed by a long syllable; thus,

Māxĭmă | dē nĭhĭ- | lō ‖ nāscĭtŭr | hīstŏrĭ- | ă—*Propert.*
Pōmăquĕ | nōn nō- | tīs ‖ lēgĭt ăb | ārbŏrĭ- | būs | TIBULL.

Where the first distich does not end a word, or, if there be an elision by *Synalœpha* or *Echthlipsis*, the verse is considered harsh.

This verse is commonly used alternately with a hexameter line, a combination which is commonly called *Elegiac* verse.

4. *Dactylic tetrameter*, of which there are two kinds.

1st. *Dactylic tetrameter a priore*, called also Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter, which consists of the first four feet of a hexameter line, the fourth being always a dactyl; as,

Sōlvĭtŭr | ācrĭs hў- | ēms grā- | tā vĭcĕ. HOR.

2d. *Dactylic tetrameter a posteriore*, called also *Spondaic tetrameter*, which consists of the last four feet of a hexameter line; as,

Sīc trīs- | tēs āf- | fātŭs ă- | mīcōs. HOR.

5. *Dactylic trimeter* (or *Choriambic Trimeter Catalectic*), consists of the last three feet of a hexameter line (See Choriambic verse); as,

Grātō | Pўrrhă sŭb | āntrō. Hor.

6. *Dactylic trimeter catalectic*, also called *Archilochian penthemimeris*, consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter line; as,

Arbŏrī- | būsquĕ cŏ-| mæ. Hor.

7. *Dactylic dimeter* or *Adonic*—commonly used to conclude a Sapphic Stanza—consists of a dactyl and spondee; thus,

Rīsĭt A- | pōllō.

863.—V. CHORIAMBIC METRE.

In Choriambic verse, the leading foot is a choriambus; but in the varieties of this metre, different other feet are admitted, chiefly at the beginning or end of the line, or both. The principal varieties are the following:

1. The *Choriambic tetrameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nĕ | quæsĭĕrīs | scīrĕ nĕfās | quēm mĭhĭ quēm | tĭbĭ.

2. *Choriambic tetrameter*, consists of three choriambi, or feet equivalent in length, and a Bacchius; as,

Jānĕ pătĕr | Jānĕ tŭēns | dīvĕ bĭcĕps | bĭfōrmĭs.

Horace altered without improving this metre, by substituting a spondee for the iambus in the first foot; as,

Tē dĕōs ō- | rō Sўbărīn | &c.

Note.—Choriambic tetrameter was originally called Phalæcian, from Phalæcus, who made great use of it.

3. *Asclepiadic tetrameter*, consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; thus,

Mæcē- | nās ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē- | gĭbŭs. Hor.

This form is uniformly used by Horace. Other poets sometimes make the first foot a dactyl.

The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

This verse is sometimes scanned as a Dactylic pentameter catalectic; thus,

Mæcē- | nās ătă- | vīs | ēdĭtĕ | rēgĭbŭs.

4. *Choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic*, consists of a spondee, (sometimes an iambus or trochee,) a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Sīc tē | dīvă pŏtēns | Cўprī. Hor.

When the first foot is a spondee, it may be scanned as dactylic trimeter; as,

Sīc tē | dīvă pŏ- | tēns Cўprĭ.

5. *Choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic*, consists of a spondee, choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō | Pўrrhă sŭb ān- | trō.

Here, also, the first foot is sometimes a trochee or an iambus. When a spondee, it may be scanned as Dactylic trimeter. See IV. 5.

6. *Choriambic dimeter*, consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lўdĭă dīc | pĕr ōmnēs. Hor.

864.—VI. IONIC METRE.

1. The *Ionic a majore*, or *Sotadic metre*, consists of three Ionics a majore, and a spondee; as,

Hās cūm gĕmĭ- | nā cōmpĕdĕ | dēdĭcāt că- | tēnās.

Obs.—In this metre, an Ionic foot is often changed for a ditrochee, as in the third foot of the preceding line; and a long syllable is often resolved into two short ones.

2. The *Ionic a minore*, consists generally of three or four feet, which are all Ionics a minore; as,

Pŭĕr ālēs | tĭbĭ tēlīs | ŏpĕrōsæ- | quĕ Mĭnĕrvæ. Hor.

---

§ 165. COMPOUND METRES.

865.—A compound metre or *Asynartete*, is the union of two kinds of metre in the same verse or line. Of these the following are the chief:

1. *Greater Alcaic.* Iambic mon. hyper. + Chor. dim. acat.

Thus, ⏑ – | ⏑ – | – ‖ – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ –

2. *Lesser Alcaic.* Dactylic dim. + Trochaic mon.

Thus, – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ ‖ – ⏑ – ⏑

3. *Archilochian Hept.* or Dact. tetr. a priore + Troch. dim. B. C.

Thus, – – ⏑ ⏑ | – – ⏑ ⏑ | – – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ ‖ – ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑

4. *Dactylico-Iambic.* Dactylic trim. cat. + Iambic dim.

Thus, – – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ‖ ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ | ⏑ – | ⏑ –

5. *Iambico Dactylic.* Iambic dim. + Dactylic trim. cat.

Thus, ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – ‖ – – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | –

§ 166. SCANNING.

866 —Scanning is the measuring of verse, or the resolving of a line into the several feet of which it is composed.

To do this properly, a previous acquaintance with the rules of quantity, and the structure of each kind of verse, is indispensable,—and also with the various ways by which syllables in certain situations are varied by contraction, elision, &c. These are usually called Figures of Prosody, and are as follows:

867.—FIGURES OF PROSODY.

1. *Synalœpha*, cuts off a vowel or diphthong from the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, or *h* with a vowel following it, thus converting two syllables into one; as,

Terra antīqua by Synalœpha, *terr' antiqua; Dardanidæ infensi, Dardanid' infensi; vento huc, vent' uc;* thus:

Quidve moror? si omnes uno ordine habetis Achivos. VIRG.

Scanned thus,

Quīdvĕ mŏ- | rŏr? s' ōm- | nēs ū- | n' ōr dĭn' hă- | bētĭs A- | chīvōs.

The *Synalœpha* is sometimes neglected, and seldom takes place in the interjections, *O, heu, ah, proh, væ, vah, hei.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insŭlæ | Iŏnĭ' | ĭn māg- | nō quās | dīră Cĕ- | lænō. VIRG.

Crēdĭmŭs | ān quĭ ă- | mānt īp- | sī sĭbĭ | sōmnĭă | fīngūnt. ID.

2. *Ecthlipsis* cuts off *m* with a vowel preceding it, from the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, or *h* followed by a vowel; as,

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

Scanned thus,

Mōnstr' hōr- | rēnd,' ĭn- | fōrm,' ĭn- | gēns cuī | lūmĕn ăd- | ēmptūm.

This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,

Corporum | offici- | um est quoni- | am preme- | re omnia de- | orsum. LUCR.

Obs. A *Synalœpha* and *Ecthlipsis* are sometimes found at the end of a line, where, after the completing of the metre, a syllable remains to be joined to the next line, which of course must begin with a vowel; thus,

Sternitur | infe- | lix ali- | one | vulnere | coelum | que
Adspicit, &c.

Here the *que* and *adspicit* are joined; as, *qu' adspicit.*

Jamque iter | emen- | si, tur- | res ac | tecta La- | tino- | rum
Ardua, &c., where the *-rum* and *ardua* are joined; as, *r' ardua.*

3. *Synœrĕsis*, sometimes called *Crasis*, contracts two syllables into one; as, *Phœthon*, for *Phaëthon;* this is done by

forming two vowels into a diphthong; *aë, eï, oï*, into *æ, ei, oi;* or, pronouncing the two syllables as one; thus, *ea, iu*, as if *ya, yu*, &c.; as, *aurea, aurya; filius, filyus;* and *ua, ui*, &c., as if *wa, wi;* thus, *genua, genwa; tenuis, tenwis.*

4. *Diærĕsis* divides one syllable into two; *as, aulaï*, for *aulæ; Troïæ*, for *Trojæ; Persĕus*, for *Perseus; milïus*, for *milvus; solïit*, for *solvit; volïit*, for *volvit; aqüæ, süetus, süasit, Süevos, relangüit, reliqüas*, for *aquæ, suetus*, &c.; as,

Aulaĭ in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. VIRG.
Stamina non ulli dissolüenda Deo. *Pentam.* TIBULLUS.

5. *Systŏle* makes a long syllable short; as, the penult in *tulĕrunt;* thus,

Matri | longa de- | cem tulĕ- | runt fas- | tidia | menses. VIRG.

6. *Diastŏle* makes a short syllable long; as, the last syllable of *ămŏr* in the following verse:

Consi- | dant, si- | tantus a- | mōr, et | mœnia | condant. VIRG.

§ 167. STANZA.

868.—A poem may consist of one or more kinds of verse. When a poem consists of one kind of verse, it is called *monocolon;* of two, *dicolon;* of three, *tricolon.*

869.—The different kinds of verse in a poem are usually combined in regular portions called stanzas, or strophes, each of which contains the same number of lines, the same kinds of verse, and these arranged in the same order.

870.—When a stanza or strophe consists of two lines, the poem is called *distrophon;* of three lines, *tristrophon;* of four, *tetrastrophon.* Hence poems, according to the number of kinds of verse which they contain, and the number of lines in the stanza, are characterized as follows:

Monocolon, one kind of verse in the poem.
Dicolon distrophon, two kinds of verse, and two lines in the stanza.
Dicolon tristrophon, two kinds of verse, three lines in the stanza.
Dicolon tetrastrophon, two kinds of verse, four lines in the stanza.
Tricolon tristrophon, three kinds of verse, three lines in the stanza.
Tricolon tetrastrophon, three kinds of verse, four lines in the stanza.

§ 168. COMBINATIONS OF METRES IN HORACE.

871.—Horace makes use of *nineteen* different species of metre combined in *eighteen* different ways. They are arranged as follows, according to the order of preference given them by the poet. The references here, where not marked, are to § 164.

No. 1. Two lines Greater Alcaic. § 165. 1. One Archilochian dimeter hypermeter, I. 2. 5. 3d; and one Lesser Alcaic. § 165. 2.

No. 2. Three lines Sapphic, II. 2. One Adonic, or Dactylic dim. IV. 7

No. 3. One line Choriambic trim. or Glyconic, V. 4. One choriambic tetram. or Asclepiadic. V. 3.

No. 4. One line Iambic trim. or Senarian, I. 3. 5. 1st. One Iambic dim. I. 2. 3.

No. 5. Three lines, Chor. tetram. or Asclepiadic, V. 3. One Chor. trim. or Glyconic, V. 4.

No. 6. Two lines Chor. tetram. or Asclepiadic, V. 3. One Chor. trim. cat., or Pherecratic, V. 5. One Chor. trim. or Glyconic, V. 4.

No. 7. Choriambic tetrameter, or Asclepiadic alone, V. 3.

No. 8. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Dactylic tetram. a posteriore, IV. 4. 2d.

No. 9. Choriambic pentameter only, V. 1.

No. 10. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambic dim. 1. 2. 3.

No. 11. Iambic trimeter Senarian only, 1. 2. 5. 1st.

No. 12. One line Choriambic dim. V. 6. One Chor. tetram. (altered) V. 2.

No. 13. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambic trim. sen. I. 3. 5. 1st.

No. 14. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Archilochian Dactylic trimeter catalectic, IV. 6.

No. 15. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambico dactylic, § 165. 5.

No. 16. One line Iambic trim. Senarian, I. 3. 5. 1st. One Dactylic Iambic. § 165, 4.

No. 17. One line Archilochian Heptameter. § 165. 3. One Archilochian Iambic trimeter, Catalectic, I. 2. 5. 2d.

No. 18. One line Iambic dimeter Acephalous, I. 5. 9th.; and one Iambic trimeter catalectic, I. 5. 2d.

No. 19. Ionic a minore only, VI. 2. The first line contains three feet, the second, four.

Note.—The Satires and Epistles are in Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1.

§ 169. METRICAL KEY TO ODES OF HORACE.

872.—This key gives, in alphabetic order, the first words of each ode, with a reference to the Nos. in the preceding section where the stanza is described, and reference made to the place where each metre is explained.

Æli vetusto	No. 1	Bacchum in remotis	No. 1
Æquam memento	1	Beatus ille	4
Albi ne doleas	5	Cœlo supinas	1
Altera jam teritur	13	Cœlo tonantem	1
Angustam amici	1	Cum tu Lydia	3
At O Deorum	4	Cur me querelis	1
Audivêre Lyce	6	Delicta majorum	1

Descende cœlo 1
Dianam teneræ 6
Diffugère nives 14
Dive quem proles 2
Divis orte bonis 5
Donarem pateras 7
Donec gratus eram 3
Eheu fugaces 1
Est mihi nonum 2
Et thure et fidibus 3
Exegi monumentum 7
Extremum Tanaim 5
Faune nympharum 2
Festo quid potius die 3
Herculis ritu 2
Horrida tempestas 15
Ibis Liburnis 4
Icci beatis 1
Ille et nefasto 1
Impios parræ 2
Inclusam Danäen 5
Intactis opulentior 3
Integer vitæ 2
Intermissa Venus diu 3
Jam jam efficaci 11
Jam pauca aratro 1
Jam satis terris 2
Jam veris comites 5
Justum et tenacem 1
Laudabunt alii 8
Lupis et agnis 4
Lydia dic per omnes 12
Mæcenas atavis 7
Malâ soluta 4
Martiis cœlebs 2
Mater sæva Cupidinum . . . 3
Mercuri facunde 2
Mercuri nam te 2
Miserarum est 19
Mollis inertia 10
Montium custos 2
Motum ex Metello 1
Musis amicus 1
Natis in usum 1
Ne forte credas 1
Ne sit ancillæ 2
Nolis longa feræ 5
Nondum subacta 1
Non ebur neque aureum . . . 18
Non semper imbres 1
Non usitata 1
Non vides quanto 2
Nox erat 10
Nullam Vare sacra 9
Nullus argento 2
Nunc est bibendum 1
O crudelis adhuc 9
O Diva gratum 1
O fons Blandusiæ 6
O matre pulchrâ 1
O nata mecum 1
O navis referent 6
O sæpe mecum 1
O Venus regina 2
Odi profanum 1
Otium Divos 2
Parcius junctas 2
Parcus Deorum 1
Parentis olim 4
Pastor quum traheret 5
Persicos odi puer 2
Petti nihil me 16
Phœbe, silvarumque 2
Phœbus volentem 1
Pindarum quisquis 2
Poscimur siquid 2
Quæ cura patrum 1
Qualem ministrum 1
Quando repôstum 4
Quantùm distet ab Inacho . . 3
Quem tu, Melpomene 3
Quem virum aut heroa 2
Quid bellicosus 1
Quid dedicatum 1
Quid fles Asterie 6
Quid immerentes 4
Quid obseratis 11
Quid tibi vis 8
Quis desiderio 5
Quis multa gracilis 6
Quo me, Bacche 3
Quo, quo scelesti ruitis . . . 4
Rectius vives 2
Rogare longo 4
Scribēris Vario 5
Septimi Gades 2
Sic te Diva potens 3
Solvitur acris hiems 17
Te maris et terræ 8
Tu ne quæsieris 9
Tyrrhena regum 1
Ulla si juris 2
Uxor pauperis Ibyci 3
Velox amœnum 1
Vides ut alta 1
Vile potabis 9
Vitas hinnuleo 6
Vixi choreis 1

APPENDIX.

1. ROMAN COMPUTATION OF TIME.

1. *Divisions of the Year.*

873.—Romulus is said to have divided the year into ten months, as follows: 1. *Martius*, from Mars, his supposed father; 2. *Aprilis*, from *Aperio*, "to open;" 3. *Maius*, from *Maia*, the mother of Mercury; 4. *Junius*, from the goddess *Juno*. The rest were named from their number, as follows: 5. *Quintilis*, afterwards *Julius*, from *Julius Cæsar;* 6. *Sextilis*, afterwards *Augustus*, from *Augustus Cæsar;* 7. *September;* 8. *October;* 9. *November;* and 10. *December*. Numa afterwards added two months; viz: 11. *Januarius*, from the god *Janus;* 12. *Februarius*, from *februo*, "to purify."

874.—As the months were regulated by the course of the moon, it was soon found that the months and seasons did not always correspond, and various expedients were adopted to correct this error. Much confusion however still remained till about A. U. 707, when Julius Cæsar, assisted by Sosigenes, an astronomer of Alexandria, reformed the Calendar, adjusted the year according to the course of the sun, and assigned to each of the twelve months the number of days which they still contain.

2. *The Roman Month.*

875.—The Romans divided their month into three parts, called *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides**. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends;* the fifth was called the *Nones;* and the thirteenth was called the *Ides;* except in March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* fell on the seventh, and the *Ides* on the fifteenth; and the day was numbered according to its distance, (not *after* but) *before* each of these points; that is, after the Kalends, they numbered the day according to its distance before the Nones; after the Nones, according to its distance before the Ides; and after the Ides, according to its distance before the Kalends—both days being always included. The day before each of these points was never numbered, but called *Pridie*, or *ante diem Nonōrum*, or *Iduum*, or *Kalendārum*, as the case might be; the day before that was called *tertio*, the day before that, *quarto*, &c.; scil. *Nonōrum*, *Iduum*, *Kalendārum*.

876.—Various expressions and constructions were used by the Romans in the notation of the days of the months. Thus, for example, the 29th December or the 4th of the Kalends of January, was expressed differently as follows:

1st. Quarto Kalendārum Januarii. Abbreviated, IV. Kal. Jan., or
2d. Quarto Kalendas Januarii. " IV. Kal. Jan., or

* The first day was named Kalends, from the Greek, καλέω, *to call*, because when the month was regulated according to the course of the moon, the priest announced the new moon, which was of course the first day of the month. The Nones were so called because that day was always the ninth from the Ides. The term Ides is derived from an obsolete Latin verb *iduare*, to divide, it is supposed, because that day being about the middle of the month, divided it into two nearly equal parts

3d. Quarto Kalendas Januarias. Abbreviated. IV. Kal. Jan., or
4th. Ante diem quartum Kal. Jan. " a. d. IV. K. Jan.

In these expressions, *quarto* agrees with *die* understood; and *die* governs *Kalendārum* in the genitive. *Kalendas* is governed by *ante* understood. In the first expression, *Januarii* is considered as a noun governed by *Kalendārum;* in the second, as a noun governed by *Kalendas;* in the third, *Januarias* is regarded as an adjective agreeing with *Kalendas;* in the fourth, *ante diem quartum* is a technical phrase for *die quarto ante*, and frequently has a preposition before it; as, *in ante diem*, &c., or, *ex ante diem*, &c.

The notation of Nones and Ides was expressed in the same way, and with the same variety of expression.

The correspondence of the Roman notation of time with our own, may be seen by inspection of the following

877.—TABLE.

Days of our Months.	Mar. Mai. Jul. Oct. 31 *days.*	Jan. Aug. Dec. 31 *days.*	Apr. Jun. Sept. Nov. 30 *days.*	Febr. 28 *days.* *Bissex.* 29.
1	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.
2	VI. nonas.	IV. nonas.	IV. nonas.	IV. nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie "	VIII. idus.	VIII. idus.	VIII. idus.
7	Nonæ.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie "	XIX. kal.	XVIII. kal.	XVI. kal.
15	Idus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. kal.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Pridie Mar
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie "	
31	Pridie "	Pridie "		

3. *Rules for reducing Time.*

As, however, this table cannot be always at hand, the following simple rules will enable a person to reduce time without a table.

I. TO REDUCE ROMAN TIME TO OUR OWN.

For reducing Kalends.

878.—*Kalendæ* are always the first day of the month:—*Pridie Kalendārum*, always the last day of the month preceding. For any other notation, observe the following—

879.—RULE. Subtract the number of the Kalends given, from the number of days in the preceding month; add 2, and the result will be the day of the preceding month; thus,

X. Kal. Jan.—Dec. has days 31—10=21+2=23d of Dec'r.
XVI. Kal. Dec.—Nov. has days 30—16=14+2=16th of Nov'r.

For reducing Nones and Ides.

880.—RULE. Subtract the number given, from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall, and add 1. The result will be the day of the month named; thus,

IV. Non. Dec.—Nones on the 5—4=1+1=2, or 2d Dec'r.
VI. Id. Dec.—Ides on the 13—6=7+1=8, or 8th Dec'r.
IV. Non. Mar.—Nones on the 7—4=3+1=4, or 4th March.
VI. Id. Mar.—Ides on the 15—6=9+1=10, or 10th March.

II. FOR REDUCING OUR TIME TO ROMAN.

881.—If the day is that on which the Kalends, Nones, or Ides fall, call it by these names. If the day before, call it *Pridie Kal.* (of the following month), *Prid. Non.*, *Pridie Id.* (of the same month). Other days to be denominated according to their distance before the point next following, viz.: those after the Kalends and before the Nones, to be called *Nones;* those after the Nones and before the Ides, to be called *Ides*, viz.: of the month named; and those after the Ides and before the Kalends, to be called *Kalends*, viz.: of the month following; as follows:

For reducing to Kalends.

882.—RULE. Subtract the day of the month given, from the number of days in the month; and add 2. The result will be the number of the Kalends of the month following; thus,

Dec. 23d.—Dec. has days 31—23=8+2=10, or X. Kal. Jan.
Nov. 16th.—Nov. has days 30—16=14+2=16, or XVI. Kal. Dec.

For reducing to Nones and Ides.

883.—RULE. Subtract the day of the month given, from the day of the Nones (if between the Kalends and Nones), or from the day of the Ides (if between the Nones and Ides),

and add 1. The result will be the number of the Nones or Ides respectively; as,

Dec. 2d.—Day of the Nones 5—2=3+1=4, or IV. Non. Dec.
Dec. 8th. " Ides 13—8=5+1=6, or VI. Id. Dec.
March 4th. " Nones 7—4=3+1=4, or IV. Non. Mar.
March 10th. " Ides 15—10=5+1=6, or VI. Id. Mar.

Division of the Roman Day.

884.—The Roman *civil day* extended, as with us, from midnight to midnight, and its parts were variously named; as, *media nox, gallicinium canticinium, diluculum, mane, antemeridiānum, meridies, pomeridiānum,* &c.

885.—The *natural day* extended from sunrise (*sōlis ortus*) till sunset (*sōlis occāsus*), and was divided into twelve equal parts, called hours, (*hōræ*); which were, of course, longer or shorter according to the length of the day. At the equinox, their hour and ours would be of the same length; but, as they began to number at sunrise, the *number* would be different, i. e. their first hour would correspond to our 7 o'clock, their second to our 8 o'clock, &c.

886.—The *night* was divided by the Romans into four watches (*vigiliæ*), each equal to three hours; the *first* and *second* extending from sunset to midnight, and the *third* and *fourth*, from midnight to sunrise.

II. OF ROMAN NAMES.

887.—The Romans at first seem to have had but one name; as, *Rŏmŭlus, Rĕmus, Numĭtor;* sometimes two; as, *Nŭma Pompilius, Ancus Martius,* &c.; but when they began to be divided into tribes, or clans, (*gentes*) they commonly had three names—the *prænōmen*, the *nōmen*, and the *cognōmen;* arranged as follows:

1. The *Prænōmen* stood first, and distinguished the *individual*. It was commonly written with one or two letters; as, *A.* for *Aulus; C.* for *Caius; Cn.* for *Cneius,* &c.

2. The *Nōmen*, which distinguished the *gens*. This name commonly ended in *ius;* as, *Cornelius, Fabius, Tullius,* &c; and

3. The *Cognōmen*, or surname, was put last, and marked the family; as, *Cicĕro, Cæsar,* &c.

Thus, in *Publius Cornelius Scipio, Publius* is the *prænōmen*, and denotes the individual; *Cornelius* is the *nōmen*, and denotes the *gens;* and *Scipio* is the *cognōmen*, and denotes the *family*.

4. Sometimes a fourth name, called the *Agnōmen*, was added, as a memorial of some illustrious action or remarkable event. Thus, *Scipio* was named *Africānus*, from the conquest of Carthage in Africa.

888.—The three names, however, were not always used—commonly two, and sometimes only one. In speaking to any one, the *prænōmen* was commonly used, which was peculiar to Roman citizens.

889.—When there was only one daughter in a family, she was called by the name of the *gens*, with a feminine termination; as, *Tullia*, the daughter of *M. Tullius Cicĕro; Julia*, the daughter of *C. Julius Cæsar*. If

there were two, the elder was called *Major*, and the younger *Minor*; as, *Tullia Major*, &c. If more than two, they were distinguished by numerals; as, *Prima, Secunda, Tertia*, &c.

890.—Slaves had no *prænomen*, but were anciently called by the prænomen of their masters; as, *Marcipor*, as if *Marci puer*; *Lucipor* (*Lucii puer*), &c. Afterwards they came to be named either from their country or from other circumstances; as, *Syrus, Davus, Geta, Tiro, Laurea*; and still more frequently from their employment; as, *Medici, Chirurgi, Pædagogi, Grammatici, Scribæ, Fabri*, &c.

891.—The most common abbreviations of Latin names, are the following, viz.:

A., *Aulus.*
C., *Caius.*
Cn., *Cneius.*
D., *Decimus.*
L., *Lucius.*
M., *Marcus.*
M. T. C., *Marcus Tullius Cicero.*
M.', *Manius.*
Mam., *Mamercus.*
N., *Numerius.*
P., *Publius.*
Q., or Qu., *Quintus.*
Ser., *Servius.*
S., or Sex., *Sextus.*
Sp., *Spurius.*
T., *Titus.*
Ti., or Tib., *Tiberius.*

Other Abbreviations.

A. d., *Ante diem.*
A. U., *Anno Urbis.*
A. U. C., *Anno urbis conditæ.*
Cal., or kal., *Kalendæ.*
Cos., *Consul.* (Singular.)
Coss., *Consules.* (Plural.)
D., *Divus.*
Eq. Rom., *Eques Romanus.*
Id., *Idus.*
Imp., *Imperator.*
Non., *Nonæ.*
P. C., *Patres conscripti.*
P. R., *Populus Romanus.*
Pont. Max., *Pontifex maximus.*
Pr., *Prætor.*
Proc., *Proconsul.*
Resp., *Respublica.*
S., *Salutem, Sacrum, Senatus.*
S. D. P., *Salutem dicit plurimam.*
S. P. Q. R., *Senatus populusque Romanus.*
S. C., *Senatus consultum.*

III. DIVISIONS OF THE ROMAN PEOPLE.

892.—The Roman people were originally divided as follows:

1. *Patres.* Fathers, or Senators, called also *patrones*, from their relation to the plebeians, to whom they were the legal protectors.
2. *Plebes*, or common people, called also *clientes.*

There were afterwards added—

3. *Equites*, or Knights, persons of merit and distinction, selected from the two orders, whose duty at first was to serve in war as cavalry, but they were afterwards advanced to other important offices. It was necessary for them to be over 18 years of age, and to possess a fortune of four hundred thousand sesterces.
4. *Liberti*, or *Libertini.* Freedmen—persons who had once been slaves, but obtained their freedom, and ranked as citizens. They were called *liberti* in relation to the person by whom they were set free, and *libertini* in relation to all others.
5. *Servi.* Slaves.

893.—When Romulus arranged the affairs of the new city, he appointed a council of 100 *Patres* from the Romans, and afterwards added to them 100 more from the Sabines. Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king of Rome, added 100 more, called *Patres minōrum gentium*, in relation to whom the former senators were called *Patres majōrum gentium*, making 300 in all. A great part of these were slain by Tarquin the proud; and after his expulsion, Brutus, the first consul, chose a number to supply their place, who were called *Patres conscripti*, because they were enrolled with the other senators. This title was afterwards applied to all the senators in council assembled, and is supposed to be abbreviated for *Patres et conscripti*.

894.—The sons of the *Patres* were called *Patricii*, or Patricians. Besides these distinctions among the Romans, there were also distinctions of rank or party, as follows:

Nobĭles, whose ancestors or themselves held any curule office, i. e. had been *Consul*, *Prætor*, *Censor*, or *Curule Ædile*.

Ignobĭles, who neither themselves, nor their ancestors, held any curule office.

Optimātes, those who favored the senate.

Populāres, those who favored the people.

IV. DIVISIONS OF THE ROMAN CIVIL OFFICERS.

895.—At first Rome was governed by kings for the space of 244 years. The ordinary magistrates after that, till the end of the republic, were,

1. *Consuls*, or chief magistrates, of whom there were two.
2. *Prætors*, or judges, also two in number, next in dignity to the consuls.
3. *Censors*, who took charge of the census, and had a general supervision of the morals of the people.
4. *Tribunes* of the people, the special guardians of the people against the encroachments of the patricians, and who, by the word "VETO," *I forbid*, could prevent the passage of any law.
5. *Ædiles*, who took care of the city and had the inspection and regulation of its public buildings, temples, theatres, baths, &c.
6. *Quæstors*, or Treasurers, who collected the public revenues.

896.—Under the emperors there were added,

1. *Præfectus Urbi*, or *Urbis*, Governor of the city.
2. *Præfectus Prætorii*, Commander of the body guards.
3. *Præfectus Annōnæ*, whose duty it was to procure and distribute grain in times of scarcity.
4. *Præfectus militāris ærarii*, who had charge of the military fund.
5. *Præfectus Classis*, Admiral of the fleet.
6. *Præfectus Vigĭlum*, or captain of the watch.

V. THE ROMAN ARMY.

897.—The Romans were a nation of warriors. All within a certain age (17 to 45), were obliged to go forth to war at the call of their country.

When an army was wanted for any purpose, a levy was made among the people, of the number required. These were then arranged, officered, and equipped for service.

898.—*The Legion.* The leading division of the Roman army was the legion, which when full consisted of 6000 men, but varied from that to 4000.

899.—Each legion was divided into ten cohorts; each cohort, into three maniples; and each maniple, into two centuries.

900.—The complement of cavalry (*equitātus*), for each legion was three hundred, called *Ala*, or *justus equitātus*. These were divided into ten *turmæ* or troops; and each *turma* into three *decuriæ*, or bodies of ten men.

Division of the Soldiers.

901.—The Roman soldiers were divided into three classes, viz:

1. *Hastāti*, or spearmen; young men who occupied the first line.
2. *Princĭpes*, or middle-aged men, who occupied the middle line.
3. *Triarii;* veterans of approved valor, who occupied the third line.

Besides these, there were,

4. *Velĭtes*, or light armed soldiers; distinguished for agility and swiftness.
5. *Funditōres*, or slingers.
6. *Sagittarii*, or bowmen.

902.—*The Officers of the Legion were,*

1. Six *Military tribunes*, who commanded under the consul in turn, usually a month.
2. The *Centuriōnes*, who commanded the centuries.

The Officers of the Cavalry were,

1. The *Præfectus Alæ*, or commander of the wing.
2. The *Decuriōnes*, or captains of ten.

903.—The whole army was under the command of the consul or proconsul, who acted as commander-in-chief. Under him were his *Legāti*, or lieutenants, who acted in his absence, or under his direction; or, as his deputies, were sent by him on embassies, or on business of special importance.

VI. ROMAN MONEY—WEIGHTS—AND MEASURES.

Roman Money.

904.—The principal coins among the Romans were—*Brass:* the *As* and its divisions; *Silver: Sestertius, Quinarius*, and *Denarius*, called *bigāti* and *quadrigāti*, from the impression of a chariot drawn by *two* or *four* horses on one side; *Gold:* the *Aureus* or *Solĭdus*.

905.—Before the coining of silver, the Romans reckoned by the *As*, a brass coin, called also *libra*. This coin was originally the weight of the

Roman *libra* or *pondus*, but was afterwards reduced at different times, till at last it came to one twenty-fourth of a pound, and was called *libella*. It was divided into twelve equal parts called *Unciæ*, every number of which had a distinct name, as follows:

$\frac{1}{12}$ *Uncia.*	$\frac{6}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$ *Semis, sembella.*	$\frac{9}{12}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$ *Dodrans.*
$\frac{2}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{6}$ *Sextans.*	$\frac{7}{12}$ *Septunx.*	$\frac{10}{12}$ or $\frac{5}{6}$ *Dextans.*
$\frac{3}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ *Quadrans.*	$\frac{8}{12}$ or $\frac{2}{3}$ *Bes*, or *bessis.*	$\frac{11}{12}$ *Deunx.*
$\frac{4}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{3}$ *Triens.*		
$\frac{5}{12}$ *Quincunx.*		

906.—After the use of silver money, accounts were kept in Sesterces (*Sestertii*). This coin emphatically called *nummus* (money), was originally equal to 2½ *asses*, as the name *sestertius* means. Its symbol was L. L. S., i. e. *Libra Libra Semis*, or the numeral letters, thus, IIS, or with a line across HS. Other coins were multiples of this; thus, the *denarius* was equal to 4 *sesterces*, or 10 *asses*, and the *aureus*, a gold coin, was equal to 25 *denarii*, or 100 *sestertii*. When the *as* was reduced in weight after A. U. C. 536, the *sestertius* was worth 4 *asses*, and the *denarius*, 16.

907.—A thousand *sestertii* was called *sestertium* (not a coin but the name of a sum), and was indicated by the mark $\overline{\text{IIS}}$. This word was never used in the singular; and any sum less than 2000 sesterces was called so many *sestertii*; 2000 was called *duo* or *bina sestertia*; 10,000, *dēna sestertia*; 20,000, *vicēna sestertia*, &c., up to a million of sesterces; which was written *decies centēna millia sestertiōrum*, or *nummōrum*, ten times a hundred thousand sesterces. This was commonly abbreviated into *decies sestertiûm*, or *decies nummûm*, in which expressions *centēna millia*, or *centies millia* is always understood.

908.—The following table will show the value of the Roman *as*, in federal money, both before, and after, the Punic war, and of the larger coins at all times.

1. *Table of Roman Money.*

			Before A. U. 536. D. cts. m.	*After A. U 536.* D. cts. m.
	Teruncius, or 3 Unciæ, ...		3.8	2.4
2	Teruncii	= 1 Sembella, . . .	7.7	4.8
2	Sembella	= 1 As, ...	1 5.4	9.6
Before 536–2½ / After 536–4	Asses,	= 1 Sestertius, . .	3 8.6	3 8.6
2	Sestertii	= 1 Quinarius, or Victoriatus, .	7 7.3	7 7.3
2	Quinarii	= 1 Denarii, ...	15 4.7	15 4.7
25	Denarii	= 1 Aureus, or Solĭdus, ...	3 86 8.4	3 86 8.4
10	Aurei	= 1 Sestertium, . .	38 68 4.6	38 68 4.6

2. *Roman Weights.*

		Troy Weight. Lbs. oz. dwt. grs.	*Avoirdupois W't.* Lbs. oz. drs.
The	Silĭqua (equal to 4 Cus), ...	2.92	0.106
3	Siliquæ = 1 Obŏlus, ...	8.76	0.320
2	Obŏli = 1 Scrupŭlum, ...	17.53	0.641
4	Scrupŭlæ = 1 Sextŭla, ...	2 22.13	2.564
1½	Sextŭla = 1 Siciliquus, ...	4 9.19	3.847
1½	Siciliquus = 1 Duella, ...	5 20.26	5.129
3	Duellæ = 1 Uncia, ...	17 12.79	15.389
12	Unciæ = 1 Libra, ...	10 10 9.53	— 11 8.668

The Drachma was 3 Scrupŭlæ.

3. *Roman Liquid Measure.*

		Galls	qts.	pts.
1	Ligŭla, or Cochleăre, is equal to			0.019
4	Ligŭla, = 1 Cyăthus,			0.079
1½	Cyăthi, = 1 Acetabŭlum,			0.118
2	Acetabŭla, = 1 Quartarius,			0.237
2	Quartarii, = 1 Hemĭna,			0.475
2	Hemĭnæ, = 1 Sextarius,			0.950
6	Sextarii, = 1 Congius,		2	1.704
4	Congii, = 1 Urna,	2	3	0.819
2	Urnæ, = 1 Amphŏra,	5	2	1.639
20	Amphŏræ, = 1 Culeus,	114	0	0.795

The *Sextarius* was divided into twelve *Unciæ*, one of which was the *Cyăthus*, equal to a small wine glass.

4. *Roman Dry Measure.*

		Pks.	galls.	qts.	pts.
1	Sextarius (same as in liquid measure),				0.950
8	Sextarii, = 1 Semi-modius,			3	1.606
2	Semi-mŏdii, = 1 Modius,	—	1	3	1.213

Roman Measures of Length.

909.—The Roman *foot* (*pes*), like the *as*, was divided into 12 *unciæ*, different numbers of which were sometimes called by the same names as those of the *as*; viz.: *Sextans*, *quadrans*, &c. The measures less than the *uncia* were the *digĭtus* = $\frac{3}{4}$; the *semiuncia* = $\frac{1}{2}$; the *siciliquus* = $\frac{1}{4}$; and the *sextŭla* = 1-6th of the *uncia*; i. e. the *pes*, or foot, contained 12 *unciæ*, or 16 *digĭti*, or 24 *semiunciæ*, or 48 *siciliqui*, or 72 *sextŭlæ*.

5. *Table of Measures above a Pes.*

		Yds.	ft.
1	Pes = 12 Unciæ, or 16 Digits, ...		.97
1¼	Pes = 1 Palmĭpes, ...		1.21
1½	Pes = 1 Cubĭtus, ...		1.45
2½	Pedes = 1 Pes Sestertius, ...		2.42
5	Pedes = 1 Passus, ...	1	1.85
125	Passus = 1 Stadium, ...	202	0.72
8	Stadia = 1 Milliăre, or mile, ...	1617	2.75

6. Table of Land Measure.

			A.	roods.	poles.	sq. ft.
100	Pēdes quadrāti,	= 1 Scrupŭlum,				94.23
4	Scrupŭla,	= 1 Sextŭla,			1	104.69
1 1-5	Sextŭlæ,	= 1 Actus Simplex,			1	180.08
5	Actus, or 6 Sextŭlæ,	= 1 Uncia,			8	83.65
6	Unciæ,	= 1 Actus quadrātus,		1	9	229.67
2	Actus quadrāti,	= 1 Jugĕrum (As),		2	19	187.09
2	Jugĕra,	= 1 Hæredium,	1	0	39	101.83
100	Hæredia,	= 1 Centuria,	124	2	17	109.79
4	Centuriæ,	= 1 Saltus,	498	1	29	166.91

The Roman *Jugĕrum*, or *As*, of land, was also divided into 12 Unciæ, any number of which was denominated as before, 905.

VII. DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

910.—Of the Roman literature, previous to A. U., 514, scarcely a vestige remains. The Roman writers, subsequent to that period, have been arranged into four classes, with reference to the purity of the language at the time in which they lived. These are called the *Golden* age, the *Silver* age, the *Brazen* age, and the *Iron* age.

911.—The *Golden* age extends from the time of the second Punic war, A. U., 514, to the death of Augustus, A. D., 14, a period of about 250 years. In that period, Facciolatus reckons up in all 62 writers, of many of whose works, however, only fragments remain. The most distinguished writers of that period are *Terence, Catullus, Cæsar, Nepos, Cicĕro, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, Livy*, and *Sallust*.

912.—The *Silver* age extends from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D., 118, a period of 104 years. The writers who flourished in this age are about twenty-three in number, of whom the most distinguished are *Celsus, Velleius, Columella*, the *Senecas*, the *Plinys, Juvenal, Quintilian, Tacitus, Suetonius*, and *Curtius*.

913.—The writers of the *Brazen* age, extending from the death of Trajan till Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D., 410, were 35; the most distinguished of whom were *Justin, Terentianus, Victor, Lactantius*, and *Claudian*.

914.—From this period commenced the *Iron* age, during which the Latin language was much adulterated by the admixture of foreign words, and its purity, elegance, and strength, greatly declined.

VIII. ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

915.—For reasons stated in the note, § 2, the continental pronunciation of the Latin language, as presented in that section, is considered the best. But since there are many who prefer the English, or Walkerian pronunciation, a brief statement of the principles by which it is regulated is here introduced. In doing this it is necessary to state, and for the learner always to bear in mind, that the English accentuation and vowel sounds have nothing to do with the quantity of the syllables as established by the rules of Latin prosody. These indeed are often directly opposed to each other. A vowel which by the rules of English orthoepy is long, having both the accent and the long English sound, is short in Latin; as *pā'-ter, Dē'-us.* On the other hand, a syllable that is short, being without the accent and having the short English sound, is long in Latin; as, *am''-ā-bā-mus, mon''-ē-bā-tis.* When, therefore, a vowel is said to have the long sound, or the short sound—to be accented or unaccented, nothing is affirmed respecting the quantity of the syllable, as long or short. Here indeed there is an incongruity, but it is inseparable from the system.

916.—According to this mode of pronunciation, the sound of a vowel or diphthong depends entirely on two things; viz, the *accent* and the *place* of the vowel in the syllable. Again, the division of words into syllables depends, in a great measure, on the place of the accents; and that again on the quantity of the penult syllable. Hence to present this matter fully and properly, we must reverse this order, and consider,

I. The quantity of the penult syllables.
II. The accent.
III. The division of words into syllables; and
IV. The sounds of the letters in their combinations.

☞ For the division of letters into vowels and consonants, the combination of the former into diphthongs, and the division of the latter into mutes, liquids, &c.; as also for the meaning of the terms *monosyllable, dissyllable,* &c., *penult* and *antepenult,* and the marks for *long, short,* and *accented* syllables, see § 1.

I. THE QUANTITY OF THE PENULT SYLLABLES.

917.—For quantity in general, see the Rules, §§ 154–161; and particularly for penult syllables, §§ 156–159. The following are *general,* being applicable to other syllables as well as the penult, and are of extensive application:

1. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *vĭa, dĕus.*

2. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant is long by position; as, *arma, fallo, axis.*

3. A vowel before a mute and a liquid (*l* and *r*), is common; i. e. either long or short; as, *volūcris,* or *volŭcris.*

4. A diphthong is always long; as, *Cæsar, aūrum.*

Note.—When the quantity of the penult is determined by any of these rules, it is not marked; otherwise it is marked.

II. THE ACCENT.

918.—ACCENT is a particular stress of voice laid on a particular syllable of a word, and marked thus (′); as, *pa′-ter*, *an′-i-mus*. Its place is on the penult or antepenult.

919.—When a word has more accents than one, the last is called the *primary* accent, the one preceding it, the *secondary*, marked (″); preceding that, is often a *third*, marked (‴); and sometimes even a *fourth*, marked (⁗); and all of them subject to the same rules. These are as follows:

920.—RULES.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first, or penult; as, *pă′-ter*, *mū′-sa*, *ăt′-rum*.

2. Words of more than two syllables, when the penult is long, have the accent on the penult; as, *a-mī′cus*: when the penult is short they have the accent on the antepenult; as, *dom′-i-nus*.

3. When the enclitics *que*, *ve*, *ne*, are added to a word, the two words are considered as one, and it is accented accordingly; as, *pa-ter′-que*, *am″-i-cus′-ne*, *dom″-i-nus′-ve*.

4. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed on the first; as, *dom″-i-nō′-rum*.

5. If three or four syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary is placed sometimes on the first and sometimes on the second; as, *tol″-e-ra-bil′-i-us*, *de-mon″stra-ban′-tur*.

6. Some words which have four syllables before the primary accent, and all that have more than four have a *third* accent; and in longer words even a *fourth*; as, *pab‴-u-la″-ti-ō′-nis*, *pab⁗-u-la‴-ti-on″-i-bus′-que*.

III. THE DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

920.—In Latin, every word has as many syllables as there are separate vowels or diphthongs. Hence the following—

RULES.

1. Two vowels coming together and not forming a diphthong, must be divided; as, *De′-us*, *su′-us*, *au′-re-us*.

2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid (*l*, *r*) between the last two vowels of a word, or between any two unaccented vowels, are joined to the last; as, *pa′-*TER, *al′-a-*CER, *al′-a-*CRIS, *tol″-e-*RA-*bil′-i-us*, *per‴-e-*GRI-*nă″-ti-ō′-*NIS.

Exc. But *tib-i* and *sib-i* join it to the first.

3. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid *before* an accented vowel, are joined to that vowel, and so also is a single consonant *after* it, except in the penult; as, *i-*TIN*'-ĕ-ra*, HOM*'-i-nes.*

Exc. 1. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, after *a*, *e*, *o*, accented, and followed by *e* or *i* before a vowel, are joined to the latter; as, *só-*CI*-us*, *rá-*DI*-us*, *dó-*CE*-o*, *pá-*TRI*-us.*

Exc. 2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid after *u*, accented, must be joined to the following vowel; as, *mú-*LI*-er*, *tú-*TI*-or*, *lú-*BRI*-cus.*

4. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid coming before or after an accented vowel, and also a mute and a liquid after an accented vowel (the penult and the exceptions to Rule 3 excepted), must be divided; as, *tem-por'-i-bus*, *lec'-tum*, *tem'-pŏ-rum*, *met'-rĭ-cus.*

Also *gl*, *tl*, and often *cl*, after the penultimate vowel, or before the vowel of an accented syllable; as, *At'-las*, *At lan'-ti-des*, *ec-lec'-ta.*

5. If three consonants come between the vowels of any two syllables, the last two, if a mute and a liquid, are joined to the latter vowel; as, *con'-tra*, *am''-pli-a'-vit;* otherwise, the last only; as, *comp'-tus*, *re-demp'-tor.*

6. A compound word is resolved into its constituent parts, if the first part ends with a consonant; as, AB*-es'-se*, SUB*'-i-it*, IN*'-i-tur*, CIRCUM*'-ă-go.* But if the first part ends with a vowel, it is divided like a simple word; as, DE*f'-ĕ-ro*, DI*l'-i-go*, PRÆ*S'-to.*

921.—These rules are useful here, only as a guide to the pronunciation in the Walkerian mode, the vowel sounds being always different when they end a syllable, and when followed by a consonant; thus, *dil'-i-go* and *præ'-to* would be pronounced very differently if divided thus, *di'-li-go* and *præ'-sto*, though the *quantity* and *accent* would be the same in both. It is therefore manifest, that in order to correct pronunciation in this mode, it is necessary to be familiar with, and ready in applying, the rules of syllabication.

IV. OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

922.—*The sound of the Vowels.*

1. Every accented vowel at the end of a syllable has the long English sound; as in the words *fate*, *me*, *pine*, *no*, *tube;* thus, *pa'-ter*, *de'-dit*, *vi'-vus*, *to'-tus*, *tu'-ba. Ty'-rus.**

2. At the end of an unaccented syllable, *e*, *o*, and *u*, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but are sounded shorter; as, *re'-te*, *vo'-lo*, *ma'-nu; a* has the sound of *a* in *father;* as, *mu'-sa*, *e-pis'-to-la.*

I, ending an unaccented syllable, has always its long sound in the following positions:

* Y has the sound of *i* in the same situation.

1st. In the end of a word; as, *dom'-i-ni.* Except in *tib-i* and *sib-i*, in which final *i* sounds like short *e.*

2d. In the first syllable of a word (the second of which is accented), either when it stands alone before a consonant; as *i-do'-nĕ-us*, or ends the syllable before a vowel; as, *fi-ē'-bam.*

In all other situations at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, *i* has an obscure sound resembling short *e;* as, *nob'-I-lis, rap'-I-dus,* FI-*dē'-lis,* &c.

3. When a syllable ends with a consonant, its vowel has the short English sound, as in *fat, met, pin, not, tub, symbol;* thus, *mag'-nus, reg'-num, fin'-go, hoc, sub, cyg'-nus.*

Exc. Es at the end of a word, has the sound of the English word *ease;* as, *fē'-des, ig'-nes.*

923.—2. *The sound of the Diphthongs.*

Æ and *œ* are pronounced as *e* in the same situation; as, *œ'-tas, cœt'-ĕ-ra, pœ'-na, œs'-trum.*

Au is pronounced like *aw*,—*eu* like long *u*,—and *ei*, not followed by another vowel, like long *i;* as, *au'-di-o, eu'-ge, hei.*

Exc. In Greek proper names, *au* are separated; as, *Men''-e-la'-us.*

Note.—ua, ue, ui, uo, and *uu,* in one syllable after *q, g*, are not properly diphthongs, but the *u* takes the sound of *w*, 8–2.

After *g* and *s* these vowels are often pronounced separately, or in different syllables; as, *ar'-gu-o, su'-a, su'-i, su'-us.*

Exc. Ui in *cui* and *huic,* has the sound of *i* long.

924.—3. *The sound of the Consonants.*

The consonants are in general pronounced in Latin as in English. The following may be noticed.

C before *e, i, y, æ, œ,* has the sound of *s;* as, *cē-do, cī-vis, cyg'-nus, Cæ'-sar, cœ'-na;* before *a, o, u, l, r,* and at the end of a syllable, it has the sound of *k;* as, *Ca-to, con-tra, cur, Clo-di-us, Cri-to.*

Ch, generally has the sound of *k;* as *char'-ta chor'-da, chró-ma.*

G before *e, i, y, æ, œ,* has its soft sound like *j;* as, *gĕ'-nus, re'-gis;* also before another *g* soft; as, *agger.* In other situations it is hard; as in the English words, *bag, go.*

Ch and *ph* before *th* in the beginning of a word, are not sounded; as, *Chthonia, Phthia;* also when a word begins with *mn, gn, tm, ct, pt, ps,* the first letter is silent, or but slightly sounded; as, *mne-mos'-y-ne, gnā-vus, tmē-sis, Cté-si-as, Ptol-e-mæ'-us, psal'-lo.*

Other consonants in their combinations resemble so closely their sounds in English words, that further illustration is unnecessary.

NEW AND IMPROVED

NATIONAL SCHOOL BOOKS,

PUBLISHED BY

FARMER, BRACE & CO.,

No. 4 COURTLANDT-STREET, N. Y.

P., W. & Co. would respectfully call the attention of all interested in the subject of education to the following works published by them, as text-books, in nearly every branch of study; all of which are prepared by practical teachers of high reputation, and many of them are in use in almost every State of the Union. They have stood the test of the school-room, and received the sanction and approval of many of the best educators in the country from whom numerous testimonials and recommendations are in our possession.

SULLIONS' SERIES OF GRAMMARS AND ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

This series consists of the following works, viz:

I.—PRACTICAL LESSONS IN ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

This little book contains a brief synopsis of the leading principles of English Grammar, every part of which is illustrated by a great variety of exercises, of the simplest character, adapted to the capacity of pupils at an early age.—New edition, revised and improved.

II.—THE PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

This work is intended as a school Grammar, for the use of classes pursuing this branch of study in the common schools, or of the junior classes in academies. It embraces all that is important on the subject, expressed with accuracy, brevity, and simplicity, and is peculiarly adapted to the purposes of instruction in public schools.

III.—THE ANALYTICAL AND PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

This work, designed for the more advanced classes in schools and academies, is prepared on a more extended plan than the preceding, though not essentially different from it. The arrangement (except in syntax), the definitions and rules, are the same, but with much greater fulness in the illustrations and exercises, intended to lead the student into a thorough and critical acquaintance with the structure and use of the English Language.

IV.—EXERCISES IN ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

This little work consists of selections in prose and poetry from standard writers, so arranged as to furnish a convenient and progressive course of Exercises in Analysis and Parsing, in every variety of style, with such occasional references to the grammars as are deemed necessary to explain peculiar or difficult constructions. To this is prefixed directions for the analysis of sentences and models both of analysis and parsing.

V.—THE PRINCIPLES OF LATIN GRAMMAR.

This work is upon the foundation of Adam's Latin Grammar, so long and favorably known as a text-book, and combines with all that is excellent in that work many important corrections and improvements suggested by subsequent writers, or the results of the author's own reflection and observation, during many years, as a classical teacher.

VI.—JACOBS' LATIN READER.

This work forms a sequel to the Grammar, and an introduction to the study of Latin classic authors. It begins with a series of simple and plain sentences mostly selected from classic writers, to exemplify and illustrate the leading constructions of the language, followed by Reading Lessons, of pure and simple Latin, chiefly narrative, by which the pupil, while he becomes familiar with the construction of the language, is also made acquainted with many of the most prominent characters and mythological fables of antiquity, as well as with the leading events of Roman history. Throughout the work, references are constantly made, at the foot of the page, to the Grammar and Introduction, when necessary to explain the construction or assist the pupil in his preparations.

VII.—FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK.

This work is intended chiefly for those who begin the study of Greek at any early age, and for this reason contains only the outlines of Grammar, expressed in as clear and simple a manner as possible. It is complete in itself, being a Grammar, Exercises, Reading Book, and Lexicon, all in one; so that the pupil, while studying this, needs no other book on the subject. The knowledge acquired by the study of this work will be an important preparation to the young student for commencing the study of Greek Grammar with ease and advantage.

VIII.—THE PRINCIPLES OF GREEK GRAMMAR.

This work is intended to be a comprehensive manual of Greek Grammar, adapted to the use of the younger, as well as of the more advanced students, in schools and colleges. Both in Etymology and Syntax, the leading principles of Greek Grammar are exhibited in definitions and rules, as few and as brief as possible, in order to be easily committed to memory, and so comprehensive as to be of general and easy application This work is now more extensively used than any other of the kind in the country.

IX.—GREEK READER.

This work, like the Latin Reader, is properly a sequel to the Greek Grammar, and an introduction to the study of the Greek classic authors. It seeks to accomplish its object in the same way as the Latin Reader (See above, No. VI.) With these are connected

SPENCER'S LATIN LESSONS, with exercises in parsing, introductory to Bullions' Latin Grammar.

In this series of books, the three Grammars, English, Latin, and Greek, are all on the same plan. The general arrangement, definitions, rules, etc., are the same, and expressed in the same language, as nearly as the nature of the case would admit. To those who study Latin and Greek, much time and labor, it is believed, will be saved by this method, both to teacher and pupil; the analogy and peculiarities of the different languages being kept in view, will show what is common to all, or peculiar to each; the confusion and difficulty unnecessarily occasioned by the use of elementary works, differing widely from each other in language and structure, will be avoided; and the progress of the student rendered much more rapid, easy, and satisfactory.

No series of Grammars having this object in view, has heretofore been prepared, and the advantages which they offer cannot be obtained in an equal degree by the study of any other Grammars now in use. They form a complete course of elementary books, in which the substance of the *latest* and *best* Grammars in each language has been compressed into a volume of convenient size, beautifully printed on superior paper, neatly and strongly bound, and are put at the lowest prices at which they can be afforded.

The elementary works, intended to follow the Grammars, namely, the Latin Reader, and the Greek Reader, are also on the SAME PLAN—are prepared with special references to these works, and contain a course of elementary instruction so unique and simple, as to furnish great facilities to the student in these languages.

BULLIONS' SERIES OF LATIN CLASSICS.

This series contains the following works, to which others, in course of preparation, will soon be added, viz:

I.—CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

In this work, the plan of the Latin Reader is carried on throughout. The same introduction on the Latin idioms is prefixed for convenience of reference, and the same mode of reference to the grammar and introduction is continued. The Notes are neither too meagre nor too voluminous; they are intended not to do the work of the student for him, but to direct and assist him in doing it himself. It is embellished with a beautiful map of Gaul, and several wood-cuts representing the engines of war used by the Romans.

II.—CICERO'S SELECT ORATIONS,

With notes, critical and explanatory; adapted to Bullions' Latin Grammar, and also to the Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard. This selection contains the four orations against Catiline.—The oration for the Poet Archias,—for Marcellus,—for Q. Ligarius,—for king Deiotarus,—for the Manilian law,—and for Milo. The notes are more extended than those in Cæsar's Commentaries, especially in historical and archæological notices, necessary to explain the allusions to persons and events in which the orations abound, a knowledge of which is indispensable to a proper understanding of the subject, and to enable the student to keep in view the train of argument pursued.—In other respects, the proper medium between too much, and too little assistance has been studied, and constant reference made to the Grammar, for the explanation of uncommon or difficult constructions.

III.—SALLUST'S CATILINE AND JUGURTHA,

On the same plan.

Published also by the same—

THE WORKS OF VIRGIL, with copious notes, &c., and also a table of reference; by Rev. J. G. COOPER, A. M.

SERIES OF ARITHMETICS.

1. SCHELL'S INTRODUCTORY LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC.—This work is peculiarly adapted to the wants of beginners. The language is simple, the definitions clear, the examples easy, and the transition from objects gradual and natural. Each succeeding page furnishes a new lesson, and each lesson contains four distinct kinds of Exercise; giving a greater, more pleasing, and useful variety than will be found elsewhere in any work of the kind.

2. INTELLECTUAL AND PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC; or, *First Lessons in Arithmetical Analysis*, intended as an introduction to Dodd's Arithmetic. By J. L. Enos, Graduate of the N. Y. State Normal School.

3. ELEMENTARY AND PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC, by James B. Dodd, A. M., Professor of Mathematics and Natural Philosophy in Transylvania University, Lexington, Kentucky.—This is a work of superior merit. The arrangement is natural, the system complete, and the nomenclature greatly improved. It is admirably adapted to the purposes of instruction by its clear and concise statement of principles, the brevity and comprehensiveness of its rules, and the excellent and thorough quality of intellectual discipline which it affords.

Professor Dodd has prepared a more advanced Arithmetic for the accommodation of those who desire a fuller course. Also an Algebra.

These three Arithmetics have been prepared by teachers of great practical experience—each of them eminent in that department of instruction for which his work is designed.

SCIENTIFIC SERIES.

This valuable series for the use of schools embraces the following authors and subjects:

1. Comstock's Series of Books of the Sciences, viz.

INTRODUCTION TO NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, for children.
SYSTEM OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, revised and enlarged.
NEW ELEMENTS OF CHEMISTRY.
THE YOUNG BOTANIST, for beginners, with cuts.
ELEMENTS OF BOTANY AND VEGETABLE PHYSIOLOGY with cuts.

OUTLINES OF PHYSIOLOGY, both comparative and human.
(NEW) ELEMENTS OF GEOLOGY.
ELEMENTS OF MINERALOGY.
NATURAL HISTORY OF BEASTS AND BIRDS, showing their comparative size, and containing anecdotes illustrating their habits and instincts.

The immense sale of Dr. Comstock's books, renders it probable that they are familiar to most teachers. They are so admirably adapted to the school-room, that the "Philosophy" has been republished in several European countries. Revised editions of several of these works have been recently issued, including late discoveries and improvements.

Comstock's Natural Philosophy having been carefully examined by the Edinburgh and London Editors, previous to its republication in these cities, all the corrections or additions which they found it advisable to make have been incorporated in the original work—so far as they were ascertained to be judicious and adapted to our system of instruction. This philosophy now appears as in reality the work of three accomplished authors, endorsed and sanctioned by the great majority of American teachers, as well as those of England, Scotland and Prussia. The CHEMISTRY has been entirely revised, and contains all the late discoveries, together with the methods of analyzing minerals and metals.

2. BROCKLESBY'S ELEMENTS OF METEOROLOGY, with questions for Examination, designed for Schools and Academies. Of this work, Prof. Olmstead, of Yale College, says:—"No natural science is more instructive, more attractive, and more practically useful, than Meteorology, treated as you have treated it; where the philosophical explanations of the various phenomena of the atmosphere are founded upon an extensive induction of facts. This science is more particularly interesting to the young, because it explains so many things that are daily occurring around them, and it thus inspires a taste for philosophical observation, and what is more, for philosophical reasoning. I think it cannot fail to be received as a valuable addition to our Text Books."

3. BROCKLESBY'S VIEWS OF THE MICROSCOPIC WORLD.—An elegantly illustrated work, exhibiting a variety of insects, animalcules, sections of wood, crystalizations, &c., as they appear when highly magnified. This is one of the most interesting and useful books for Family and School Libraries ever published. It is the only distinct treatise on the subject, is admirably prepared for the use of classes, and should be extensively taught in our schools.

4. WHITLOCK'S GEOMETRY AND SURVEYING.—This is a highly original work: combining, in a connected and available form, such analogous features of Arithmetic, Algebra and Geometry, as are appropriate to the subject, and will be found *useful* in the practical duties of life: giving the pupil, in a comparatively brief course of study, not only a full and close knowledge of his subject, but a comprehensive view of Mathematical Science.

This work is well spoken of universally, and is already in use in some of the best institutions in this country. It is recommended by Prof Pierce of Cambridge, Prof. Smith of Middletown, Prof. Dodd of Lexington, and many other eminent mathematicians.

OLNEY'S GEOGRAPHICAL SERIES.

1 OLNEY'S OUTLINE MAPS, AND PRIMARY GEOGRAPHY.—These works are intended for young pupils and form an appropriate introduction to the larger works.

2. OLNEY'S QUARTO GEOGRAPHY.—The Maps in this work contain but little besides what the pupil is required to learn, consequently it facilitates the progress of the pupil, and saves labor on the part of the teacher. This Geography was prepared at the suggestion of many of the teachers, and is already extensively introduced from *preference*. Few books have proved so uniformly acceptable for common schools. Its statistical information is very valuable.

3. OLNEY'S SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY AND ATLAS.—This world renowned book is not behind any of its competitors, in point of execution and accuracy. The Atlas is probably superior to any other, and contains a Map of the World as known to the Ancients, besides numerous important tables. The whole work is as complete and correct as a *new* book, and will continue to maintain its character, though *alterations* will be avoided as far as possible.

THE BEGINNER'S SERIES.

BENTLEY'S PICTORIAL SPELLING BOOK.—A beautifully illustrated and highly attractive book for children.

GALLAUDET'S ILLUSTRATIVE DEFINER.—The best book for teaching the right use of words, and the art of composition.

THE STUDENT'S PRIMER, by J. S. DENMAN; being on a plan some what new, this Primer has obtained great popularity.

THE STUDENT'S SPEAKER, for young pupils.

THE STUDENT'S SPELLING BOOK, on the Analytical plan, by the author of the "Student's Primer." This new and greatly improved text-book is just published, and destined, when known, to supersede all others, in public favor. Its classification of words and arrangement

of tables are such, that, "by learning to spell and define *five thousand* words, the pupil will obtain a knowledge of the spelling and signification of about *fifteen thousand*." This feature alone makes it two hundred per cent. cheaper, at the same price, than any other Spelling Book now in use.

A set of READERS, by the author of the Student's Series, is now in course of publication, which will much enhance the present great popularity of this series.

The publishers think it proper to add that, Bullions' Analytical and Practical Grammar, besides being in extensive use in Academies, has been introduced into the public schools of Boston, and several other large cities, without solicitation; and that the sale of the Student's Series has been such that they have been quite unable to supply the demand. Readers 1, 2, 3, and 4, have been issued, and such is the simplicity and natural order of the arrangement and the interest of the pieces, that pupils progress with great rapidity and with little apparent effort.

The publications of F., B. & Co., are well printed, neatly and substantially bound, are furnished at low prices, and for sale by Booksellers generally.

All visiting New-York, interested in the Book trade or Schools, are requested to call on the publishers, who keep constantly on hand the largest variety of School, Classical, and Miscellaneous Books, Pens, Ink, Blank Books, Memorandums, Paper, Folders, Bibles, &c., &c., especially adapted to the country trade.

FARMER, BRACE & CO.,

No. 4 COURTLANDT-ST., N. Y

Farmer, Brace & Co.'s Publications.

BOOKS ON THE SCIENCES.

Comstock's Natural Philosophy.
Comstock's Introduction to do.
Comstock's Elements of Chemistry.
Comstock's Young Botanist.
Comstock's Elements of Botany.
Comstock's Elements of Mineralogy.
Comstock's Outlines of Physiology.
Comstock's Natural History of Birds and Beasts.
Brocklesby's Elements of Meteorology.
Brocklesby's Views of the Microscopic World.

Most of the works of Dr. Comstock have been revised within a very short period. His new editions of Natural Philosophy, Chemistry, Botany, &c., have been adopted by many of those who had been induced to try other treatises. They elucidate the subjects in the light of the present moment, and for adaptation to the school-room have not been equaled. The general opinion is expressed in the following.

"The entire series of Comstock's works I consider the best for our public schools, and shall hereafter use them, as I have done heretofore."
E. B. HUNTINGTON.

"The text book on Meteorology, and the revelations offered by the Microscope, by Prof. Brocklesby, of Trinity college, are quite extensively used, and ought to be in the hands of all. The subjects treated of are of constant interest and could hardly be better managed"

Professors OLMSTED and SILLIMAN; Rev. T. H. GALLAUDET; J. L. COMSTOCK, M. D., and many eminent scientific men recommend them highly.

Olney's Geography and Atlas as a work for schools is probably known to teachers generally. It is not known to all, however, that it is now almost a new book. Still possessing the same plan which has always been so popular, it contains, in addition, Ancient Geography and Physical Geography. The Atlas is very large and full. Notwithstanding that other works continue to adopt successive improvements that appear in this, so far as they think they can with safety, it is still the best adapted for schools.

The same author has prepared a set of Outline Maps to precede the Geography and Atlas, which are admirable for young pupils. Also, a Quarto Geography, which is beautifully embellished, and well arranged for those who prefer that form.

Farmer, Brace & Co.'s Publications.

THE STUDENTS' SERIES FOR READING AND SPELLING.

1. The Students' Primer.
2. The Students' Spelling Book
3. The Students' First Reader.
4. The Students' Second Reader.
5. The Students' Third Reader.
6. The Students' Fourth Reader.
7. The Students' Fifth or Rhetorical Reader.
8. The Students' Speaker, for young pupils.

It is the belief of the publishers, founded on good evidence, that the Students' Series, by J. S. Denman, will teach reading and spelling in much less time, and with greater ease than any other system, while it is equally thorough. Prof. Paige, of the Albany Normal School, says it is the only true system. The experience and judgment of teachers in general is embodied in the following:

"The Students' Series I know to be good, having used them more than a year, and with better success than with any other." M. S. Hull.

"The Students' Series will at once be adopted." J. W. Frisbee.

The Book-keeping prepared by J. H. Palmer, Esq., of the New York Free Academy, is a practical treatise, highly commended by eminent book-keepers and teachers. It contains forms of Deeds, and a variety of papers requisite for business men, and is extensively adopted.

The Family and School Dictionary, by Rev. T. H. Gallaudet and Rev. H. Hooker, is intended to teach the use of common words, and to aid in composition. It is used in some of the largest and best academies in the United States. Such as are sufficient to prove the character of any book.

Prof. Hooker's Physiology is prepared at the request of eminent teachers in New England, in whose schools it has been tested in the form of lectures. It is clear and fully adapted to the wants of High Schools, especially female seminaries.

The foregoing works are furnished in as neat, attractive and substantial a dress as any other school books, and are furnished at the most reasonable prices.

FARMER, BRACE & Co.,

Successors to Pratt, Woodford & Co.,

No. 4 CORTLANDT STREET, N. Y

